Pilot Operating Guide and Reference

(Fixed Wing)
EFIS Software Version 8.0K
Document 64-000103-080K

This pilot guide must be carried in the aircraft and made available to the pilot at all times. It can only be used in conjunction with the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) approved Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM). Refer to the applicable AFM for aircraft specific information, such as unique ground tests, limitations, and emergency procedures.

© 2019 Genesys Aerosystems All Rights Reserved

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form, or by any means, without prior written consent of Genesys Aerosystems.

FlightLogic and Virtual VFR are trademarks of Genesys Aerosystems. All other brand names and trademarks are the property of their respective holders.

For service or repairs, contact an authorized Genesys Aerosystems dealer. For product support or inquiries regarding this pilot guide, contact Genesys Aerosystems.

One S-TEC Way, Municipal Airport, Mineral Wells TX 76067
Phone: (800) 872-7832   Fax: (940) 325-3904
www.genesys-aerosystems.com
Revision Record

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rev</th>
<th>Notes/Pages changed, added, or deleted by current revision</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Author</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Retain this record in front of pilot guide. Upon receipt of a revision, insert changes and complete table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision or Edition</th>
<th>Revision Date</th>
<th>Insertion Date/Initials</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table of Contents

## Section 1: Introduction

1.1. Introduction ................................................................................. 1-1
1.2. EFIS/FMS Description ............................................................ 1-1
1.3. About This Guide .................................................................... 1-2

## Section 2: System Overview

2.1. Abbreviations and Acronyms .................................................. 2-1
2.2. System Overview ................................................................. 2-11
   2.2.1. Functional Integration and Display Redundancy ...... 2-15
   2.2.2. IDU Initialization ........................................................ 2-16
2.3. General Arrangement ........................................................... 2-22
   2.3.1. Data Source Monitors ............................................... 2-22
   2.3.2. IDU Intra-System Communications ........................... 2-22
2.4. Color Conventions................................................................. 2-23
2.5. Warning/Caution/Advisory System ........................................ 2-25
   2.5.1. Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts ............... 2-25
   2.5.2. Warning Alerts........................................................ 2-28
   2.5.3. Caution Alerts.......................................................... 2-30
   2.5.4. Side-Specific Caution Alerts ................................. 2-38
   2.5.5. Advisory Alerts ...................................................... 2-38
   2.5.6. Side-Specific Advisory Alerts ............................. 2-40
   2.5.7. Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts .............. 2-42
   2.5.8. Voice Alerts and Muting ....................................... 2-44
   2.5.9. Visual Alert Prioritization and Declutter ................. 2-44
2.6. Database and Software Updates .......................................... 2-45
   2.6.1. Navigation and Obstruction Database .................... 2-45
   2.6.2. Update Requirements ............................................. 2-47
   2.6.3. Software and Terrain Database Update .................. 2-48
2.7. Run Demonstrator/Training Program .................................... 2-48
2.8. EFIS Training Tool ............................................................... 2-49
2.9. Application Software Air Mode and Ground Mode................. 2-49
Section 3  Display Symbology  ............................................................... 3-1

3.1.  Introduction .................................................................................. 3-1

3.1.1.  IDU-450 PFD Display (Basic Mode) ........................................ 3-1

3.1.2.  IDU-450 MFD Display ........................................................... 3-2

3.2.  PFD Symbology ........................................................................ 3-2

3.2.1.  Altitude Display ...................................................................... 3-3

3.2.1.1.  Altitude Display (Metric Units) .......................................... 3-3

3.2.2.  Altimeter Setting ................................................................. 3-3

3.2.3.  Selected Altitude Sub-Mode (Target Altitude) ....................... 3-4

3.2.4.  Altitude Display (VNAV Tile) .............................................. 3-5

3.2.5.  VNAV Sub-Mode ................................................................. 3-6

3.2.6.  Minimum Altitude ............................................................... 3-6

3.2.7.  Vertical Speed Indicator ...................................................... 3-7

3.2.8.  Normal AGL Indication ....................................................... 3-8

3.2.9.  Analog AGL Indication ....................................................... 3-9

3.2.10. Decision Height ................................................................. 3-10

3.2.11. Airspeed Display ............................................................... 3-11

3.2.12. Airspeed Display (with EFIS-Coupled) ................................ 3-15

3.2.13. Heading Display ................................................................. 3-16

3.2.14. Pitch Scale ........................................................................... 3-17

3.2.15. Pitch Limit Indicator ........................................................... 3-18

3.2.16. Turn Rate Indicator ............................................................ 3-19

3.2.17. G-Force and Fast/Slow Indicator ......................................... 3-20

3.2.18. Landing Gear Indication ...................................................... 3-20

3.2.19. Unusual Attitude Mode ....................................................... 3-21

3.2.20. PFD Background ................................................................. 3-22

3.2.21. Flight Path Marker (Velocity Vector) ................................. 3-25

3.2.22. Bank Angle Scale ............................................................... 3-28

3.2.23. Timer Indication ................................................................. 3-28

3.2.24. Marker Beacon Symbology .................................................. 3-28

3.2.25. Flight Director Symbology .................................................. 3-29

3.2.26. OBS Setting of CDI ............................................................ 3-32
3.2.27. Heading/Roll-Steering Sub-Mode ........................................ 3-33
3.2.28. No Autopilot or Fully-Integrated Autopilot CDI ........... 3-33
3.2.29. Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI) ............................... 3-33
3.2.30. Vertical Deviation Indicator (EFIS Coupled) ............. 3-35
3.2.31. Highway in the Sky/Skyway ....................................... 3-36
3.2.32. Active Waypoint and Waypoint Identifier ............... 3-36
3.2.33. Mini Map.................................................................. 3-38
3.2.34. Runways .................................................................. 3-38
3.2.35. Genesys/S-TEC DFCS Autopilot Annunciations ....... 3-40

3.3. MFD Symbology................................................................ 3-40
  3.3.1. Ownship Symbology .............................................. 3-40
  3.3.2. Moving Map............................................................ 3-41
  3.3.3. Compass Rose/ND Boundary Circle Symbol ........... 3-43
  3.3.4. Clock/Options.......................................................... 3-43
  3.3.5. Air Data and Groundspeed .................................... 3-44
  3.3.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions ........... 3-45
  3.3.7. Navigation Data....................................................... 3-46
  3.3.8. Analog Navigation Symbology ............................... 3-48
  3.3.9. Borders.................................................................. 3-49
  3.3.10. Terrain/Obstructions.............................................. 3-50
  3.3.11. Pan Mode............................................................... 3-51
  3.3.12. Start Point ............................................................. 3-52
  3.3.13. Direct Point............................................................. 3-52
  3.3.14. Altitude Capture Predictor/Top-of-Descent ........... 3-53
  3.3.15. Projected Path.......................................................... 3-54
  3.3.16. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways .... 3-54
    3.3.16.1. Parallel Track ..................................................... 3-54
    3.3.16.2. Manual Course.................................................. 3-55
    3.3.16.3. Active Flight Plan Path ................................... 3-55
  3.3.17. Field of View Indication .......................................... 3-56
  3.3.18. Range.................................................................... 3-56

3.4. HSI Page ...................................................................... 3-57
3.4.1. Compass Rose Symbols .......................................... 3-57
3.4.2. Conventional HSI/PTR Format ................................. 3-58
3.4.3. HSI CDI and VDI Scale ............................................. 3-58
3.4.4. Analog Navigation Symbology .................................. 3-59
3.4.5. Air Data and Groundspeed ....................................... 3-61
3.4.6. Clock/Options ............................................................ 3-61
3.4.7. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions .......... 3-62
3.5. Navigation Log ............................................................ 3-62
   3.5.1. Clock and Groundspeed ..................................... 3-62
   3.5.2. Fuel Remaining and Fuel Flow Data ...................... 3-62
   3.5.3. Waypoint Identifier Column ................................. 3-63
   3.5.4. VNAV and VNAV Offset Column ............................ 3-63
   3.5.5. Path Column ....................................................... 3-64
   3.5.6. Distance Column .................................................. 3-64
   3.5.7. Estimated Time Enroute Column ............................. 3-64
   3.5.8. Estimated Time of Arrival Column .......................... 3-65
   3.5.9. Fuel Remaining Column ....................................... 3-65

Section 4 Reversionary Modes ........................................ 4-1
4.1. Reversionary Modes .................................................. 4-1
   4.1.1. Oat Sensor Failure Mode ..................................... 4-5
   4.1.2. Heading Failure Mode ......................................... 4-5
   4.1.3. PFD Screen Auto Reversion .................................. 4-5
   4.1.4. GPS Failure ....................................................... 4-6
4.2. PFD and MFD Failure Mode Examples .......................... 4-8
   4.2.1. PFD Failure Mode 0 ........................................... 4-9
   4.2.2. MFD Failure Mode 0 ........................................... 4-9
   4.2.3. PFD Failure Mode 1 ........................................... 4-10
   4.2.4. MFD Failure Mode 1 ........................................... 4-10
   4.2.5. PFD Failure Mode 2 ........................................... 4-11
   4.2.6. MFD Failure Mode 2 ........................................... 4-11
   4.2.7. PFD Failure Mode 3 ........................................... 4-12
   4.2.8. MFD Failure Mode 3 ........................................... 4-12
4.2.9. PFD Failure Mode 4 .................................................. 4-13
4.2.10. MFD Failure Mode 4 .............................................. 4-13
4.2.11. PFD Failure Mode 5 .................................................. 4-14
4.2.12. MFD Failure Mode 5 .............................................. 4-14
4.2.13. PFD Failure Mode 6 .................................................. 4-15
4.2.14. MFD Failure Mode 6 .............................................. 4-15
4.2.15. PFD Failure Mode 7 .................................................. 4-16
4.2.16. MFD Failure Mode 7 .............................................. 4-16

Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures ......... 5-1

5.1. Menu Functions .......................................................... 5-1
  5.1.1. Menu Philosophy ..................................................... 5-1
  5.1.2. Avoidance of Autonomous Behavior ....................... 5-2

5.2. Menu Synchronization .................................................. 5-3

5.3. Normal Top-Level Menu ............................................. 5-6
  5.3.1. Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions ...................... 5-6
  5.3.2. Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-up Function Descriptions ........ 5-7

5.4. First Page (PFD) .......................................................... 5-9
  5.4.1. PFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions ............... 5-9

5.5. First-Level (MFD) .......................................................... 5-11
  5.5.1. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions ............... 5-11

5.6. Lower-Level Menus (Below First-Level) ....................... 5-12

5.7. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu .............................................. 5-12
  5.7.1. Flight Planner Page ............................................... 5-12
  5.7.2. Flight Planner Page ............................................... 5-13
  5.7.3. PFD Page Shown .................................................. 5-13
  5.7.4. MFD Page Shown on IDU ....................................... 5-14
  5.7.5. To Create an Overfly User Waypoint (Step-By-Step) .... 5-14
  5.7.6. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu Selecting (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step) .......................................................... 5-14
  5.7.7. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu Create-Edit (MFD only) (Step-By-Step) .......................................................... 5-15
  5.7.8. Activate Flight Plan (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step) ... 5-16
5.7.9. Edit Flight Plan (MFD only) (Step-By-Step) .......... 5-16
5.7.10. Reverse Flight Plan (MFD only) (Step-By-Step) .... 5-18
5.7.11. Delete Flight Plan (MFD only) (Step-By-Step) ....... 5-18
5.7.12. Create User Waypoint (MFD only) (LAT-LON) (Step-By-Step) ......................................................... 5-19
5.7.13. Create User Waypoint (RAD-DST) (MFD only) (Step-By-Step) ......................................................... 5-20
5.7.14. Edit User Waypoint (MFD only) (Step-By-Step) .... 5-21
5.7.15. Delete User Waypoint (MFD only) (Step-By-Step) ... 5-22
5.7.16. RAIM Prediction (MFD only) (Step-By-Step) ....... 5-23

5.8. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu ........................................... 5-26

5.8.1. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options ............... 5-27
5.8.2. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step) ......................................................... 5-31
5.8.3. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step) ......................................................... 5-32
5.8.4. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Options NRST Menu Option (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step) ................................. 5-33

5.9. Information (INFO) Menu .................................................. 5-33

5.9.1. Information (INFO) Menu (Step-By-Step) ............... 5-36

5.10. Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu ......................... 5-37

5.10.1. Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu (Step-By-Step) ... 5-39

5.11. Heading Bug (HDG) Menu ............................................. 5-40

5.11.1. Heading Bug (HDG) Menu (PFD only) (Step-By-Step) ........................................................................ 5-40

5.12. Nearest (NRST) Menu .................................................... 5-41

5.12.1. Nearest (NRST) Menu PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step) ........................................................................ 5-42
5.12.2. Nearest (NRST) Menu ILS (Step-By-Step) ............. 5-43

5.13. Direct Menu ................................................................. 5-44

5.13.1. Direct Menu (Step-By-Step) ..................................... 5-45

5.14. Time (TIME) Menu ............................................................ 5-46

5.14.1. Time (TIME) Menu (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step) ... 5-47

5.15. PFD Source (SOURCE) Menu ......................................... 5-49
5.15.1. PFD Page First-Level Source Selection (Step-By-Step) ................................................................. 5-50
5.16. PFD Bug (BUGS) Menu ................................................................. 5-50
  5.16.1. PFD Bug (BUGS) Menu (Step-By-Step) ......................................................... 5-52
5.17. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu ................................................................. 5-55
  5.17.1. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu (Step-By-Step) ......................................................... 5-56
5.18. Altimeter Menu .................................................................................. 5-57
  5.18.1. PFD Altimeter Menu (Step-By-Step) ................................................................. 5-58
5.19. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu ......................................................... 5-59
  5.19.1. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu (Step-By-Step) ........................................... 5-61
5.20. MFD Fuel Totalizer Quantity Setting (SET FUEL) Menu ........................................... 5-62
5.21. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu ............................................................................ 5-63
  5.21.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu (Step-By-Step) ......................................................... 5-64
  5.21.2. MFD NAV LOG Page (Step-By-Step) ................................................................. 5-64
  5.21.3. MFD HSI Page (Step-By-Step) ........................................................................ 5-65
5.22. MFD HSI Declutter (DCLTR) Menu ................................................................. 5-66
  5.22.1. MFD HSI Declutter (DCLTR) Menu (Step-By-Step) ........................................... 5-66
5.23. MFD ND Page Format Menu ............................................................................ 5-67
  5.23.1. MFD Page Format (Step-By-Step) ................................................................. 5-69
    5.23.1.1. Changing MFD ND Orientation ................................................................. 5-69
    5.23.1.2. Adding LAT/LON to MFD ND Page ............................................................... 5-70
Section 6 Quick Start Tutorial ............................................................................. 6-1
Section 7 IFR Procedures ....................................................................................... 7-1
  7.1. Active Flight Plan ...................................................................................... 7-1
  7.2. IFR Procedures ......................................................................................... 7-4
  7.3. Overview of Procedures and Instrument Approaches ............................................ 7-4
    7.3.1. Highway in the Sky (Skyway) ...................................................................... 7-6
    7.3.2. Waypoint Sequencing ................................................................................. 7-11
    7.3.3. Fly-Over Waypoints .................................................................................... 7-12
    7.3.4. Fly-By Waypoints ....................................................................................... 7-13
    7.3.5. Direct-To .................................................................................................... 7-16
      7.3.5.1. Direct-To Unnamed Waypoints Inside Procedures ........................................ 7-17
7.4. Discontinuities ........................................................................................................... 7-17
  7.4.1. Manual Termination Legs .................................................................................. 7-18
7.5. Magnetic Course ..................................................................................................... 7-18
  7.5.1. AHRS Modes for Heading Source ................................................................... 7-19
  7.5.2. GPS Altitude ..................................................................................................... 7-19
  7.5.3. Dead Reckoning ............................................................................................... 7-19
  7.5.4. Geodesic Path Computation Accuracy ............................................................ 7-19
  7.5.5. Parallel Offsets ................................................................................................. 7-20
7.6. Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes .............................................................. 7-22
7.7. Required Navigation Performance ........................................................................ 7-25
  7.7.1. Manually Entered RNP Value ......................................................................... 7-26
  7.7.2. When in an Approach Region of Operation .................................................... 7-26
  7.7.3. When outside the Approach Region of Operation ........................................... 7-26
7.8. GPS/SBAS CDI Scale and FSD Transitions ....................................................... 7-27
7.9. Approach Type Selection ....................................................................................... 7-29
  7.9.1. Approach Path Definition as VTF IFR Approach ............................................ 7-30
  7.9.2. VTF IFR Approach .......................................................................................... 7-31
  7.9.3. VTF VFR Approach ......................................................................................... 7-31
7.10. Missed Approach and Departure Path Definition ............................................. 7-31
7.11. Loss of Navigation Monitoring ........................................................................... 7-32
  7.11.1. Automatic RNP Mode .................................................................................... 7-32
  7.11.2. Enroute Mode ................................................................................................ 7-33
  7.11.3. LNAV Approach Mode .................................................................................. 7-33
  7.11.4. LNAV/VNAV Approach Mode ..................................................................... 7-33
  7.11.5. LP/LPV Approach Mode .............................................................................. 7-33
7.12. Loss of Integrity Caution Monitoring ................................................................. 7-33
7.13. Selection of an Instrument Procedure .................................................................. 7-34
  7.13.1. Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR) (Step-By-Step) ................................ 7-35
  7.13.2. ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step) ..................................................... 7-38
  7.13.3. ILS Approach with Manual Termination Leg in MAP (Step-By-Step) ......... 7-42
7.13.4. LOC Back Course Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step) ................................................................. 7-46
7.13.5. RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima (Step-By-Step) ...................................................... 7-50
7.13.6. NRST ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step) .............................................................................. 7-55
7.13.7. VOR/DME Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step) .......................................................................... 7-60
7.13.8. ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate fix (Step-By-Step) .................................................................................................................. 7-64

Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System ................................................. 8-1

8.1. TAWS Functions ................................................................................................................................. 8-1
8.2. Terrain Display ........................................................................................................................................ 8-2
8.3. Forward Looking Terrain Alert Function ............................................................................................. 8-3
  8.3.1. FLTA Modes ....................................................................................................................................... 8-3
  8.3.2. GPS/SBAS Navigation Mode Slaving ............................................................................................. 8-3
  8.3.3. Default FLTA Mode .......................................................................................................................... 8-4
  8.3.4. FLTA Search Envelope ...................................................................................................................... 8-5
  8.3.5. FLTA Alerts and Automatic Popup .................................................................................................... 8-8
8.4. Premature Descent Alert (PDA) Function ............................................................................................ 8-9
8.5. Excessive Rate of Descent (GPWS Mode 1) ........................................................................................ 8-10
8.6. Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain (GPWS Mode 2) .......................................................................... 8-10
8.7. Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach (GPWS Mode 3) ............................................................. 8-12
8.8. Flight into Terrain when not in Landing Configuration (GPWS Mode 4) ............................................. 8-13
8.9. Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glideslope (GPWS Mode 5) ......................................... 8-14
8.10. 500-Foot Wake-Up Call .................................................................................................................... 8-15
8.11. External Sensors and Switches ........................................................................................................... 8-16
8.12. TAWS Basic Parameter Determination .............................................................................................. 8-17
8.13. TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Normal Operation) ................................................................ 8-19
  8.13.1. TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Abnormal Operation) .......................................................... 8-20
  8.13.2. TAWS Manual Inhibit Functions .................................................................................................. 8-22
8.14. TAWS Selections on PFD .................................................................................................................. 8-22
Section 9  Appendix ...................................................................................................................................... 9-1

9.1.  Appendix ........................................................................................................................................... 9-1
9.2.  Operating Tips ..................................................................................................................................... 9-1
9.3.  Domestic or International Flight Planning ...................................................................................... 9-1
9.4.  Descent Planning ............................................................................................................................... 9-1
9.5.  Terrain Clearance ............................................................................................................................... 9-1
9.6.  Departure Airport Information ......................................................................................................... 9-2
9.7.  Unique Names for Flight Plans ........................................................................................................ 9-2
9.9.  Warnings, Cautions, and Advisories .............................................................................................. 9-2
9.10. Magnetic vs. True North Modes of Operation ............................................................................... 9-2
9.11. Altitude Miscompare Threshold .................................................................................................... 9-4
9.15. Data Logging and Retrieval ........................................................................................................... 9-6
  9.15.1. Delete Log Files ....................................................................................................................... 9-7
  9.15.2. Logged Flags and Custom CAS Messages ............................................................................. 9-7
9.16. Routes and Waypoints ..................................................................................................................... 9-8
  9.16.1. VFR Flight Planning ................................................................................................................ 9-8
  9.16.2. Download Routes and User Waypoints .................................................................................. 9-8
  9.16.3. Upload Routes and User Waypoints ....................................................................................... 9-8
  9.16.4. Delete Routes and User Waypoints ....................................................................................... 9-9
  9.16.5. EFIS Training Tool (ETT) ....................................................................................................... 9-9
9.17. USB Flash Drive Memory Limitations .......................................................................................... 9-10
9.18. Certification Basis ........................................................................................................................... 9-10
9.19. Environmental Requirements ....................................................................................................... 9-11
T 1.  Traffic Symbology ............................................................................................................................. T-1
  T 1.1. Traffic Display Definitions .......................................................................................................... T-1
  T 1.2. Traffic Rendering Rules ............................................................................................................. T-2
  T 1.3. Traffic Thumbnail ....................................................................................................................... T-3
T 2.  TCAS-II Traffic RA indicator ........................................................................................................... T-3
T 3. Dedicated Traffic Page ........................................................... T-4
  T 3.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu .............................................. T-4
  T 3.2. Traffic Display Format .................................................. T-4
  T 3.3. Traffic Page Screen Range ............................................ T-4
  T 3.4. Compass Rose Symbols ................................................. T-4
  T 3.5. Clock and Options ....................................................... T-5
  T 3.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions .............. T-6
  T 3.7. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways ...... T-6
T 4. OASIS Traffic Page Overlays ................................................ T-7
T 5. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) (L1) Menu ................................ T-7
T 6. MFD Traffic Format (FORMAT..) (R4) Menu ......................... T-7
T 7. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) (R4) Menu ....................................... T-8
T 8. Menu Synchronization ....................................................... T-8
RBP 1. Remote BUGs Panel ...................................................... RBP-1
S 1. WX-500 Data ........................................................................... S-1
S 2. Dedicated Strikes Page .......................................................... S-2
  S 2.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu .............................................. S-2
  S 2.1.1. MFD STRIKES Page (Step-By-Step) .......................... S-2
  S 2.2. Page Screen Range .................................................... S-2
  S 2.3. Air Data and Groundspeed ......................................... S-2
  S 2.4. Clock and Options ....................................................... S-3
  S 2.5. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways ...... S-4
  S 2.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions .............. S-4
S 3. MFD Faults Display (FAULTS) Menu ..................................... S-4
S 4. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions ......................... S-4
S 5. MFD Strikes Format (FORMAT) Menu .................................... S-5
S 6. OASIS Strikes Screen Overlays ............................................. S-5
S 7. Menu Synchronization ....................................................... S-5
D 1. Datalink Symbology ............................................................... D-1
D 2. Dedicated Datalink Page ....................................................... D-4
  D 2.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu .............................................. D-4
  D 2.2. Ownship Symbol ......................................................... D-5
D 2.3.  Datalink Page Legend ................................................ D-5
D 2.4.  Air Data and Groundspeed ........................................ D-5
D 2.5.  Clock and Options ......................................................... D-5
D 2.6.  Datalink Page Screen Orientation ................................ D-7
D 2.7.  Boundary Circle Symbols ............................................. D-8
D 2.8.  Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways ...... D-8
D 2.9.  Borders ................................................................. D-9
D 2.10. Pan Mode................................................................... D-9
D 3.  Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-Up Function Descriptions .... D-9
D 4.  MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions ................. D-10
D 5.  MFD Datalink Format Menu........................................... D-10
D 5.1.  MFD DATALINK Page (Step-By-Step) ..................... D-11
D 6.  Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options ................. D-12
D 7.  Information (INFO) Menu ............................................... D-12
D 8.  MFD Fault Display Menu ................................................ D-12
D 9.  Menu Synchronization ..................................................... D-13
WX 1.  Weather Radar .......................................................... WX-1
WX 2.  Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions .................... WX-3
WX 3.  PFD Weather Radar Page Format (FORMAT) Menu..... WX-3
WX 3.1.  Ownship Symbol .................................................. WX-3
WX 3.2.  Weather Radar Page Format ................................... WX-6
WX 3.3.  Weather Radar Page Screen Range ....................... WX-8
WX 3.4.  Track Line ............................................................ WX-8
WX 3.5.  Active Flight Plan Path/ Manual Course/ Runways . WX-9
WX 3.6.  Weather Radar Return Data .................................. WX-10
WX 3.7.  Air Data and Groundspeed .................................... WX-12
WX 3.8.  Clock/Options ......................................................... WX-12
WX 3.9.  Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions ...... WX-14
WX 4.  MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu.......................... WX-14
WX 5.  Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-Up Function Descriptions...... WX-15
WX 6.  Menu Synchronization .................................................. WX-15
RD 1. PFD Primary Flight Instrumentation .................................... RD-1
RD 1.1. Pitch Scale ..................................................................... RD-1
RD 1.2. Flight Director Symbology ........................................ RD-1
RD 1.3. Marker Beacon Indicators ......................................... RD-2
RD 1.4. Unusual Attitude Mode ............................................. RD-2
RD 1.5. Bank Angle Scale ..................................................... RD-3
RD 1.6. Pitch Limit Indicator ................................................ RD-3
RD 1.7. AGL Indication ........................................................ RD-4
RD 1.8. Landing Gear Indication ........................................... RD-5
RD 1.9. Airspeed Display ...................................................... RD-5
  RD 1.9.1 Airspeed Readout .................................................... RD-7
  RD 1.9.2 Takeoff and Landing Speed Bugs ............................ RD-8
RD 1.10. Altimeter .................................................................. RD-9
RD 1.11. Altitude Display ...................................................... RD-10
  RD 1.11.1 Loss of ADC Sensor Indication .......................... RD-11
  RD 1.11.2 Altitude Sub-Mode ............................................. RD-11
  RD 1.11.3 Metric Altitude .................................................. RD-12
RD 1.12. Vertical Speed Indicator .......................................... RD-12
RD 1.13. Heading Display ..................................................... RD-14
RD 1.14. Heading Failure Mode .......................................... RD-14
RD 1.15. G-Force Indicator ................................................ RD-15
RD 1.16. Turn Rate Indicator ................................................ RD-16
RD 1.17. Timer Indication ...................................................... RD-16
RD 1.18. Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI) ........................... RD-17
RD 1.19. Course Deviation Indicator .................................. RD-19
RD 1.20. Vertical Deviation Indicator (EFIS Coupled) .......... RD-22
RD 1.21. Active Waypoint and Waypoint Identifier ............... RD-22
RD 2. GPS Failure .................................................................. RD-23
RD 3. PFD Failure Mode 0 ..................................................... RD-24
  RD 3.1. PFD Failure Mode 1 .............................................. RD-25
  RD 3.2. PFD Failure Mode 2 .............................................. RD-25
SAR 1. Search and Rescue (SAR) Patterns ............................. SAR-1
SAR 1.1.   SAR Pattern Step-by-Step Procedures ...............SAR-1
SAR 2.   Expanding Square Pattern.............................................SAR-4
SAR 3.   Rising Ladder Pattern ....................................................SAR-6
SAR 4.   Orbit Pattern...................................................................SAR-7
SAR 5.   Race Track Pattern ........................................................SAR-8
SAR 6.   Sector Search Pattern ........................................................SAR-10

INDEX

GLOSSARY
List of Figures and Tables

FIGURE 1-1: IDU-680 INPUT IDENTIFICATION ............................................................... 1-1
TABLE 2-1: PERTINENT EFIS LIMITS SETTINGS ....................................................... 2-12
FIGURE 2-1: IDU-450 PRIMARY FLIGHT DISPLAY (PFD) .......................................... 2-14
FIGURE 2-2: IDU-450 MULTIFUNCTION FLIGHT DISPLAY (MFD) .............................. 2-15
FIGURE 2-3: SYSTEM DIAGRAM ............................................................................. 2-15
FIGURE 2-4: IDU-450 INITIALIZATION SCREEN ..................................................... 2-16
TABLE 2-2: IDU SOFTWARE VERSION AND PART NUMBER ................................. 2-16
TABLE 2-3: IDU NUMBER DESIGNATION ................................................................. 2-17
FIGURE 2-5: LOGO SCREEN WITH “TESTING” ......................................................... 2-19
FIGURE 2-6: CRC SCREEN ....................................................................................... 2-20
FIGURE 2-7: TWO-MINUTE COUNTDOWN SCREEN ................................................. 2-20
FIGURE 2-8: QUICK START SCREEN ........................................................................ 2-21
TABLE 2-4: COLOR CONVENTIONS ......................................................................... 2-23
TABLE 2-5: TIME-CRITICAL WARNING AND CAUTION ALERTS IN PRIMARY FIELD OF VIEW ........................................................................................................... 2-25
FIGURE 2-9: TIME-CRITICAL WARNING ALERT ...................................................... 2-26
FIGURE 2-10: TIME-CRITICAL CAUTION ALERT .................................................... 2-26
TABLE 2-6: TIME-CRITICAL WARNING AND CAUTION ALERTS ............................ 2-26
FIGURE 2-11: WARNING ALERTS ............................................................................. 2-28
TABLE 2-7: WARNING ALERT ELEMENTS ............................................................... 2-29
TABLE 2-8: WARNING ALERTS ................................................................................. 2-29
TABLE 2-9: CAUTION ALERT ELEMENTS ................................................................. 2-30
TABLE 2-10: CAUTION ALERTS ............................................................................. 2-30
TABLE 2-11: SIDE-SPECIFIC CAUTION ALERTS ..................................................... 2-38
FIGURE 2-12: CAUTION ALERTS ............................................................................. 2-38
TABLE 2-12: ADVISORY ALERT ELEMENTS .............................................................. 2-38
TABLE 2-13: ADVISORY ALERTS .......................................................................... 2-38
TABLE 2-14: SIDE-SPECIFIC ADVISORY ALERTS .................................................. 2-39
TABLE 2-15: AUDIO-ONLY CAUTION AND ADVISORY ALERTS ............................ 2-43
FIGURE 2-13: GROUND MAINTENANCE PAGE ...................................................... 2-48
FIGURE 3-1: PFD .................................................................................................... 3-1
FIGURE 3-2: PFD IN BASIC MODE ........................................................................ 3-1
FIGURE 3-3: MFD .................................................................................................. 3-2
FIGURE 3-4: PFD SYMBOLOGY .............................................................................. 3-2
FIGURE 3-5: SELECTING ALTIMETER SETTING .................................................... 3-3
FIGURE 3-6: ALTITUDE DISPLAY (METRIC UNITS) ................................................. 3-3
FIGURE 3-7: ALTIMETER SETTING ...................................................................... 3-4
FIGURE 3-8: QFE ALTIMETER SETTING ............................................................... 3-4
FIGURE 3-9: TARGET ALTITUDE .......................................................................... 3-5
FIGURE 3-10: TARGET ALTITUDE BUG ................................................................. 3-5
FIGURE 3-11: TARGET ALTITUDE BUG (WITHOUT AUTOPILOT) ............................ 3-5
FIGURE 3-12: ALTITUDE DISPLAY (VNAV TILE) ..................................................... 3-5
FIGURE 3-13: VNAV SUB-MODE (NOT VERTICALLY INTEGRATED) ....................... 3-6
FIGURE 3-14: VNAV SUB-MODE WITH GENESYS/S-TEC DFCS ......................... 3-6
FIGURE 3-15: MINIMUM ALTITUDE ...................................................................... 3-7
FIGURE 3-16: VSI ........................................................................................... 3-7
FIGURE 3-17: VSI BUG ................................................................................ 3-7
TABLE 3-1: SCALE GRADUATIONS AND DISPLAY ....................................... 3-8
FIGURE 3-18: VSI BUG WITHOUT GENESYS/S-TEC DFCS .......................... 3-8
FIGURE 3-19: VSI BUG WITH GENESYS/S-TEC DFCS ................................ 3-8
FIGURE 3-20: NORMAL AGL INDICATION .................................................... 3-9
TABLE 3-2: AGL INDICATION ....................................................................... 3-9
FIGURE 3-21: ANALOG AGL INDICATION ..................................................... 3-9
TABLE 3-3: ANALOG AGL INDICATOR .......................................................... 3-9
TABLE 3-4: ANALOG AGL INDICATOR MARKINGS ....................................... 3-10
FIGURE 3-22: DECISION HEIGHT ................................................................. 3-10
FIGURE 3-23: AIRSPEED DISPLAY ................................................................. 3-11
FIGURE 3-24: AIRSPEED TREND ................................................................. 3-12
FIGURE 3-25: AIRSPEED BUG OFF SCALE .................................................. 3-12
TABLE 3-5: AIRSPEED BUG LIMITS .............................................................. 3-12
TABLE 3-6: AIRSPEED BUG SETTING ANNUNCIATION AND BUG COLORS ... 3-12
FIGURE 3-26: AIRSPEED SCALE FAR PART 23 ........................................... 3-13
FIGURE 3-27: AIRSPEED SCALE FAR PART 25 ........................................... 3-14
FIGURE 3-28: AIRSPEED DISPLAY (WITH EFIS-COUPLED) .......................... 3-15
FIGURE 3-29: HEADING DISPLAY ................................................................. 3-16
FIGURE 3-30: DAMPENED INTEGRAL SLIP INDICATOR ............................... 3-16
TABLE 3-7: HEADING DISPLAY ..................................................................... 3-16
FIGURE 3-31: DG INDICATED WHEN AHRS IN DG MODE ............................ 3-17
FIGURE 3-32: GPS LOSS OF NAVIGATION (LON) ........................................ 3-17
FIGURE 3-33: PITCH SCALE ........................................................................ 3-17
FIGURE 3-34: PITCH SCALE ZENITH AND NADIR SYMBOL ....................... 3-18
FIGURE 3-35: PITCH LIMIT INDICATOR (5 KNOTS ABOVE STALL) .............. 3-18
FIGURE 3-36: PITCH LIMIT INDICATOR (20 KNOTS ABOVE STALL) ............ 3-19
FIGURE 3-37: TURN INDICATION (SELECTED FROM DECLUTTER MENU) ...... 3-19
FIGURE 3-38: G-FORCE INDICATOR .............................................................. 3-20
FIGURE 3-39: G-FORCE INDICATOR TELLTALE INDICATIONs .................... 3-20
FIGURE 3-40: ANALOG G-FORCE INDICATOR ............................................ 3-20
FIGURE 3-41: RESET G .............................................................................. 3-20
FIGURE 3-42: LANDING GEAR INDICATION ............................................... 3-21
FIGURE 3-43: UNUSUAL ATTITUDE MODE .................................................. 3-21
FIGURE 3-44: PFD TERRAIN AND OBSTRUCTIONS ..................................... 3-23
TABLE 3-8: LAT-LON RESOLUTION BOUNDARIES ..................................... 3-23
TABLE 3-9: TERRAIN AND OBSTRUCTION RENDERING LEVELS ............... 3-24
FIGURE 3-45: TERRAIN DESELECTED ON PFD AND RETAINED ON MFD MAP 3-24
FIGURE 3-46: PFD WITH OBSTRUCTIONS ................................................. 3-25
FIGURE 3-47: FLIGHT PATH MARKER .......................................................... 3-26
FIGURE 3-48: FLIGHT PATH MARKER VIEWS ............................................. 3-26
TABLE 3-10: FLIGHT PATH MARKER BEHAVIOR ....................................... 3-27
FIGURE 3-49: FLIGHT PATH MARKER GHOST ............................................. 3-27
FIGURE 3-50: FLIGHT PATH MARKER ABSENCE ....................................... 3-27
FIGURE 3-51: BANK ANGLE ....................................................................... 3-28
FIGURE 3-52: TIMER ............................................................................... 3-28
FIGURE 3-53: MARKER BEACONS .............................................................. 3-28
FIGURE 3-54: FLIGHT DIRECTOR FD1 SINGLE CUE ................................................. 3-29
FIGURE 3-55: FLIGHT DIRECTOR FD1 ............................................................... 3-29
FIGURE 3-56: FLIGHT DIRECTOR FD2 (NORMAL MODE) .............................. 3-30
FIGURE 3-57: FLIGHT DIRECTOR FD2 COURSE DEVIATION INDICATOR .... 3-30
FIGURE 3-58: COURSE DEVIATION INDICATOR ............................................. 3-30
TABLE 3-11: CDI BEHAVIOR AND COLOR .................................................... 3-31
FIGURE 3-59: CDI NO AUTOPILOT OR FULLY-INTEGRATED AUTOPILOT ....... 3-33
FIGURE 3-60: VERTICAL DEVIATION INDICATOR .......................................... 3-33
FIGURE 3-61: VDI COLOR DURING GPS/SBAS LON OR VOLON ................... 3-34
TABLE 3-12: VERTICAL DEVIATION INDICATOR BEHAVIOR ............... 3-34
FIGURE 3-62: EFIS COUPLED VERTICALLY WITH GLIDESLOPE MODE ........ 3-35
FIGURE 3-63: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY ............................................................ 3-36
FIGURE 3-64: ACTIVE WAYPOINT ............................................................... 3-36
FIGURE 3-65: MINI MAP ........................................................................ 3-38
TABLE 3-13: MINI-MAP BEHAVIOR (WHEN NOT DECLUTTERED) ............ 3-38
FIGURE 3-66: RUNWAYS ........................................................................ 3-39
TABLE 3-14: RUNWAY DRAWING CRITERIA .............................................. 3-39
FIGURE 3-67: OWNSHIP SYMBOLS ............................................................ 3-40
FIGURE 3-68: BASIC MOVING MAP ............................................................. 3-40
FIGURE 3-69: MOVING MAP WITH INSTRUMENT APPROACH WITH HSI ENABLED .......................... 3-41
FIGURE 3-70: NORTH-UP ARC MODE WITH HSI ENABLED AND VOR1 SELECTED ....... 3-42
FIGURE 3-71: NORTH-UP CENTERED MODE WITH HSI ENABLED AND VLOC1 SELECTED ....... 3-42
FIGURE 3-72: HEADING-UP CENTERED MODE ......................................... 3-43
FIGURE 3-73: COMPASS ROSE/ND BOUNDARY CIRCLE SYMBOL .............. 3-43
FIGURE 3-74: CLOCK OPTIONS ................................................................. 3-43
TABLE 3-15: CLOCK/OPTIONS ............................................................... 3-43
FIGURE 3-75: AIR DATA AND GROUNDSPEED ........................................ 3-44
FIGURE 3-76: FUEL TOTALIZER/ WAYPOINT DISTANCE FUNCTIONS ........ 3-45
TABLE 3-16: FUEL TOTALIZER/WAYPOINT DISTANCE FUNCTIONS .... 3-45
FIGURE 3-77: NAVIGATION DATA AND AIRSPACE DEPICTION ............ 3-46
TABLE 3-17: NAVIGATION SYMBOLOGY .................................................. 3-47
TABLE 3-18: AIRSPACE DEPICTION ......................................................... 3-47
FIGURE 3-78: ANALOG NAVIGATION SYMBOLOGY, IN ARC MODE WITH HSI ENABLED .......... 3-48
FIGURE 3-79: ANALOG NAVIGATION SYMBOLOGY, HSI IN CENTERED MODE .... 3-49
FIGURE 3-80: WITH INTERNATIONAL AND STATE BORDERS ............... 3-49
FIGURE 3-81: WITHOUT INTERNATIONAL AND STATE BORDERS ....... 3-50
FIGURE 3-82: TERRAIN AND OBSTRUCTIONS ......................................... 3-50
TABLE 3-19: TERRAIN COLOR ................................................................. 3-51
TABLE 3-20: OBSTRUCTIONS ................................................................. 3-51
FIGURE 3-83: PAN MODE .................................................................... 3-52
FIGURE 3-84: START POINT ................................................................. 3-52
FIGURE 3-85: DIRECT POINT ................................................................. 3-53
FIGURE 3-86: TOP-OF-DESCENT OR TOP-OF-CLimb ......................... 3-53
FIGURE 3-87: TOP-OF-DESCENT AND BOTTOM-OF-DESCENT ........... 3-54
FIGURE 3-88: PROJECTED PATH ............................................................. 3-54
FIGURE 3-89: PARALLEL TRACK ................................................................. 3-55
FIGURE 3-90: GPS/SBAS OBS MANUAL .................................................. 3-55
FIGURE 3-91: FIELD OF VIEW ................................................................. 3-56
FIGURE 3-92: RANGE .............................................................................. 3-56
FIGURE 3-93: HSI SCREEN ...................................................................... 3-57
FIGURE 3-94: COMPASS ROSE ............................................................... 3-57
FIGURE 3-95: HSI POINTER COLOR .......................................................... 3-58
FIGURE 3-96: CDI SCALE WITH VDI ...................................................... 3-59
FIGURE 3-97: ANALOG NAVIGATION DISPLAY VOR1 AND VOR2 .............. 3-59
FIGURE 3-98: ANALOG NAVIGATION DISPLAY FMS AND ADF2 ............... 3-60
FIGURE 3-99: HSI BEARING DISTANCE READOUT WITH DME IN HOLD ......... 3-60
FIGURE 3-100: PFD AND MFD HSI WITH MARKER BEACON DISPLAYED .......... 3-61
FIGURE 3-101: HSI DISPLAY AIR DATA AND GROUNDSPEED ..................... 3-61
FIGURE 3-102: HSI CLOCK .................................................................... 3-61
FIGURE 3-103: HSI FUEL TOTALIZER/WAYPOINT DISTANCE ..................... 3-62
FIGURE 3-104: NAVIGATION LOG .......................................................... 3-62
TABLE 4-1: PFD FUNCTIONS ................................................................. 4-2
TABLE 4-2: ND FUNCTIONS .................................................................... 4-3
TABLE 4-3: OUTPUT FUNCTIONS ............................................................. 4-3
FIGURE 4-1: GPS TRK ............................................................................ 4-5
FIGURE 4-2: LOSS OF INTEGRITY (LOI) ................................................... 4-6
FIGURE 4-3: FAULTS MENU ON MFD ....................................................... 4-7
FIGURE 4-4: LOSS OF VERTICAL NAVIGATION (VLON) ............................. 4-8
FIGURE 4-5: PFD FAILURE MODE 0 GPS, ADC AND AHRS NORMAL ............. 4-9
FIGURE 4-6: MFD FAILURE MODE 0 GPS, ADC AND AHRS NORMAL ............. 4-9
FIGURE 4-7: PFD FAILURE MODE 1 GPS/SBAS FAILED, ADC AND AHRS NORMAL ................................................................. 4-10
FIGURE 4-8: MFD FAILURE MODE 1 GPS/SBAS FAILED, ADC AND AHRS NORMAL ................................................................. 4-10
FIGURE 4-9: PFD MODE 2 ADC FAILED, GPS/SBAS AND AHRS NORMAL .... 4-11
FIGURE 4-10: MFD FAILURE MODE 2, (NORMAL MODE) ADC FAILED, GPS/SBAS AND AHRS NORMAL ................................................................. 4-11
FIGURE 4-11: PFD FAILURE MODE 3 AHRS FAILED, GPS/SBAS AND ADC NORMAL ................................................................. 4-12
FIGURE 4-12: MFD FAILURE MODE 3 AHRS FAILED, GPS/SBAS AND ADC NORMAL ................................................................. 4-12
FIGURE 4-13: PFD FAILURE MODE 4 GPS/SBAS AND ADC FAILED, AHRS NORMAL ................................................................. 4-13
FIGURE 4-14: MFD FAILURE MODE 4 GPS/SBAS AND ADC FAILED, AHRS NORMAL ................................................................. 4-13
FIGURE 4-15: PFD FAILURE MODE 5 GPS/SBAS AND AHRS FAILED, ADC NORMAL ................................................................. 4-14
FIGURE 4-16: MFD FAILURE MODE 5 GPS/SBAS AND AHRS FAILED, ADC NORMAL ................................................................. 4-14
FIGURE 4-17: PFD FAILURE MODE 6 ADC AND AHRS FAILED, GPS/SBAS NORMAL ................................................................. 4-15
FIGURE 4-18: MFD FAILURE MODE 6 (NORMAL MODE) ADC AND AHRS FAILED, GPS/SBAS NORMAL ................................................................. 4-15
FIGURE 4-19: PFD FAILURE MODE 7  GPS/SBAS, ADC AND AHRS FAILED ... 4-16
FIGURE 4-20: MFD FAILURE MODE 7  GPS/SBAS, ADC AND AHRS FAILURE. 4-16
FIGURE 5-1: IDU-450 INPUT CONTROLS ............................................................. 5-1
FIGURE 5-2: IDU-450 MENU MESSAGES ............................................................ 5-2
TABLE 5-1: MENU SYNCHRONIZATION .............................................................. 5-3
FIGURE 5-3: PFD TOP-LEVEL MENU ................................................................. 5-6
TABLE 5-2: TOP-LEVEL MENU AUTOMATIC FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS, TILE LEGEND, AND ACTION IN ORDER OF PRECEDENCE ............................................................. 5-7
FIGURE 5-4: FIRST PAGE PFD ......................................................................... 5-9
TABLE 5-3: CROSSFILL INHIBIT/ARM/SYNC FUNCTION ..................................... 5-11
FIGURE 5-5: FIRST-LEVEL MFD ..................................................................... 5-12
FIGURE 5-6: FLIGHT PLAN MENU ................................................................. 5-12
FIGURE 5-7: ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN MAIN MENU .............................................. 5-26
FIGURE 5-8: ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN MENU OPTIONS ....................................... 5-27
TABLE 5-4: ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN MENU OPTIONS .......................................... 5-28
FIGURE 5-9: INFORMATION MENU ............................................................... 5-34
TABLE 5-5: OMNIBEARING SELECTOR (OBS) MENU ...................................... 5-37
TABLE 5-6: OMNIBEARING SELECTOR (OBS) MENU OPTIONS ..................... 5-38
FIGURE 5-10: HEADING BUG (HDG) MENU .................................................... 5-40
FIGURE 5-11: NEAREST (NRST) MENU .......................................................... 5-41
FIGURE 5-12: DIRECT MENU ......................................................................... 5-44
FIGURE 5-13: TIME MENU ............................................................................... 5-46
FIGURE 5-14: PFD SOURCE MENU ................................................................. 5-49
FIGURE 5-15: AHRS SLAVE/AHRS SLEW ...................................................... 5-49
FIGURE 5-16: MFD FAULT DISPLAY MENU .................................................... 5-50
FIGURE 5-17: ALTIMETER MENU ................................................................. 5-58
FIGURE 5-18: MFD FAULT DISPLAY MENU .................................................... 5-59
FIGURE 5-19: MFD SET FUEL ......................................................................... 5-62
TABLE 7-1: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY CONFIGURATION ...................................... 7-7
FIGURE 7-1: VERTICAL DEVIATION INDICATOR LINEAR DEVIATION ................... 7-6
FIGURE 7-2: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY (AIRCRAFT REFERENCED) ..................... 7-8
FIGURE 7-3: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY (GEO-REFERENCED BACKWARD) ........... 7-9
FIGURE 7-4: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY (GEO-REFERENCED FORWARD) ............. 7-9
TABLE 7-2: FINAL SEGMENT OF IFR APPROACH, DESCENT ANGLE AND VNAV WAYPOINT .................................................................................................................... 7-9
FIGURE D-2: DATALINK SYMBOLOGY WITH NEXRAD ON ........................................... D-1
TABLE D-1: ADS-B DATA .................................................................................. D-2
TABLE D-2: DATALINK NEXRAD DATA ................................................................. D-2
TABLE D-3: GRAPHICAL METAR SYMBOLS ...................................................... D-2
TABLE D-4: GRAPHICAL METARS (G METARS) SCREEN RANGE ......................... D-3
FIGURE D-3: NRST AIRPORT INFO .................................................................... D-3
TABLE D-5: DATALINK GRAPHICAL METAR PRECIPITATION .............................. D-3
FIGURE D-4: METAR AND TAF REPORT FOR KPHX ........................................ D-4
FIGURE D-5: DATALINK SYMBOLOGY OWNSHIP SYMBOL .................................. D-5
FIGURE D-6: ADS-B DATALINK LEGEND .......................................................... D-5
FIGURE D-7: CLOCK/OPTIONS ........................................................................ D-5
TABLE D-6: DATALINK NEXRAD STATUS .......................................................... D-6
FIGURE D-8: DATALINK PAGE SCREEN RANGE ................................................. D-7
TABLE D-7: DATALINK PAGE SCREEN RANGES .................................................. D-7
FIGURE D-9: BOUNDARY CIRCLE SYMBOL ...................................................... D-8
TABLE D-8: TILE LEGEND AND ACTION IN ORDER OF PRECEDENCE ..................... D-9
FIGURE D-10: MFD DATALINK FORMAT MENU .............................................. D-10
FIGURE D-11: FAULTS MENU WITH ADS-B STATUS ....................................... D-12
TABLE D-9: MENU SYNCHRONIZATION ........................................................... D-13
FIGURE WX-1: WEATHER RADAR IMAGE ON MAP ........................................... WX-2
FIGURE WX-2: MFD WEATHER RADAR PAGE .............................................. WX-2
TABLE WX-1: WEATHER RADAR INHIBITED CONDITIONS .............................. WX-2
FIGURE WX-3: OWNSHIP SYMBOL .................................................................... WX-4
FIGURE WX-4: PFD WX RDR FORMAT (FORMAT) MENU ..................................... WX-4
FIGURE WX-5: WX RDR DECLUTTER (DCLTR) MENU ........................................... WX-6
FIGURE WX-6: RADAR IMAGE IN ARC FORMAT .................................................. WX-6
FIGURE WX-7: RADAR IMAGE IN ARC FORMAT (STAB LIMIT) ........................... WX-7
FIGURE WX-8: RADAR IMAGE IN PROFILE DEPICTION .................................... WX-7
FIGURE WX-9: RADAR IMAGE IN PROFILE DEPICTION (STAB LIMIT) .............. WX-8
FIGURE WX-10: RADAR TRACK LINE ............................................................. WX-9
FIGURE WX-11: RADAR TRACK LINE WITH MENUS ........................................ WX-9
FIGURE WX-12: RADAR ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN .................................................. WX-10
FIGURE WX-13: RADAR ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN .................................................... WX-10
FIGURE WX-14: RADAR RETURN DATA .......................................................... WX-11
TABLE WX-2: WEATHER RADAR RETURN DATA .............................................. WX-11
FIGURE WX-15: RADAR CLOCK/OPTIONS ........................................................ WX-12
TABLE WX-3: RDR 2100 APPLICABILITY ......................................................... WX-12
TABLE WX-4: RDR 2100 MODE ANNUNCIATION ............................................. WX-13
TABLE WX-5: TOP-LEVEL AUTO POP-UP FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS .................. WX-15
TABLE WX-6: MENU SYNCHRONIZATION ......................................................... WX-15
FIGURE RD-1: PITCH SCALE ........................................................................... RD-1
FIGURE RD-2: FLIGHT DIRECTOR .................................................................... RD-2
FIGURE RD-3: MARKER BEACON INDICATORS ............................................... RD-2
FIGURE RD-4: UNUSUAL ATTITUDE MODE ...................................................... RD-3
FIGURE RD-5: BANK ANGLE SCALE TYPES ..................................................... RD-3
FIGURE RD-6: PITCH LIMIT INDICATOR ............................................................ RD-4
FIGURE RD-7: AGL INDICATOR ........................................................................ RD-4
TABLE RD-1: AGL ALTITUDE VALUES ............................................................... RD-5
FIGURE RD-8: LANDING GEAR INDICATION .................................................... RD-5
FIGURE RD-9: AIRSPEED DISPLAY ............................................................. RD-6
FIGURE RD-10: AIRSPEED DISPLAY LIMITS AND BUGS ............................. RD-6
TABLE RD-2: AIRSPEED BUGS ................................................................... RD-6
FIGURE RD-11: AIRSPEED READOUT WITH MACH NUMBER ................. RD-7
FIGURE RD-12: TAKEOFF AND LANDING SPEED BUGS ............................. RD-9
FIGURE RD-13: ALTIMETER SETTING ....................................................... RD-9
FIGURE RD-14: ALTIMETER QNH ............................................................. RD-9
FIGURE RD-15: ALTIMETER QFE ............................................................. RD-9
FIGURE RD-16: ALTITUDE DISPLAY ......................................................... RD-10
FIGURE RD-17: ALTITUDE DISPLAY (WHEN BELOW SEA LEVEL) ............. RD-10
FIGURE RD-18: AIRSPEED AND ALTITUDE WITH LOSS OF ADC ............. RD-11
FIGURE RD-19: TARGET ALTITUDE BUG ................................................. RD-11
FIGURE RD-20: VNAV SUB-MODE ............................................................ RD-12
FIGURE RD-21: METRIC ALTITUDE .......................................................... RD-12
FIGURE RD-22: VERTICAL SPEED INDICATOR ......................................... RD-13
FIGURE RD-23: VERTICAL SPEED INDICATOR RA DISPLAY ....................... RD-13
TABLE RD-3: SCALE GRADUATIONS AND DISPLAY ............................... RD-13
FIGURE RD-24: VSI BUGS ....................................................................... RD-14
FIGURE RD-25: HEADING DISPLAY ........................................................... RD-14
FIGURE RD-26: HEADING INDICATOR WHEN AHRS IN DG MODE ............. RD-14
FIGURE RD-27: GPS TRK ....................................................................... RD-15
FIGURE RD-28: HEADING INDICATOR WITH HEADING FAILURE AND GOOD GPS ................................................................. RD-15
FIGURE RD-29: HEADING INDICATOR WITH HEADING FAILURE WITH GPS FAILURE ............................................................. RD-15
FIGURE RD-30: G-FORCE INDICATOR ....................................................... RD-15
FIGURE RD-31: G-FORCE TELLTALE INDICATION ..................................... RD-16
FIGURE RD-32: TURN RATE INDICATOR ................................................. RD-16
FIGURE RD-33: TIMER INDICATION ......................................................... RD-16
FIGURE RD-34: VERTICAL DEVIATION INDICATOR (VDI) ......................... RD-17
TABLE RD-4: VERTICAL DEVIATION INDICATOR BEHAVIOR ..................... RD-17
FIGURE RD-35: VDI COLOR DURING GPS/SBAS LON OR VLON ................ RD-18
FIGURE RD-36: COURSE DEVIATION INDICATOR ..................................... RD-19
TABLE RD-5: CDI BEHAVIOR AND COLOR ............................................. RD-19
TABLE RD-6: CDI LATERAL MODE INDICATION ....................................... RD-21
FIGURE RD-37: EFIS COUPLED VERTICALLY WITH GLIDESLOPE MODE .... RD-22
FIGURE RD-38: ACTIVE WAYPOINT ......................................................... RD-22
FIGURE RD-39: LOSS OF INTEGRITY (LOI) ................................................. RD-23
FIGURE RD-40: LOSS OF VERTICAL NAVIGATION (VILON) ....................... RD-24
FIGURE RD-41: PFD FAILURE MODE 0 GPS, ADC AND AHRS NORMAL .... RD-24
FIGURE RD-42: PFD FAILURE MODE 1 GPS/SBAS FAILED, ADC AND AHRS NORMAL ................................................................. RD-25
FIGURE RD-43: PFD FAILURE MODE 2 ADC FAILED, GPS/SBAS and AHRS NORMAL ................................................................. RD-25
FIGURE SAR-1: EXPANDING SQUARE PATTERN .................................... SAR-4
FIGURE SAR-2: EXPANDING SQUARE PATTERN PARAMETERS ................ SAR-4
TABLE SAR-1: EXPANDING SQUARE PATTERN PARAMETERS .................... SAR-5
Section 1  Introduction

1.1. Introduction

The Genesys Aerosystems Electronic Flight Instrument System (EFIS) is a “pilot-centered” system. While still highly automated, it presents the pilot with information necessary to make decisions and take appropriate actions. For example, the Highway-in-the-Sky (HITS) allows for highly automated approaches, but its predictive nature provides the pilot awareness of upcoming maneuvers. Instead of overloading the pilot with information and options, the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS presents only necessary information to reduce workload, decrease task complexity, and minimize confusion, which results in safer flying with less stress and fatigue.

1.2. EFIS/FMS Description

The integrated display unit (IDU) has 8 buttons along the vertical sides referenced as L1 through L4 starting at the top left corner of the display moving down and R1 through R4 from the top right corner moving down the display from a pilot’s perspective.

There are two encoders along the bottom. The left encoder (②) only controls the backlighting intensity. References throughout this guide refer to the right-hand encoder (①) and when to push and/or rotate for desired outcomes.
On the bezel between the two center encoders, a slip indicator or blank housing acts as the USB memory door. When lifted prior to power-up, the ground maintenance mode is initiated after power-up. If a limits change, software, or database update is planned, the USB drive must be inserted prior to power-up.

A sensor on the face of the IDU bezel measures ambient light levels. Use  to control the brightness of the panel or display lighting. To adjust panel lighting (illumination of legends, encoders, inclinometer, and buttons) push and rotate  clockwise to increase or counter clockwise to decrease. To adjust display lighting (illumination of the LCD display) without pushing rotate  as described with panel lighting. Lighting may be controlled locally or remotely with a default state being with the local control.

NOTE:

If entering ground maintenance mode with bright light shining or reflecting directly into the display, shield the light sensor to avoid the IDU from going directly into the flight mode.

1.3. About This Guide

Operation of the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS is described in detail and divided into sections as follows:

TABLE OF CONTENTS: Locate areas by topic

INTRODUCTION (Section 1): Basic explanation of the pilot guide.

SYSTEM OVERVIEW (Section 2): Description of system and hardware; IDU behavior during initialization, warning alerts, time-critical warning alerts, master visual and aural alerts caution alerts, and advisory alerts with conditions; coloring conventions; abbreviations and acronyms; and database update procedures.

DISPLAY SYMBOLOGY (Section 3): Identification of each element of the PFD and MFD, and explanation of symbology.

REVERSIONARY MODES (Section 4): Views of displays with various sensor failed conditions and resulting symbology, as well as, examples of various configurations and display formats used with specific tables showing affected functions. Explanation of what to expect when a particular sensor fails and what changes on the display immediately or after a specified amount of time.
MENU FUNCTIONS AND STEP-BY-STEP PROCEDURES (Section 5): Menu structure of each feature and step-by-step procedures for operation of each task. Basic description of all encoder and button functions with menu tile definitions.

QUICK START TUTORIAL (Section 6): Basics necessary for flying a flight with this system. Includes simple steps to manage displays for existing flight conditions to quickly gain familiarity with where to locate controls to manipulate the system for each operation.

IFR PROCEDURES (Section 7): Detailed information and instruction about selecting and flying instrument procedures with examples of the most popular published procedures with views of referenced published procedures. Includes descriptions of selection of departure, published instrument approach, standard terminal arrival procedures, as well as, how the active flight plan quickly reflects changes to ATC clearances.

TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (Section 8): Description of the TAWS (all classes) functionality for this fixed wing aircraft with all configurations. Defines the various parameters, which automatically apply to each mode of flight.

APPENDIX (Section 9): Contains support material and other useful information about system operation, guidance from Jeppesen, and supplemental information such as flight planning; magnetic vs. true north modes; airspeed/altitude miscompare thresholds; EFIS Training Tool; and downloading routes and user waypoints.

APPENDICES: Traffic, Remote Bugs Panel, WX-500 Lightning Strikes, Datalink, Weather Radar, Round Dials, and Search and Rescue Patterns. Sections on equipment and features not installed in every aircraft and may be removed at the discretion of the end-user.

INDEX: Alphabetical listing of terms or keywords with corresponding page numbers.

GLOSSARY: Alphabetical listing of definitions for terms.
Section 2 System Overview

2.1. Abbreviations and Acronyms

0R No Radius
3D Three-Dimensional
AC Advisory Circular
ACTV Active
ADAHRS Air Data Attitude Heading Reference System
ADC Air Data Computer
ADF Automatic Direction Finder
ADS-B Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast
AFCS Automatic Flight Control System
AFM Aircraft Flight Manual
AFMS Aircraft Flight Manual Supplement
AGL Above Ground Level
AHRS Attitude Heading Reference System
AIRAC Aeronautical Information Regulation and Control
AIRMET Airmen’s Meteorological Information
ALT Pressure Altitude
ALT SEL Altitude Selection
AMLCD Active Matrix Liquid Crystal Display
ANP Actual Navigation Performance
ANT Antenna
AOA Angle of Attack
AP Autopilot
APP Waypoint is part of an Instrument Approach Procedure
APPR Approach
APT Airport
APV Approach with Vertical Guidance
ARINC Aeronautical Radio, Inc.
ARL Auto Range Limiting (RDR-2100)
ARTCC Air Route Traffic Control Center
AS SAE Aerospace Standard
ASEL Aircraft Selected Altitude
Section 2 System Overview

ATC  Air Traffic Control
ATT  Attitude
Baro  Barometric setting
Baro-VNAV  Barometric Vertical Navigation
BC  Backcourse navigation
BIT  Built-in-test
BRT  Brightness
BTM  Bottom
C  Celsius
CA  Course to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)
CALC  as in RAIM (R2)
CAS  Crew Alerting System
CD  Course to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg)
CCW  Counter Clockwise
CDA  Continuous Descent Approach
CDI  Course Deviation Indicator
CF  Course to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
CI  Course to Intercept (ARINC-424 Leg)
CLR  Clear
CNX  Cancel
COM  Communication
CONT  Continue
CPLT  Co-Pilot
CPM  Computer Processor Module
CPU  Central Processing Unit
CR  Course to Radial Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
CRC  Cyclic Redundancy Check
CRS  Course
CSA  Conflict Situation Awareness (ADS-B)
CTRST  Contrast
CW  Clockwise
dBZ  Decibel relative to radar reflectivity (Z)
DCLTR  Declutter
DCND  Descend
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEC HT</td>
<td>Decision Height Bug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESIG</td>
<td>Designate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DF</td>
<td>Direct to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFCS</td>
<td>Digital Flight Control System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFLT</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DG</td>
<td>Directional Gyro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DH</td>
<td>Decision Height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLNK</td>
<td>Datalink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DME</td>
<td>Distance Measuring Equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO</td>
<td>RTCA Document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOD</td>
<td>Department of Defense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DP</td>
<td>Departure Procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DR</td>
<td>Dead Reckoning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFIS</td>
<td>Electronic Flight Instrument System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGM</td>
<td>Earth Gravity Model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGNOS</td>
<td>European Geostationary Navigation Overlay Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGPWS</td>
<td>Enhanced Ground Proximity Warning System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EQPMNT</td>
<td>Equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETA</td>
<td>Estimated Time of Arrival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETE</td>
<td>Estimated Time Enroute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETT</td>
<td>EFIS Training Tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCD</td>
<td>Exceedance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXPND</td>
<td>Expand (used with Datalink)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fahrenheit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA</td>
<td>Course from a Fix to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAA</td>
<td>Federal Aviation Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAF</td>
<td>Final Approach Fix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAR</td>
<td>Federal Aviation Regulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAWP</td>
<td>Final Approach Waypoint (same as FAF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FC</td>
<td>Course Fix to along Track Distance (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FD</td>
<td>Course from a Fix to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg); Flight Director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDE</td>
<td>Fault Detection and Exclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FG</td>
<td>Fixed Gear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FG + F</td>
<td>Fixed Gear with Defined Landing Flaps Position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIS</td>
<td>Flight Information Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIS-B</td>
<td>Flight Information Service-Broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FL</td>
<td>Flight Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLTA</td>
<td>Forward Looking Terrain Awareness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FM</td>
<td>Course from Fix to Manual termination (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMS</td>
<td>Flight Management System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOV</td>
<td>Field of View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPL</td>
<td>Flight Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fpm</td>
<td>Feet per minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPM</td>
<td>Flight Path Marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPNM</td>
<td>Feet Per Nautical Mile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRT</td>
<td>Fixed-Radius Transition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSD</td>
<td>Full Scale Deflection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FT</td>
<td>Feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTE</td>
<td>Flight Technical Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP</td>
<td>Fictitious Threshold Point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FNCT</td>
<td>Function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAGAN</td>
<td>India’s GPS and GEO-Augmented Navigation System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GARP</td>
<td>GNSS Azimuth Reference Point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBAS</td>
<td>Australia’s Ground Based Augmentation System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLS</td>
<td>GNSS Landing System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GMAP</td>
<td>Ground Map mode (RDR-2100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GMETAR</td>
<td>Graphical METAR (also GMTR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GMF</td>
<td>Ground Maintenance Function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GN</td>
<td>Gain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GND</td>
<td>Ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GNSS</td>
<td>Global Navigation Satellite System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI</td>
<td>Glidepath Intercept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPIP</td>
<td>Glide Path Intercept Point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>Global Positioning System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPSV</td>
<td>Global Positioning System Vertical Navigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPWS</td>
<td>Ground Proximity Warning System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GS</td>
<td>Glideslope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Hold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HA</td>
<td>Terminates at an altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HF</td>
<td>Holding, Pattern to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HM</td>
<td>Altitude or Manual Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAL</td>
<td>Horizontal Alert Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAT</td>
<td>Height Above Threshold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDG</td>
<td>Heading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HFOM</td>
<td>Horizontal Figure of Merit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hh:mm:ss</td>
<td>Hours: Minutes: Seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HITS</td>
<td>Highway in the Sky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLTH</td>
<td>Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORIZ</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOTAS</td>
<td>Hands on Throttle and Stick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hPa</td>
<td>Hectopascal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPL</td>
<td>Horizontal Protection Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSI</td>
<td>Horizontal Situation Indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HUD</td>
<td>Head Up Display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAP</td>
<td>Instrument Approach Procedure; Initial Approach Point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAS</td>
<td>Indicated Airspeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAWP</td>
<td>Initial Approach Waypoint (same as IAP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICAO</td>
<td>International Civil Aviation Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Identity or Identification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDU</td>
<td>Integrated Display Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF</td>
<td>Initial Fix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFR</td>
<td>Instrument Flight Rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ILS</td>
<td>Instrument Landing System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IM</td>
<td>Inner Marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INHBT</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inHg</td>
<td>Inches of Mercury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INIT</td>
<td>Initialize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO</td>
<td>Input/Output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>Initial Point</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section 2 System Overview

IPV  Instrument Procedure with Vertical Guidance
ISA  International Standard Atmosphere
IVSI Instantaneous Vertical Speed Indicator
IWP  Intermediate Approach Waypoint
K    Kilo=1000
KB   Kilobyte
kHz  Kilohertz
KIAS Knots Indicated Airspeed
KT   Knot - Nautical Miles per Hour
KTAS Knots True Airspeed
LAT  Latitude
lbs  Pounds
LCD Liquid Crystal Display
LCL  Local
LDA  Localizer-type Directional Aid
LED  Light Emitting Diode
LGND Legend
LIFR Low IFR conditions (Ceiling < 100’ or visibility < 1 mile)
LNAV Lateral Navigation
LOC  Localizer
LOI  Loss of Integrity
LON Loss of Navigation; Longitude
LP   Localizer Performance
LPV  Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance
LTP  Landing Threshold Point
LVL  Level
MA   Waypoint is part of the missed approach segment of an Instrument Approach Procedure
MAGVAR Magnetic Declination (Variation)
MAHP Missed Approach Holding Point
MAHWP Missed Approach Holding Waypoint (same as MAHP)
MAN  Manual
MAP  Missed Approach Point; Missed Approach Procedure
MASPS Minimum Aviation System Performance Standard
MAWP  Missed Approach Waypoint (also MAWPT)
mbar  Millibars
MDA  Minimum Descent Altitude
MESO  Mesocyclonic
METAR  Routine hourly weather report
MFD  Multifunction Display
MIN  Minimum
MM  Middle Marker
M\textsubscript{MO}  Maximum Operating Mach Number
M\textsubscript{NO}  Maximum Structural Cruising Mach Number
MOA  Military Operations Area
MOT  Mark On Target
MSAS  Japan’s MTSAT-based Satellite Augmentation System
MSG  Message
MSL  Mean Sea Level
MVFR  Marginal Visual Flight Rules
NAS  U.S. National Airspace System
NAV  Navigation
NAVAID  Device or system providing navigational assistance
ND  Navigation Display
NDB  Nondirectional Beacon
NEXRAD  (Next-Generation Radar) network of weather radars operated by the National Weather Service (NWS) (also NXRD)
NIMA  National Imagery and Mapping Agency
NM  Nautical Mile
NRST  Nearest
nT  Nanoteslas (ref. World magnetic Model)
NWS  National Weather Service
OAT  Outside Air Temperature
OBS  Omnibearing Selector
ODP  Obstacle Departure Procedure
OF  Over-fly
OM  Outer Marker
OT  Other Traffic (Traffic Function)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PA</td>
<td>Proximate Advisory (Traffic Function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDA</td>
<td>Premature Descent Alert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD</td>
<td>Primary Flight Display (also refers to the primary IDU with software that only shows primary flight instrumentation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFI</td>
<td>Primary Flight Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI</td>
<td>Procedure Turn (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLI</td>
<td>Pitch Limit Indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT</td>
<td>Pilot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM</td>
<td>Personality Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PN</td>
<td>Pan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROC</td>
<td>Procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRN</td>
<td>Pseudo-Random-Noise (Satellite communications)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>Press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRV</td>
<td>Previous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSH</td>
<td>Push</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTK</td>
<td>Parallel offset (Parallel Track)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTRS</td>
<td>Pointers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PWR</td>
<td>Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QFE</td>
<td>Altimeter setting provides height above reference point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QNE</td>
<td>Altimeter setting provides pressure altitude readout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QNH</td>
<td>Altimeter setting provides MSL altitude at a reporting point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RA</td>
<td>Resolution Advisory (Traffic Function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADALT</td>
<td>Radar Altimeter (also RALT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAD-DST</td>
<td>Radial and Distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAIM</td>
<td>Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBP</td>
<td>Remote Bug Panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCP</td>
<td>Radar Control Panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDR</td>
<td>Radar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RF</td>
<td>Precision Arc to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RG</td>
<td>Retractable Gear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RG + F</td>
<td>Retractable Gear with Defined Landing Flaps Position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RHT</td>
<td>Radar Height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMI</td>
<td>Radio Magnetic Indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNAV</td>
<td>Area Navigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNP</td>
<td>Required Navigation Performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTC</td>
<td>Real Time Computing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTCA</td>
<td>Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTD</td>
<td>Resistive Thermal Detector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RW</td>
<td>Runway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAE</td>
<td>Society of Automotive Engineers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAR</td>
<td>Search and Rescue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAT</td>
<td>Saturation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SATLT</td>
<td>Satellite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBAS</td>
<td>Satellite-Based Augmentation System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCC</td>
<td>System Configuration Card (personality module)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECAM</td>
<td>Analog color television system used in France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIC</td>
<td>Side-in-Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SID</td>
<td>Standard Instrument Departure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMET</td>
<td>Significant Meteorological Advisory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSM</td>
<td>Sign Status Matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAB</td>
<td>Stability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAR</td>
<td>Standard Terminal Arrival Routes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STBY</td>
<td>Stand-by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STD</td>
<td>Standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRKS</td>
<td>Strikes (Lightning detection)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVS</td>
<td>Synthetic Vision System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYMB</td>
<td>Symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC</td>
<td>Synchronize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYRD</td>
<td>System Requirements Document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TA</td>
<td>Traffic Advisory (Traffic Function)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TACAN</td>
<td>Ultra-High Frequency Tactical Air Navigational Aid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAFs</td>
<td>Terminal Aerodrome Forecasts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAS</td>
<td>Traffic Advisory System; True Airspeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAWS</td>
<td>Terrain Awareness and Warning System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCA</td>
<td>Terminal Control Areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCAD</td>
<td>Traffic Collision Alert Device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCAS</td>
<td>Traffic Collision Alert System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TD</td>
<td>Terrain Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T/D</td>
<td>Top of Descent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERPS</td>
<td>Terminal Instrument Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TF</td>
<td>Track to a Fix; Track from Fix to New Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TFR</td>
<td>Temporary Flight Restriction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGT</td>
<td>Target</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIS</td>
<td>Traffic Information Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIS-B</td>
<td>Traffic information Service-Broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLT</td>
<td>Tilt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANS</td>
<td>Transition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRK</td>
<td>Track</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRNDO</td>
<td>Tornadic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO</td>
<td>Technical Standard Order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTA</td>
<td>Time to Alert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TURB</td>
<td>Turbulence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB</td>
<td>Universal Serial Bus flash drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USR</td>
<td>User Waypoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTC</td>
<td>Universal Time Coordinated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VA</td>
<td>Heading to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_A$</td>
<td>Speed above which it is unwise to make full application of any single flight control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAL</td>
<td>Vertical Alert Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{APP}$</td>
<td>Target approach airspeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VD</td>
<td>Heading to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDI</td>
<td>Vertical Deviation Indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERT</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{FE}$</td>
<td>Maximum flap extended speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VFOM</td>
<td>Vertical Figure of Merit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VFR</td>
<td>Visual Flight Rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VHF</td>
<td>Very High Frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Heading to Intercept (ARINC-424 Leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLOC</td>
<td>VOR/Localizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vلون</td>
<td>Vertical Loss of Navigation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VM  Heading to Manual Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
V_{MO}  Maximum operating limit speed
VNAV  Vertical Navigation (also VNV)
V_{NE}  Never exceed speed
V_{NO}  Maximum structural cruising speed or maximum speed for normal operations
VOR  VHF Omnidirectional Radio
VORTAC  Collocated VOR and TACAN
VP  VFR waypoints (five digits beginning with “VP”)
VPL  Vertical Protection Level
V_{PROC}  Procedure Speed
V_{R}  Rotation speed
VR  Heading to Radial Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
V_{REF}  Landing reference speed or threshold crossing speed
VS  Vertical Speed
VSI  Vertical Speed Indicator
VTF  Vectors to Final
V_{YSE}  Best rate of climb speed with a single operating engine a light twin-engine aircraft
WAAS  Wide Area Augmentation System
WGS84  World Geodetic System 1984
WOG  Weight on Ground
WOW  Weight on Wheels
WPT  Waypoint
WX  Weather
WXA  Weather-alert (RDR-2100)
XFILL  Crossfill

2.2. System Overview

The IDU-450 EFIS is a complete flight and navigation instrumentation system intuitively providing information via computer-generated displays. The displays include 3D, enhanced situational awareness primary flight display (PFD) and multi-function display (MFD), which may be configured to show a moving map, HSI, terrain, traffic, datalink, strikes, or weather radar.
At any given time, each system only has one IDU transmit enabled to send RS-232 and RS-422 system transmissions. By default, the PFD is transmit enabled and, if it subsequently fails, the respective MFD becomes transmit enabled.

Table 2-1 describes the EFIS limits set for all screen captured views for this pilot guide development except where different settings are noted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Screen Position Settings:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen Number</td>
<td>#1 or #2 as specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft Type</td>
<td>Generic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Speed Settings:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airspeed Scale Type</td>
<td>FAR 23.1545 with VMO/MMO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airspeed Units</td>
<td>Knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilot-side analog configuration</td>
<td>Tapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital configuration</td>
<td>Pure Digital (or Rolling where depicted)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optional Sensor Settings:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datalink Receiver</td>
<td>ADS-B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAWS Type</td>
<td>Class A (RG + Flaps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic Sensor</td>
<td>TCAD/TAS (RS-232)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WX-500 (STRIKES)</td>
<td>Installed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAR Patterns</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Airframe Settings:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landing Gear Configuration</td>
<td>Retractable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Units</td>
<td>°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mach Display enable</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map Encoder Rotation</td>
<td>CW increase Range (MAP/WX RDR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum AGL Display</td>
<td>2500’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Obstacle Height</td>
<td>0’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLI Display</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roll Indicator Type</td>
<td>Sky Pointer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slip-Skid Display</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Runway length</td>
<td>3000’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive G-Limit</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative G-Limit</td>
<td>-1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Full MFD Status</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show MFD Density Alt</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show MFD IS Tem Deviation</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show MFD True Airspeed</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2-1: Pertinent EFIS Limits Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Autopilot Settings:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autopilot Type</td>
<td>Analog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight Director</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight Director on Side-in-</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Basic Sensor Settings:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Tuning</td>
<td>Cobham CD/Honeywell...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADF System</td>
<td>Dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC System</td>
<td>Dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baro Autosetting on Startup</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synch pilot/Copilot Baro</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHRS System</td>
<td>Dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analog interface unit</td>
<td>Installed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DME System</td>
<td>Dual RC DME4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFIS System</td>
<td>Dual (Pilot-Side defaults to #1 Sensors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cockpit Arrangement</td>
<td>Side-by-Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilot Position</td>
<td>Left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS System</td>
<td>Dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radar Altimeter</td>
<td>Dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual DH</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baro Agl</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOR System</td>
<td>Dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weather Radar Settings:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WX RDR Enable Screen #1</td>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WX RDR Enable Screen #2</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WX RDR Enable Screen #3</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WX RDR Enable Screen #4</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WX RDR Type</td>
<td>Honeywell RDR-2100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Radar Control Panel</td>
<td>Not Installed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radar Scan Width</td>
<td>100° (± 50°)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discrete Input Settings:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI# 1</td>
<td>All Landing Gear Down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI# 2</td>
<td>TAWS Landing Flaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI# 3</td>
<td>TAWS Glideslope Inhibit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI# 4</td>
<td>TAWS Inhibit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI# 5</td>
<td>No Function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI# 6</td>
<td>Weight On Ground/Wheels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aircraft Fuel Settings:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Totalizer</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Tank Count</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Flow Count</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unmonitored Fuel</td>
<td>FALSE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 2-1: Pertinent EFIS Limits Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Volume Units</td>
<td>Lbs. (Jet Fuel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft Total Fuel QTY</td>
<td>3750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft Main Fuel Quantity</td>
<td>3400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Totalizer Fuel Increments</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft low Fuel Caution</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft Low Fuel Alarm</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wing Tank Split Caution</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Totalizer Mismatch Caution</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fuel Tank #1 Settings:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tank Type</th>
<th>Fuel Tank QTY</th>
<th>Fuel Tank Caution</th>
<th>Fuel Tank Alarm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Left Wing Tank</td>
<td>1600 LBS</td>
<td>375 LBS</td>
<td>200 LBS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fuel Tank #2 Settings:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tank Type</th>
<th>Fuel Tank QTY</th>
<th>Fuel Tank Caution</th>
<th>Fuel Tank Alarm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Right Wing Tank</td>
<td>1600 LBS</td>
<td>375 LBS</td>
<td>200 LBS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Figure 2-1: IDU-450 Primary Flight Display (PFD)**
2.2.1. Functional Integration and Display Redundancy

IDUs incorporate a high-brightness AMLCD screen; bezel buttons; encoders and enter switches; central processing unit; numerous RS-232, RS-422, and ARINC 429 receive and transmit ports; and discrete IO ports. Hardware and software are identical for all IDUs, and functionality is determined by configuration settings setup during installation. The IDUs are independently connected to all external sensors and independently perform all integrated functions (e.g., TAWS, FMS, ADS-B In, weather radar, traffic, or strikes). This provides an exceptional level of redundancy as compared to traditional display architectures where most of these functions were performed by external line replaceable units.

Figure 2-3: System Diagram
Figure 2-3 depicts a typical architecture used by IDUs. The IDUs depend upon intra-system (between IDUs on a side – depicted as “Sync”) and inter-system (between IDUs on opposite sides – depicted as “Crosslink”) to achieve synchronization of the integrated functions. The IDUs also depend upon intra-system communications to determine which IDU on a side takes over “talker” responsibilities. The “talker” IDU is the IDU providing data to external sensors and generating aural alerts.

2.2.2. IDU Initialization

Upon power-up, the hardware, including file system, IO, and graphics, is initialized. Immediately after graphics initialization, a logo screen with “INITIALIZING” is displayed with the Genesys Aerosystems logo, software version number, and part number. The software version number delineates: (1) major revision number (i.e., “8.0”), and (2) minor revision letter (i.e., “K”).

![IDU-450 Initialization Screen](image)

**Figure 2-4: IDU-450 Initialization Screen**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2-2: IDU Software Version and Part Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Version Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rev 8.0K</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Aircraft configurations are initially read from flash drive storage to provide IDUs with a default configuration setup in the event of personality module failure. The personality module contains the CPU/IDU number (Table 2-3) and system designation (pilot or co-pilot). The IDU number is identified below the part number on the CRC screen (Figure 2-6).
Table 2-3: IDU Number Designation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CPU Number/IDU#</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“0”</td>
<td>Single-screen installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“1”</td>
<td>IDU only shows PFD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“2”</td>
<td>First MFD in multi-screen installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“3”</td>
<td>Second MFD in a multi-screen installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“4”</td>
<td>Third MFD in a multi-screen installation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Aircraft parameters (latitude, longitude, altitude), as they existed prior to the last system shutdown, are read for a good system initialization, even if system sensors are failed or not yet initialized. For future updates (i.e., updating software version 8.0K to 8.0L), all aircraft settings re-initialize to default values. Otherwise, aircraft settings, as they existed prior to the last system shutdown, are used to initialize the system except for the following default values:

1) Selected sensors are initialized to default values.
2) Active flight plan structure and associated values are cleared.
3) ADAHRS set to slaved mode, and slewing value is initialized to zero.
4) Timers are turned off.
5) Datalink and map panning modes are set to off.
6) Fuel caution and alarm thresholds are set to default values.
7) Heading bug is set to 360° (analog autopilot [AP] or Genesys/S-TEC DFCS enabled) or turned off.
8) Heading mode is turned off.
9) HSI navigation source is set to FMS.
10) Minimum altitude setting is turned off.
11) FMS OBS setting is set to automatic.
12) VOR/LOC 1 OBS setting is set to 360°.
13) VOR/LOC 2 OBS setting is set to 360°.
14) Parallel offset is set to 0 NM.
15) PFD zoom mode is set to off.
16) Manual RNP is set to off.
17) If in round dial mode, analog AGL is set to off.
18) If in round dial mode, analog G indicator is set to off.
19) PFD skyway is set to on.
20) Airspeed bug is turned off.
21) Target and preselected altitude bugs are turned off
22) True north mode is turned off.
23) V-speeds are cleared.
24) Vertical speed bug is turned off.
25) Weather radar scale is initialized to 80NM.
26) If Telephonics RDR-1600 is installed, weather radar anti-clutter is set to off, automatic range limit is set to off, auto tilt is set to off, sector scan is set to off and track angle is set to off. These weather radar parameters are not used by Telephonics RDR-1600.
27) Crosslink is initialized to on.
28) If Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is enabled, flight directors are initialized to single-cue.
29) Map modes are set to allowed values.
30) G telltales are automatically reset so long as the associated G limit has not been exceeded

The magnetic variation coefficients database is read from the flash drive storage and CRC-32 checked.

The IDU decides whether it is booting on the ground or in flight based on the air/ground mode parameter value from the last system shutdown. If booting on the ground, the following actions happen:

1) A logo screen with “TESTING” is displayed.
2) CRC-32 values for application executable, limitations files, NavData files, obstruction files, sounds database, and terrain header files are checked.

During this action, “PRESS ANY BUTTON TO QUICK START” is displayed below “TESTING.” Press any button to stop the ground booting and execute the flight booting.

3) If the BIT (built-in-test) check fails, the program exits with an error message and creates a BIT result file indicating failure.

4) If the BIT check passes, the program continues to initialize and creates a BIT result file indicating passage.

5) If “Baro Auto-Setting in EFIS limits is enabled, the system auto-sets the altimeter based on the terrain elevation at the startup point (only applicable at surveyed airports.) In case of QFE mode operation, the application will autoset the altimeter to read zero altitude.

6) CRC screen displays:
   a) Software CRC-32;
   b) Aircraft type;
   c) Sounds database name and CRC-32;
   d) Magnetic variation coefficients version and CRC-32; and
   e) Database versions and validity dates are displayed along with “PRESS ANY BUTTON TO CONTINUE.”
Section 2 System Overview

7) If all critical sensors (GPS, ADC, and AHRS) are in normal condition, the display screens are shown immediately.

8) If any critical sensor is not in normal condition, a logo screen with a two-minute countdown timer is displayed along with “PRESS ANY BUTTON TO SKIP.”

9) The display screens initialize at the earliest of:
   a) when 2 minutes has elapsed;
   b) when the pilot presses any button to escape the startup countdown; or
   c) when all critical sensors are in normal condition.

10) Display screens initialize as follows:
   a) IDU #1: PFD screen
b) Other IDUs (IDU #0, #2, #3, or #4): Initializes to MFD screen.

c) Other IDUs (IDU #0, #2, #3, or #4) with fuel totalizer functions enabled: Fuel set menu is activated to remind the pilot to set the fuel totalizer quantity.

11) All active alerts are automatically acknowledged for 5 seconds to reduce nuisance alerting.

If booting in the air, the following actions happen:

1) A logo screen with “QUICK START” is displayed.

Figure 2-8: QUICK START Screen

2) BIT result file created during the last ground boot is checked.
   a) Failure = indicates a failure, program exits with an error message.
   b) Passage = program continues.

3) The display screens initialize immediately as follows:
   a) IDU #1: PFD screen
   b) Other IDUs (IDU #0, #2, #3, or #4): Initializes to MFD screen.
   c) Other IDUs (IDU #0, #2, #3, or #4) with fuel totalizer functions enabled: Fuel set menu is activated to remind the pilot to set the fuel totalizer quantity.

4) All active alerts are automatically acknowledged for 5 seconds to reduce nuisance alerting.
NOTE:

Intra-system and inter-system synchronization messages are paused when any IDU menu is active. After IDU initialization, if any menu is active, press **EXIT (R1)** on each display and wait at least 20 seconds to allow PFDs to sync with MFDs and pilot and co-pilot sides to sync.

2.3. **General Arrangement**

The IDU-450 is 6.375” W x 5.65” H x 4.75” D and weighs less than 7.5 lbs. The IDU-450 has the capacity to accommodate integrated peripherals mechanically attached to the IDU but have electrical isolation and redundancy. These modules may include:

1. Integrated ADAHRS sensor module
2. Integrated GPS/SBAS sensor module
3. Serial protocol converters
4. Weather radar module

Data storage is sufficiently sized to hold world terrain, navigation, and obstruction databases. Because the receive ports are connected to the digital sensor modules in parallel, each IDU is independent from all others.

2.3.1. **Data Source Monitors**

In installations with redundant sensors, IDUs continuously monitor the following sensors to detect disagreements:

1. Airspeed
2. Altitude
3. Attitude
4. Barometric setting (pilot vs. co-pilot sides)
5. GPS position, track, and groundspeed
6. Heading
7. Localizer and glideslope deviations
8. Radar altitude

2.3.2. **IDU Intra-System Communications**

Communication between IDUs installed on the same side is referred to as intra-system communications. In a two-sided system (pilot and co-pilot) configuration, the crosslink side-to-side communications is referred to as inter-system communications. IDUs on the same side (pilot side and co-
pilot side individually) monitor each other using intra-system communications and perform the following checks:

1) Intra-system communications freshness
2) Screen counter incrementing (i.e., screen not frozen)
3) Airspeed agreement
4) Altitude agreement
5) Attitude agreement
6) Barometric setting agreement
7) GPS position, track, and groundspeed agreement
8) Heading agreement
9) Localizer and glideslope deviation agreement
10) Radar altitude agreement

2.4. Color Conventions

The EFIS uses a consistent set of colors to display information. Any color representation may not be identical as it appears on the IDU.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Use(s)</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WHITE</td>
<td>Items set by pilot and held by the EFIS or items where device feedback is not expected; marker beacon receiver high/low sensitivity modes; scales, associated labels and figures; pilot action; or data entry. When used for an analog bar indication, light gray (low-intensity white) is used instead, as a large white area on the screen may be overwhelming.</td>
<td>Scale markings (airspeed, altitude, heading, VSI, pitch, map ranges, etc.) Pilot-selected values (airspeed, heading, altitude) Secondary flight data (TAS, wind, OAT, timers, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYAN</td>
<td>VOR #1 and IFR navigation dataset items. Information received from the device that is not related to a pilot setting.</td>
<td>Airports with instrument approach procedures, VORs, and intersections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAGENTA</td>
<td>Indicates calculated or derived data and certain navigation database items. Light magenta for visibility</td>
<td>Active waypoint related symbols. Course data (desired track, CDI). VFR airports, NDBs, VNAV altitudes, ACTV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>Use(s)</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| GRAY          | Background for airspeed and altitude readout and for conformal runway depiction  
Light gray for usable portion of active runway, dark gray for other runway surfaces | freq/codes, operating modes, and transmit enable indications.              |
| GREEN         | VOR #2 and to indicate normal or valid operation (airspeed, altitude tape coloring, status indication, etc.) Light green for visibility. | Aircraft ground track, skyway symbology, and airspeeds in green arc.       |
| DARK GREEN    | Terrain indication on moving map (slope between adjacent terrain determines the shade used). |                                                                        |
| AMBER (YELLOW)| Identifies conditions requiring immediate pilot awareness and possible subsequent action. Used for DME hold indications. |                                                                        |
| OLIVE         | In various shades shows terrain within 2000’ and below aircraft altitude. |                                                                        |
| BROWN         | In a variety of shades indicates earth/terrain portion of PFD or when above 100 feet less than aircraft altitude on MFD. |                                                                        |
| BLUE          | In a variety of shades indicates sky portion of PFD, bodies of water on moving map, and advisory text on black background. |                                                                        |
| RED           | Indicates aircraft limitations or conditions, which require immediate pilot action, or a device failure (red “X”). |                                                                        |
| BLACK         | Field of view angle lines on moving map, figures on a gray background, and outlining borders and certain figures/elements on backgrounds with minimal contrast, e.g., airspeed, altitude, and menu tiles on the PFD/MFD. |
2.5. Warning/Caution/Advisory System

The IDU has an integrated audio/visual warning system, which monitors a wide variety of parameters and provides alerts for conditions that demand pilot action or awareness. The following alerts are provided and described below:

1) Warning Alerts
2) Time-Critical Warning Alerts
3) Master Visual and Audible/Voice Alerts
4) Caution Alerts
5) Advisory Alerts

All warnings, including time-critical warnings, activate the warning (red) light and master caution light. All cautions, including time-critical cautions, activate the caution (yellow) light and master caution light. Once acknowledged, the flashing behavior stops, the audible alert is interrupted, and the discrete outputs are deactivated.

2.5.1. Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts

Time-critical warning and caution alerts trigger the following elements (Table 2-6) and display in the pilot’s primary field of view with a shaded background (Figure 2-9 and Figure 2-10). EFIS limits may have enabled the option for time-critical alerts to illuminate a master warning/master caution push button annunciator when equipped.

**NOTE:**

In the following tables, examples show shaded backgrounds on sky and terrain backgrounds for readability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Type</th>
<th>Text Color</th>
<th>Flash Rate</th>
<th>Audio Alert at Full Volume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>2 Hz</td>
<td>Repeated until acknowledged</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amber (Yellow)</td>
<td>1 Hz</td>
<td>Plays only once</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 2-6: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert</th>
<th>Condition ** No time delay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OVERSPEED</td>
<td>“Overspeed, Overspeed”</td>
<td>IAS exceeds redline ($V_{NE}/V_{MO}/M_{MO}$) plus instrument error. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STALL</td>
<td>“Stall, Stall”</td>
<td>Activated above 100’ AGL if indicated airspeed is below the higher of $V_{S1}$ or $V_{S1}$ corrected for G-load + 5 kts. Deactivated if stall-warning EFIS limits is set to 0. **</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2-6: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert</th>
<th>Condition ** No time delay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Pull Up, Pull Up&quot;</td>
<td>Within GPWS 2 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glideslope</td>
<td>&quot;Glideslope, Glideslope&quot;</td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 5 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstruction</td>
<td>&quot;Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction&quot;</td>
<td>Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic</td>
<td>&quot;Traffic, Traffic&quot;</td>
<td>Resolution advisory. Not given if own aircraft at or below 400’ AGL. Not given if target is at or below 200’ AGL (ground target). Audio not generated with TCAS-II system. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Gear</td>
<td>&quot;Check Gear, Check Gear&quot;</td>
<td>Activates if aircraft is below 500’ AGL, is descending, and is below $V_{FE}$; and any landing gear is not down. 2-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstruction</td>
<td>&quot;Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction&quot;</td>
<td>Obstruction within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sink Rate</td>
<td>&quot;Sink Rate, Sink Rate&quot;</td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 1 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glideslope</td>
<td>&quot;Glideslope, Glideslope&quot;</td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 5 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Too Low</td>
<td>&quot;Too Low Terrain, Too Low Terrain&quot;</td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 3 envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 4-1 “Too Low Terrain” envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Within TAWS PDA envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2-6: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert</th>
<th>Condition ** No time delay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Too Low Gear, Too Low Gear”</td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 4-2 “Too Low Gear” envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Too Low Flaps, Too Low Flaps”</td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 4-3 “Too Low Flaps” envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Traffic, Traffic”</td>
<td>Not given if own aircraft below 400’ AGL nor if target is below 200’AGL (ground target). **</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Time-critical warning and caution alerts are prioritized so only one alert at a time is active.

1) Stall  
2) Overspeed  
3) GPWS Mode 1 Warning  
4) GPWS Mode 1 Warning  
5) GPWS Mode 2 Warning  
6) TAWS FLTA Warning  
7) Obstruction Warning  
8) TAWS FLTA Caution  
9) Obstruction Caution  
10) GPWS Mode 4-1  
11) TAWS PDA.  
12) GPWS Mode 4-2  
13) GPWS Mode 4-3  
14) GPWS Mode 1 Caution  
15) GPWS Mode 2 Caution  
16) GPWS Mode 3  
17) GPWS Mode 5 Warning  
18) GPWS Mode 5 Caution  
19) Check Gear  
20) Traffic Warning (Resolution Advisory)  
21) Traffic Caution (Traffic Advisory)  

#### 2.5.2. Warning Alerts

![Figure 2-11: Warning Alerts](image)
### Table 2-7: Warning Alert Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type Alert</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Flash Rate</th>
<th>Audio Alert</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![WARNING]</td>
<td>PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU</td>
<td>2 Hz</td>
<td>Until acknowledged</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 2-8: Warning Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert</th>
<th>Condition ** No time delay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| LOW FUEL     | “Fuel Low, Fuel Low” | One of the following conditions is true:  
1) A low fuel warning discrete input is active  
2) A sensed fuel tank quantity is below its low fuel warning threshold  
3) Total aircraft fuel is below the pilot-set emergency fuel threshold.  
1-minute time delay. |

**Duplicate Time-Critical Warning Alerts (IDU#0):**

| OVERSPEED      | “Overspeed, Overspeed” | Indicated airspeed exceeds redline ($V_{NE}/V_{MO}/M_{MO}$ as appropriate) plus instrument error. ** |
| STALL          | “Stall, Stall”         | Activated above 100’ AGL if IAS is below the higher of $V_{S1}$ or $V_{S1}$ corrected for G-load + 5 kts. Deactivated if stall-warning not enabled in EFIS limits. ** |
| OBSTRUCTION    | “Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction” | Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| GLIDESLOPE     | “Glideslope, Glideslope” | Within GPWS Mode 5 warning envelope. Half-second time delay. |
| TRAFFIC        | “Traffic, Traffic”     | Resolution advisory. Not given if own aircraft at or below 400’ AGL. Not given if target is at or below 200’ AGL (ground target). Audio not generated with TCAS-II system. ** |
2.5.3. Caution Alerts

Figure 2-12: Caution Alerts

Table 2-9: Caution Alert Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type Alert</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Flash Rate</th>
<th>Audio Alert</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAUTION</td>
<td>PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU</td>
<td>1 Hz</td>
<td>Plays only once at full volume.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/ Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **No time delay** | **[1]** Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition  
**[2]** Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot)  
**[3]** Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADC1 FAIL</td>
<td>Indicates no valid IAS, pressure altitude, nor VSI received from numbered ADC(s) for more than 1 second. <strong>[1]</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC2 FAIL</td>
<td>Enabled by ADS-B out fail warning limits setting. Mode-S transponder indicates bad ADS-B out status. Also, set by audio/radio interface with NGT-9000R transponder. 2-second time delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC1/2 FAIL</td>
<td>Indicates no valid bank, pitch, nor heading received from enumerated AHRS(s) for more than 1 second. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. <strong>[1][2]</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>** No time delay**</td>
<td>No valid message or bad status received from installed optional sensors. Sensor status displayed in faults menu. 5-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Applies to the following optional sensors: 1) RS-232 TAS 2) ADS-B system 3) WX-500 Lightning system 4) Analog interface system 5) Weather Radar 6) Weather Radar control panel</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX SENSOR “Auxiliary Sensor Failure,” Auxiliary Sensor Failure”</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>IDU core temperature greater than 95°C. 2-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT1 QURTMP PLT2 QURTMP PLT3 QURTMP PLT4 QURTMP CPLT1 QURTMP CPLT2 QURTMP CPLT3 QURTMP CPLT4 QURTMP</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>Only when fresh intra-system monitor messages are received. Indicates critical parameters used by displays on the indicated side exceed miscompare thresholds. Compares the following critical parameters: 1) Attitude (pitch and roll) 2) Heading 3) Pressure altitude 4) Indicated airspeed 5) Localizer (both inputs) 6) Glideslope (both inputs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

[1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition  
[2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot)  
[3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted
### Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>** No time delay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT MISCOMP Alert Tone</td>
<td>Indicates pressure altitude difference between ADCs is beyond limits. 10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup.[1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATT MISCOMP Alert Tone</td>
<td>Indicates pitch or roll difference between AHRS is beyond limits (6°). 10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup.[1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHECK TRIM↓ “Check Pitch Trim”</td>
<td>Pitch mistrimmed for more than 3 continuous seconds (trim not responding). Trim is needed in indicated direction.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT RANGE “Check Range, Check Range”</td>
<td>Based on flight plan in use on the indicated side, less than 30 minutes buffer (at current groundspeed) between calculated range and distance to: 1) last waypoint if it is active; or 2) airport if on a missed approach; or 3) along-route distance to destination. Not activated in climbing flight nor if below 60 kts groundspeed. 5-minute time delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>** No time delay**</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Indicates personality module for designated IDU (side and IDU #) could not be read upon power-up. Internal limits are in use by the system. Only active on the ground.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PLT1 SCC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT2 SCC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT3 SCC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT4 SCC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT1 SCC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT2 SCC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT3 SCC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT4 SCC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Indicates on the designated IDU (side and IDU #), aircraft is currently beyond extent of terrain database or a failure condition is preventing TAWS FLTA function from operating. Half-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PLT1 TAWS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT2 TAWS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT3 TAWS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT4 TAWS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT1 TAWS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT2 TAWS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT3 TAWS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT4 TAWS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Triggered when external cooling fan is commanded on by discrete output, but cooling fan status discrete input indicates cooling fan is not rotating. 1-minute time delay.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COOLING FAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Compares the volume of fuel designated left wing tank fuel vs. volume of fuel designated right wing tank fuel to the fuel split caution threshold. Issued if the difference exceeds the fuel split caution threshold. Only performed if the fuel split caution threshold is non-zero and both left and right wing tank fuel is monitored and valid. 1-minute time delay.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FUEL_SPLIT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>“Fuel Low, Fuel Low” A low fuel warning is not active and one of the following conditions is true: 1) One of the low fuel caution discrete inputs is active</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LOW FUEL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **** No time delay  
[1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition  
[2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot)  
[3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted | 2) One of the sensed fuel tank quantities is below its low fuel caution threshold  
3) Total aircraft fuel is below the pilot-set minimum fuel threshold.  
1-minute time delay. | |
| **GPS MISCOMP** Alert Tone | Indicates position, track, or groundspeed difference between GPS/SBAS units is beyond the following limits:  
**Position:**  
Enroute Mode 4NM  
Terminal Mode 2NM  
Departure Mode .6NM  
IFR Approach Mode .6NM  
VFR Approach Mode .6NM  
**Track:** If groundspeed is greater than 30 kts, miscompare if difference is more than 4°.  
**Groundspeed:** If difference between GPS#1 and GPS#2 miscompare is more than 10 kts.  
10-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. [1] | |
| **GS MISCOMP** Alert Tone | Indicates at least one glideslope is receiving a signal within 1 dot of center and difference between glideslope signals is beyond limits (0.25 dots).  
10-second time delay. [1] | |
### Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>No time delay</strong></td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>“HDG FAIL” Applicable to single AHRS installation. “HDG# FAIL” applicable to dual AHRS installation. Indicates that Heading is invalid but other AHRS data parameters are normal. Half second time delay. [1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[HDG FAIL]</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>With neither AHRS failed nor in DG mode. Indicates heading difference between AHRS is beyond the heading miscompare threshold limit. 60-second delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. [1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[HDG1 FAIL]</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>Indicates IAS difference between ADCs is beyond limits. 10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. [1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[HDG2 FAIL]</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>Indicates at least one localizer is receiving a signal within 1 dot of center and difference between localizer signals is beyond limits (0.25 dots). 10-second time delay. [1]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| [HDG1/2 FAIL] | Alert Tone | Indicates that radar altitude difference between radar altimeters is beyond limits. 10 second time delay. Limits are as follows:  
>= 500’AGL  Δ14%  
100 – 500’AGL Δ10%  
< 100’AGL Δ10’ [1] |
| [OAT FAIL] | Alert Tone | OAT FAIL applicable to single ADC installation. OAT# FAIL indicates OAT indication is invalid but other air data parameters are normal (i.e., air data not red-X’d) [1]. Half-second time delay. |
## Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>No time delay</strong></td>
<td>RALT FAIL applicable to single radar altimeter installation. RALT# FAIL applicable to dual radar altimeter installation. For analog radar altimeter, indicates the aircraft is below 2000’ AGL in air mode without a valid radar altimeter reading. For ARINC 429 radar altimeter, indicates an SSM of failure warning is transmitting. 2-second time delay. [1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alert Tone</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**RALT FAIL**

**RALT1 FAIL**

**RALT2 FAIL**

**RALT1/2 FAIL**

**TAWS INHBT**

**TCAS FAIL**

**TOTALZR QTY**

**TRIM MOTION↓**

**“Trim in Motion, Trim in Motion”**

**TRIM MOTION↑**

---
## Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XFILL FAIL Alert Tone</td>
<td>Indicates lack of inter-system communications. 2-second time delay. Inhibit for 30 seconds after startup. [2] [3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS1 FAIL, GPS2 FAIL, GPS1/2 FAIL Alert Tone</td>
<td>Indicates no valid message received from numbered GPS/SBAS for more than 5 seconds. <strong>Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode.</strong> [1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Duplicate Time-Critical Caution Alerts (IDU#0):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHECK GEAR “Check Gear, Check Gear”</td>
<td>Activates if aircraft is below 500’ AGL, is descending, and is below $V_{FE}$; and any landing gear is not down. 2-second time delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINK RATE “Sink Rate, Sink Rate”</td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 2 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLIDESLOPE “Glideslope, Glideslope”</td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 5 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOO LOW “Too Low Gear, Too Low Gear”</td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 4-2 “Too Low Gear” envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOO LOW “Too Low Flaps, Too Low Flaps”</td>
<td>Within GPWS Mode 4-3 “Too Low Flaps” envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>** No time delay</td>
<td>** No time delay</td>
<td>** No time delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>** OBSTRUCTION **</td>
<td>“Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction”</td>
<td>Obstruction within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>** TRAFFIC **</td>
<td>“Traffic, Traffic”</td>
<td>Not given if own aircraft below 400’ AGL nor if target is below 200’AGL (ground target). **</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2.5.4. Side-Specific Caution Alerts

Side-specific caution alerts are displayed on all IDUs on a side that detect a failure on an IDU on that side. These types of alerts are used for safety-critical monitoring functions that can’t take credit for the presence of other system IDUs.

### Table 2-11: Side-Specific Caution Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition ** No time delay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>** CHECK IDU 1 **</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>IDU status has not been received from another same-side IDU in the last second ± 0.1 seconds. # indicates which IDU is failing the check. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>** CHECK IDU 2 **</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>IDU status has not been received from another same-side IDU in the last second ± 0.1 seconds. # indicates which IDU is failing the check. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>** CHECK IDU 3 **</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>IDU status has not been received from another same-side IDU in the last second ± 0.1 seconds. # indicates which IDU is failing the check. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>** CHECK IDU 4 **</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>IDU status has not been received from another same-side IDU in the last second ± 0.1 seconds. # indicates which IDU is failing the check. **</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2.5.5. Advisory Alerts

![Figure 2-13: Advisory Alerts](image)

### Table 2-12: Advisory Alert Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type Alert</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Appearance</th>
<th>Audio Alert</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>** ADVISORY **</td>
<td>PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU</td>
<td>While condition persists</td>
<td>Single advisory chime played at 80% volume</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-13: Advisory Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>** No time delay**</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Indicates ADC# not at full accuracy during warm-up. ** [1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC INIT</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Indicates numbered AHRS in DG mode. ** [1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC1 INIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC2 INIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC1/2 INIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHRS1 DG</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Indicates a dual redundant power supply within the designated IDU (side and IDU #) is not functioning correctly. Only active on the ground. 1-minute time delay. [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHRS2 DG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHRS1/2 DG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT1 PWR</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Flight path marker inhibit function activated through use of momentary discrete input. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT2 PWR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT3 PWR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLT4 PWR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT1 PWR</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Indicates mismatch of altimeter settings or altimeter modes between systems. 10-second time delay. [2] [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT2 PWR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT3 PWR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPLT4 PWR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPM INHBT</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Indicates both sides are operating from same ADC source. ** [1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BARO MISCOMP</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Indicates both sides are operating from same AHRS source. ** [1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAME ADC</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Indicates both sides are operating from same DME source ** [1] [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAME AHRS</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Indicates both sides are operating from same GPS/SBAS source. **[1][2][3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAME DME</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Indicates both sides are operating from same navigation source. **[1] [2] [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAME GPS</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Indicates both sides are operating from same radar altimeter source. ** [1] [2] [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAME NAV</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>TAS aural inhibited through activation of TCAS/TAS Audio Inhibit discrete input. **</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2-13: Advisory Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>** No time delay</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>(Class A TAWS) TAWS glideslope cancel (GPWS Mode 5) activated through discrete input. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAWS GS CNX</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCAS STBY</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TA ONLY</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCAS TEST</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Only active with TCAS-II. Indicates system is either in standby or executing functional test in flight.**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XFILL ARM</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Only active with TCAS-II. Indicates system is unable to display resolution advisories. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XFILL INHBT</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Only active with good inter-system communications and crossfill not inhibited. Indicates systems are not synchronized and synchronized function is available. ** [2] [3]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2.5.6. Side-Specific Advisory Alerts

Side-specific advisory alerts have the same characteristics as advisory alerts except, they always appear in the lower-left corner of the transmit enabled IDU screen.

These type of alerts are used where the pilot and co-pilot sides can generate different alerts, such as when the pilot and co-pilot sides are not crossfilled and are operating on different FMS flight plans.

### Table 2-14: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>** No time delay</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Ascending through transition level: Altimeter not set to 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2-14: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition **</th>
<th><strong>No time delay</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Descending through transition level: Altimeter set to 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar. Descent warning times out in 10 seconds. Disabled during QFE operation. 2-second time delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ANP: 0.01</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS actual navigation performance in nautical miles based upon current GPS/SBAS HPL. Value ranges from 0.01 to 15.0 NM.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ANP: 15.0</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS automatic required navigation performance in nautical miles as acquired from navigation database. Value ranges from 0.01 to 15.0 NM.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RNP: 0.10A</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS manual required navigation performance in nautical miles as set by pilot. Value ranges from 0.10 to 15.0 NM.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RNP: 15.0A</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS in dead reckoning mode with valid ADC and AHRS data. Timer shows time since loss of position (mm:ss) to indicate quality of DR solution. **Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Valid range is from 00:00 to 59:59.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DR 00:00</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS in LNAV approach mode. **</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DR 01:23</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS in LNAV/VNAV approach mode. **</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LNAV APPR</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS in LP approach mode. **</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LNA/VNAV APPR</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS in LPV approach mode. **</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LP APPR</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended under any of the following conditions: **</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LPU APPR</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>1) Pilot has selected a manual GPS/SBAS OBS.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUSPEND</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>2) Active waypoint is the missed approach waypoint, and missed approach procedure has not been armed (ARM) nor initiated (MISS).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3) Aircraft is in a published or manually created holding pattern, and pilot has</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2-14: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Alert</th>
<th>Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Condition <strong>No time delay</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>not chosen to continue (CONT) out of the holding pattern.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4) Leg following active waypoint is a manual termination leg, and the pilot has not chosen to resume (RESUME) to the waypoint following the manual termination.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5) Aircraft is in a repeating SAR pattern (see SAR appendix), and the pilot has not chosen to continue out of the SAR pattern.**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TERMINAL</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS in terminal mode.**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VFR APPR</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS in VFR approach mode.**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VECTORS</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS in vectors to final approach mode prior to sequencing FAWP.**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTK = L 1NM</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS parallel offset path advisory. ** is nautical miles left (L) or right (R) of main path. PTK ENDING if within the parallel offset distance from a parallel offset exit waypoint.**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTK = L 20NM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTK = R 1NM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTK = R 20NM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTK ENDING</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FLTA INHBT</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Shown when FLTA function is automatically inhibited during normal operation. TAWS INHBT advisory has priority.**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRUE NORTH</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>System operating in true north mode.**</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VNAV AVAIL</strong></td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Only active with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS. Indicates VNAV guidance is available but not currently in use by the AP. Press “VNV” button on mode control panel to engage VNAV mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2.5.7. Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts

Audio-only caution alerts trigger a single audio message that played at the full volume, whereas audio-only advisory alerts are played at 80% of the full volume.
### Table 2-15: Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution or Advisory Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Altitude Caution Alert</td>
<td>“Minimums, Minimums”</td>
<td>Deviation from above to below minimum altitude bug. Minimum altitude readout turns amber (yellow) and flashes. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected Altitude Deviation Caution Alert</td>
<td>“Altitude, Altitude”</td>
<td>Deviation greater than 150’ from selected altitude after capture (within 100’ of altitude). 2-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VNAV Altitude Deviation Caution Alert</td>
<td>“Altitude, Altitude”</td>
<td>If not on a descending VNAV profile, deviation greater than 150’ from altitude of the current or prior VNAV waypoint after capture (within 100’ of altitude). 2-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decision Height Caution Alert</td>
<td>“Decision Height”</td>
<td>Deviation from above to below decision height bug. Decision height readout turns amber (yellow) and flashes. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBS/SBAS Failure Caution Alert</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>No valid position data available from selected GPS/SBAS for more than 5 seconds and dead reckoning not available. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Loss of position data is obvious from symbology changes associated with reversionary modes. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS/SBAS Loss of Integrity Caution Alert</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS loss of integrity caution. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. LOI indication is integrated with lateral deviation indicator. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS/SBAS Loss of Navigation Caution Alert</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS loss of navigation caution. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. LON indication is integrated with lateral deviation indicator. **</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-15: Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution or Advisory Alert</th>
<th>Voice Alert/Alert Tone</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loss of Vertical Navigation Caution Alert</td>
<td>Alert Tone</td>
<td>Loss of vertical navigation caution. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. VLON indication is integrated with vertical deviation indicator. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autopilot Disconnect Advisory Alert</td>
<td>“Autopilot Disconnect”</td>
<td>Sounds when AP servos disengage for any reason. (Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is installed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autopilot Failure Advisory Alert</td>
<td>“Autopilot Failure”</td>
<td>Sounds when AP failure is detected. (Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is installed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countdown Timer Chime</td>
<td>Chime</td>
<td>Sounds when countdown timer reaches 00:00:00.**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level-off Advisory Alert</td>
<td>Altitude Alert Tone</td>
<td>Within the greater of 1000’ or 50% of VSI from uncaptured selected or VNAV waypoint altitude. Inhibited in approach procedures. **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPWS Mode 6 Advisory Alert</td>
<td>“Five Hundred”</td>
<td>Descending through 500’ AGL advisory. Armed upon climbing through deadband value above 500’ AGL. Half-second time delay.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.5.8. Voice Alerts and Muting

Only the highest priority (in criticality and recency), unacknowledged voice alert is played at any given time. Any playing audio message is immediately muted by activating the warning/caution acknowledge switch.

2.5.9. Visual Alert Prioritization and Declutter

Visual alerts are visually prioritized, so warnings are displayed above cautions, which are displayed above advisories. Within categories, visual alerts are stacked in chronological order, so the most recent alert appears on top.

Only the highest priority (in criticality and recency), unacknowledged aural annunciation is played at a time. In addition, to further minimize cockpit confusion, annunciations are grouped and prioritized so only one annunciation is active.

The maximum number of visual alerts that can be simultaneously displayed in the standard location is 11. In the event there are more than 11 visual
alerts, **MORE-PRS MENU** appears for guidance in accessing the EXPAND CAS menu.

In addition, flags are decluttered from all IDUs, which are not “transmit enabled.” Flags only appear on these IDUs if they are IDU-specific (i.e., CHECK IDU #).

### 2.6. Database and Software Updates

#### 2.6.1. Navigation and Obstruction Database

The EFIS uses Jeppesen Sanderson NavData® for the navigation database and Jeppesen Sanderson obstacle data for the obstruction database.

Visit [www.jeppesen.com](http://www.jeppesen.com) to place the order for the correct database.

**NOTE:**

When ordering, review the EFIS Equipment-Database Compatibility Matrix (Document 01-000062) on the Genesys Aerosystems website. This document specifies the compatibility of Genesys Aerosystems EFIS equipment and software versions to navigation database versions.

Three available coverage areas of navigation databases may be used on this EFIS:

**Americas** - Major airports and navigation for Alaska, Canada, Continental U.S., Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Bahamas, Bermuda, Mexico, Central, and South America.

**International** - All available coverage except North and South America.

**World** - Major airports and navigation with the Americas.

The updateable navigation database contains at least the following location and path information, referenced to WGS-84, with a resolution of 0.01 minute (latitude/longitude) and 0.1° (for course information) or better at all of the following for the area(s) in which IFR operations are intended:

1) Airports.

2) VORs, DMEs (including DMEs collocated with localizers), collocated VOR/DMEs, VORTACs, and NDBs (including NDBs used as locator outer marker).
3) All named waypoints and intersections shown on enroute and terminal area charts.

4) All airways shown on enroute charts, including all waypoints, intersections, and associated RNP values (if applicable). Airways are retrievable as a group of waypoints (select the airway by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs between desired entry and exit points into the flight plan).

5) RNAV DPs and STARs, including all waypoints, intersections, and associated RNP values (if applicable). DPs and STARs are retrievable as a procedure (select the procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the flight plan).

6) LNAV approach procedures in the area(s) in which IFR operation is intended consist of:
   a) Runway number and label (required for approach identification);
   b) Initial approach waypoint (IAWP);
   c) Intermediate approach waypoint(s) (IWP), when applicable;
   d) Final approach waypoint (FAWP);
   e) Missed approach waypoint (MAWP);
   f) Additional missed approach waypoints, when applicable; and
   g) Missed approach holding waypoint (MAHWP).

The complete sequence of waypoints and associated RNP values (if applicable), in the correct order for each approach, is retrievable as a procedure (select the procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the flight plan). Waypoints utilized as a final approach waypoint (FAWP) or missed approach waypoint (MAWP) in an LNAV approach procedure are uniquely identified as such (when appropriate) to provide proper approach mode operation.

7) LNAV/VNAV procedures in the area(s) where IFR operation is intended. LPV, LP, and/or LNAV/VNAV published procedures are available. Select a procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the active flight plan. Waypoints used as a final approach waypoint (FAWP) and LTP/FTP/MAWP in an LNAV/VNAV procedure are uniquely identified as such to provide proper approach mode operation.

The obstruction database is distributed by a government agency in each country. Not all countries have obstruction databases available.
2.6.2. Update Requirements

Scheduled updates for databases are as follows:

1) Navigation Database - Every 28 days
2) Obstruction Database - Every 28 days
3) MAGVAR Database - Every 5 years (updated as described in a Genesys Aerosystems service bulletin)

**CAUTION:**

Failure to update the EFIS with the correct NavData® causes the IDU to remain in continual reboot mode and does not allow any display page to appear.

The EFIS is updated through the ground maintenance function (GMF). To gain access to the GMF, prior to applying power, slide the slip indicator or non-slip blank door cover at the bottom-center of the IDU bezel upward to the first detent position to expose the USB port.

When an update is performed, the following procedures must be performed separately on every IDU installed in the aircraft.

To update the databases:

1) Load the navigation database (navdata.exe) and obstruction database (obst.exe) on USB flash drive.

2) With the power off, insert the USB flash drive into USB port.

**CAUTION:**

Always install a valid USB flash drive in the IDU prior to activating any ground maintenance function. Operation of the GMF without a valid USB flash drive installed may cause erroneous failure indications or corruption of the IDU.

3) Turn on power to gain access to the GMF page.

4) Rotate 1 to **Update Databases** and push to enter.
5) Once each database is loaded, press any button to continue to complete the process.

6) Once both databases have been uploaded, power down the IDU, remove the USB flash drive, and lower the USB door.

7) Once each IDU has been updated, power up the entire EFIS in normal flight mode and verify each IDU successfully updated with the latest database by noting the new navigation database and obstruction database cycle expiration dates before acknowledging the initialization screen (Figure 2-4). Because the obstruction database is advisory in nature, there technically is no expiration date. The listed date is the effective date of the next available obstruction database.

8) A cyclic redundancy check (CRC) self-test verifies the data at every step of the process, thereby ensuring the data installed into the system has not been corrupted at any point during the process.

### 2.6.3. Software and Terrain Database Update

Updates and terrain database updates are provided on an as-needed basis and performed as per a service bulletin.

### 2.7. Run Demonstrator/Training Program

The EFIS has a built-in demonstration application to fly anywhere in the world while performing any procedure (except takeoff and landing) based on the current Jeppesen navigation database. Use this feature on the ground in ground mode as follows:

1) With power off, lift the USB flash drive door and insert a USB flash drive.

2) Power on system. Rotate 1 to **RUN DEMONSTRATOR/TRAINING PROGRAM** and push to enter.

Use the demonstrator to gain familiarity of the EFIS menu structure and location of button tiles for each operation. Load an instrument procedure prior to take off to view the expected sequence of events.
The demonstrator begins flying over Reno, Nevada, USA at an altitude of approximately 8000’ MSL. Altitude may be changed with altitude bug, VNAV profiles or navigation database procedures. Airspeed remains relatively constant but may be controlled with the airspeed IAS bug in the BUGS menu. The simulated aircraft may be positioned anywhere in the world, by activating a flight plan stored in the memory.

All appropriate navigation signals are simulated, allowing for precision and non-precision instrument approaches found within the current navigation database. All obstructions in the latest obstruction database and all warning, caution, and advisory aural and flag annunciations are presented as appropriate during simulated flights.

**NOTE:**

When the IDU is operating in demonstrator mode, the IDU is isolated from all sensors and other IDUs. The creation of a flight plan results in that flight plan being stored on that IDU alone. To have that new flight plan available on all other IDUs, the following action must be taken.

1) While in flight mode, activate the flight plan created in demonstrator mode.

2) With crossfill enabled (in two-sided systems), view active flight plan on any other IDU and press **SAVE (L1)** to save this flight plan on all displays.

### 2.8. EFIS Training Tool

In addition to the demonstrator program, the EFIS Training Tool (ETT) is available to load on a personal computer. The ETT is compatible with 32- or 64-bit versions of Microsoft Windows®. It serves as a multi-purpose tool for training pilots and provides features to record and capture images. See user guide distributed with the ETT installer for further details.

### 2.9. Application Software Air Mode and Ground Mode

Numerous symbology elements change behavior depending upon whether the aircraft is on the ground (ground mode) or in flight (air mode). The mode is determined separately from the system initialization modes. This parameter is continuously calculated as follows:

1) If a Weight on Wheels/Weight on Ground discrete input is configured, the air or ground modes are determined solely from the discrete input position.
2) Otherwise, mode is determined as follows:

a) If airspeed is valid and AGL altitude is valid, ground mode is set when indicated airspeed is less than 30 knots, and AGL altitude is less than 75 feet.

b) If airspeed is invalid but AGL altitude is valid, ground mode is set when AGL altitude is less than 75 feet.

c) Under any other circumstance, air mode is set by default.
Section 3 Display Symbology

3.1. Introduction

This section details the symbology used on the PFD and MFD IDU-450 in normal and essential modes. Not all combinations of possible views are represented.

Figure 3-1: PFD

3.1.1. IDU-450 PFD Display (Basic Mode)

When selected, basic mode is a traditional attitude display with airspeed, altitude, and heading scales appearing in blacked-out areas in a “Basic-T” arrangement but is disabled in unusual attitude mode. The following are no longer present in basic mode:

Figure 3-2: PFD in Basic Mode
1) Atmospheric perspective  
2) Airspeed Trend  
3) Terrain rendering  
4) Obstruction rendering  
5) Flight Path Marker  
6) Airport runways  
7) Highway in the Sky  
8) Bank Scale Declutter

3.1.2. IDU-450 MFD Display

![Figure 3-3: MFD](image1)

3.2. PFD Symbology

![Figure 3-4: PFD Symbology](image2)
The PFD combines pitot-static information, heading, attitude, 3D navigation data, and more overlaid on a virtual background of the outside world. Other objects in the background, including terrain, obstructions, traffic, and runways, are presented conformally as if seen directly in front of the aircraft while looking outside.

### 3.2.1. Altitude Display

![Pure Digital](image1)
![Rolling](image2)
![ADC Failure](image3)

**Figure 3-5: Selecting Altimeter Setting**

The PFD altitude box with altitude scale on the right side of the display. The altitude box digitally displays barometric altitude as adjusted by an altimeter setting. The digital display of altitude is either purely digital (to nearest 10 feet) or rolling digits (to nearest 20 feet) as defined in aircraft limits. The altitude box has a pointer that interacts with the altitude scale, which has graduations every 100 feet and labels every 500 feet. The altitude scale background has a gray region and a brown region where the junction between the gray and brown regions indicates ground level.

#### 3.2.1.1. Altitude Display (Metric Units)

Altitude values (altitude display and pilot-selectable target and VNAV altitudes) may be displayed in metric units with a resolution of 1 meter.

**Figure 3-6: Altitude Display (Metric Units)**

#### 3.2.2. Altimeter Setting

Press **BARO (R2)** to enter altimeter setting mode and view the altimeter setting in inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) value in the lower right corner. Rotate ⬇ CW to increase or CCW to decrease the altimeter setting. Push ⬆ to enter the new value. Digital display of altitude is either purely digital (nearest 10 ft.) or incorporates rolling digits (nearest 20 ft.) as determined by EFIS limits.
The altimeter setting is immediately below the altitude readout box and digitally displays the altimeter setting in either inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) according to the pilot-selected units.

**Figure 3-8: QFE Altimeter Setting**

**QFE**: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (i.e., airport or runway threshold). When QFE altimeter setting is selected, QFE is annunciated as in Figure 3-8.

**QNE**: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.

**QNH**: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station. When QNH altimeter setting is selected, no mode is annunciated below the altimeter setting.

**3.2.3. Selected Altitude Sub-Mode (Target Altitude)**

When in selected altitude sub-mode, the altitude scale has a pilot-settable target altitude bug geometrically interacting with the altitude box pointer. The target altitude bug value has a resolution of 100 ft., and a range from -1000 ft. to 50,000 ft.
With Genesys/S-TEC DFCS

**Figure 3-9: Target Altitude**
When in altitude hold mode, the target altitude bug setting is green, while the target altitude bug is filled-white.

When in a climb or descent mode, the target altitude bug setting is white, and the target altitude bug is hollow-white.

**Figure 3-10: Target Altitude Bug**

When a Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is not installed, the selected altitude is a reference only. The target altitude bug setting is white, and the target altitude bug is filled-white at all times.

**Figure 3-11: Target Altitude Bug (Without Autopilot)**

### 3.2.4. Altitude Display (VNAV Tile)

When enabled for performing VNAV with a manually selected altitude entered, **VNAV (L2)** appears.

**Figure 3-12: Altitude Display (VNAV Tile)**
3.2.5. VNAV Sub-Mode

When in VNAV sub-mode, the altitude scale shows the active waypoint VNAV altitude (if it exists) with a bug symbol geometrically interacting with the altitude box pointer. The VNAV altitude bug setting is annunciating above the altitude scale with a resolution of 100 feet.

When not vertically integrated with a fully integrated digital AP, the VNAV altitude bug setting includes “VNAV” indicating VNAV altitude sub-mode.

![Figure 3-13: VNAV Sub-Mode (Not Vertically Integrated)](image)

The VNAV altitude bug is a visual reference or, when vertically integrated with an autopilot either fully or partially integrated through the vertical mode discrete input, as a control parameter for climbs or descents.

When a Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is installed, the VNAV altitude provides control inputs to the DFCS and has the following behavior:

When in altitude hold mode, the VNAV altitude bug value is green, and the VNAV altitude bug is filled-magenta. During altitude hold capture, the VNAV altitude bug-setting flashes.

When in climb or descent mode, the VNAV altitude bug value is white, and the VNAV altitude bug is hollow-magenta.

![Figure 3-14: VNAV Sub-Mode with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS](image)

When the VNAV altitude or target altitude differs from aircraft altitude to the extent the associated bug is off-scale, the associated bug appears to be “parked” in the direction of the difference with half of the associated bug visible as seen in Figure 3-14.

3.2.6. Minimum Altitude

A user-settable minimum altitude bug consists of a bold yellow line on the altitude scale and a yellow region on the altitude scale from the minimum altitude down to ground level. The minimum altitude bug value is displayed
above the altitude scale with a resolution of 10 ft. The minimum altitude bug can be used in conjunction with a selected altitude or VNAV bug. When a minimum altitude is set, descending from above to below causes an audible alert of “Minimums, Minimums” and the minimum altitude to turn amber (yellow) and flash.

![Figure 3-15: Minimum Altitude](image)

### 3.2.7. Vertical Speed Indicator

The vertical speed indicator (VSI) is depicted in a "worm" format providing analog and digital representation of VSI in feet per minute (fpm).

![Figure 3-16: VSI](image)

The pilot-selectable VSI bug setting (100 fpm resolution) in this example is set to 1000 fpm. The vertical speed bug is used either as a visual reference or, when vertically integrated with an AP (either fully integrated or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input), as a control parameter for climbs or descents. It is mutually exclusive with the airspeed bug.

![Figure 3-17: VSI Bug](image)
Table 3-1: Scale Graduations and Display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Traffic Installed</th>
<th>Scale Limit</th>
<th>Scale Graduations and Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With TCAS-II</td>
<td>±6,000 fpm</td>
<td>±500, ±1,000, ±2,000, ±4,000, and ±6,000 fpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Background of the VSI functions as an RA display with green and red regions to provide RA maneuver guidance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without TCAS-II</td>
<td>±3,000 fpm</td>
<td>±500, ±1,000, ±2,000, and ±3,000 fpm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The VSI indication can have a pilot-settable vertical speed bug with a 100 fpm resolution and a range from -3000 to +3000 fpm. It is mutually exclusive with the airspeed bug.

When a Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is not installed, the VSI bug is for reference only. The VSI bug value is white and appears above the VSI indicator. The VSI bug is filled white at all times.

**Figure 3-18: VSI Bug without Genesys/S-TEC DFCS**

When vertically integrated with a Genesys/S-TEC DFCS, the VSI bug value is green with the speed bug filled-white when in VSI climb or descent mode. Otherwise, the VSI bug value is white and VSI bug is hollow-white.

**Figure 3-19: VSI Bug with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS**

### 3.2.8. Normal AGL Indication

AGL altitude is displayed above the course deviation indicator. The source for the indication is the source used by TAWS and displayed next to the AGL altitude as follows.
**Section 3 Display Symbology**

![Diagram](image)

**Figure 3-20: Normal AGL Indication**

AGL altitude is not displayed when it is greater than the radar altimeter maximum valid altitude (2500’ AGL or as set in EFIS limits) nor, when it is invalid or when an analog indication is selected by the pilot. Additionally, AGL indication includes the set decision height (see § 3.2.10).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Altitude</th>
<th>≥300 Feet</th>
<th>≥100 Feet</th>
<th>&lt;100 Feet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AGL Indication resolution</td>
<td>10 Feet</td>
<td>5 Feet</td>
<td>1 Foot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3.2.9. Analog AGL Indication**

Pilot-selected analog AGL indication is displayed in the lower right corner of the PFD above the active waypoint identifier with a green circular tape and digital readout in the center. The circular tape has a green radial line at its end that disappears above 1000’ AGL.

![Diagram](image)

**Figure 3-21: Analog AGL Indication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Markings 0-1000 Feet</th>
<th>AGL</th>
<th>Scaling (clock position)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-100 Feet</td>
<td>100 Feet-1000 Feet</td>
<td>0’ AGL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linear</td>
<td>Logarithmic</td>
<td>50’ AGL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100’ AGL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>200’ AGL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500’ AGL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The analog AGL indicator disappears in unusual attitude mode and is mutually exclusive with the mini-map, analog G meter, and traffic thumbnail. Analog AGL altitude is not displayed when it is greater than the radar altitude maximum valid value (2,500 ft. or as set in EFIS limits), when it is invalid, or when the pilot deselects analog AGL.
3.2.10. Decision Height

Pilot-settable decision height is displayed above the CDI with the abbreviation DH and by a yellow radial on the analog indicator.

When the aircraft descends below decision height, DH ### turns amber (yellow) and flashes, and the circular tape and readout turn amber (yellow). This is accompanied by “Decision Height” audible alert.

![Decision Height](image-url)

**Figure 3-22: Decision Height**
3.2.11. Airspeed Display

Airspeed is digitally displayed in same color as airspeed scale in knots per hour with interactive pointer. The digital display is either pure digital or incorporates rolling digits as set in EFIS limits. Mach number is displayed above full time with resolution of .01.

![Figure 3-23: Airspeed Display](image)

The airspeed box pointer interacts with the airspeed scale and has graduations every 10 measurement units with labels every 20 measurement units with high numbers at the top.

The airspeed trend vector calculated along the aircraft longitudinal axis is in a “worm” format to provide analog representation of IAS achieved in ten seconds, assuming the instantaneous longitudinal acceleration rate is maintained along the velocity vector.

The airspeed indication can have a pilot-settable airspeed bug (mutually exclusive with VSI bug) with a 1-knot resolution and a range from $1.2 \times V_S$ (or configured minimum IAS bug speed, if higher) to red-line airspeed (lower of $V_{MO}$ or $M_{MO}$).

When a Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is not installed, the airspeed bug is for reference only. The airspeed bug value is white and appears above the airspeed indicator. The airspeed bug is filled white at all times.

When a Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is installed, the airspeed bug value is green and appears above the airspeed indicator. The airspeed bug is filled-white when in airspeed climb or descent mode and provides control inputs to the DFCS. Otherwise, the airspeed bug value is white, and the airspeed bug is hollow white.

The pilot-settable airspeed bug geometrically interacts with the airspeed box pointer and is colored as per Table 3-6.
Airspeed trend noodle indicating speed of 217 KIAS within 10 seconds

**Figure 3-24: Airspeed Trend**

When the airspeed bug value differs from aircraft speed to the extent the bug is off scale, the bug appears to be “parked.”

**Figure 3-25: Airspeed Bug Off Scale**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-5: Airspeed Bug Limits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Low end</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Higher of $1.2 \times V_s$ or 60KIAS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3-6: Airspeed Bug Setting Annunciation and Bug Colors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vertically Integrated Autopilot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Without</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airspeed Bug Setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airspeed Bug</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The airspeed scale background and readout for Part 23 airplanes has coloration as follows:

1) If in air mode, a red low-speed awareness area from the bottom of the scale to $V_{S0}$. The airspeed readout is red in this area.

2) If in ground mode, a gray area from the bottom of the scale to $V_{S0}$. The airspeed readout is gray at 0 (indicating “dead” airspeed) but otherwise white in this area.

3) If a valid $V_{FE}$ exists, a white flap-operating area from $V_{S0}$ to $V_{FE}$. The airspeed readout is white in this area.

4) For aircraft without a $V_{MO}/M_{MO}$:
   a) A green safe-operating area from $V_{S1}$ to $V_{NO}$. The airspeed readout is green in this area.
   b) An amber (yellow) caution area from $V_{NO}$ to $V_{NE}$. The airspeed readout is amber (yellow) in this area.
   c) A red high-speed awareness area from $V_{NE}$ to the top of the scale. The airspeed readout is red in this area.

5) For aircraft with a $V_{MO}/M_{MO}$:
   a) A gray safe-operating area from $V_{FE}$ (if it exists) or $V_{S0}$ to $V_{MO}/M_{MO}$. The airspeed readout is green in this area.

Figure 3-26: Airspeed Scale FAR Part 23
b) A red high-speed awareness area from the lower of \( V_{MO} \) or \( M_{MO} \) to the top of the scale. The airspeed readout is red in this area.

The airspeed scale background for Part 25 airplanes (Part 25 “Airspeed Scale Type”) has colored regions and readout coloration as follows:

![Figure 3-27: Airspeed Scale FAR Part 25](image)

1) If in air mode with a pilot-input \( V_{REF} \) value:

   a) A red low-speed awareness area from the bottom of the scale to G-compensated 1.1 \( V_{S0} \). \( V_{S0} \) is calculated by dividing the pilot-input \( V_{REF} \) by 1.23. The airspeed readout is red in this area.

   b) An amber (yellow) low-speed awareness area from G-compensated 1.1 \( V_{S0} \) to G-compensated 1.2 \( V_{S0} \). The airspeed readout is amber (yellow) in this area.

   c) If a valid \( V_{FE} \) exists, a white flap-operating area from G-compensated 1.2 \( V_{S0} \) to \( V_{FE} \) and a gray normal-operating area from \( V_{FE} \) to the lower of \( V_{MO} \) or \( M_{MO} \). The airspeed readout is white in the flap-operating area and green in the normal-operating area.

   d) If a valid \( V_{FE} \) does not exist, a gray normal-operating area from G-compensated 1.2 \( V_{S0} \) to the lower of \( V_{MO} \) or \( M_{MO} \). The airspeed readout is green in this area.

2) If in Ground Mode or without a pilot-input \( V_{REF} \) value:
a) If a valid $V_{FE}$ exists, a white flap-operating area from the bottom of the scale to $V_{FE}$ and a gray normal-operating area from $V_{FE}$ to the lower of $V_{MO}$ or $M_{MO}$. The airspeed readout is gray at 0 (indicating “dead” airspeed) otherwise white in the flap-operating area and green in the normal-operating area.

b) If a valid $V_{FE}$ does not exist, a gray normal-operating area from the bottom of the scale to the lower of $V_{MO}$ or $M_{MO}$. The airspeed readout is gray at 0 (indicating “dead” airspeed) otherwise white below 60 and green at or above 60 in this area.

3) A red high-speed awareness area from the lower of $V_{MO}$ or $M_{MO}$ to the top of the scale. The airspeed readout is red in this area.

The airspeed scale for Part 25 airplanes have additional specific airspeed markings as follows:

1) If pilot-input $V_{REF}$ is valid, a white $V_S$ marking at the aircraft’s 1-G $V_{S0}$ or an amber (yellow) $V_S$ marking at $V_{S0}$ corrected for G-loading, whichever is higher. $V_{S0}$ is calculated by dividing the pilot-input $V_{REF}$ by 1.23

2) If enabled ($V_{GL}$ not 0), a “green dot” best glide speed marker at $V_{GL}$.

3) If enabled ($V_X$ not 0), a $V_X$ marking at $V_X$.

4) If enabled ($V_Y$ not 0), a $V_Y$ marking at $V_Y$.

5) If enabled ($V_A$ not 0), a $V_A$ marking at $V_A$.

6) If enabled ($V_{MFE}$ not 0), a “white triangle” maximum flap extension speed marker at $V_{MFE}$.

3.2.12. Airspeed Display (with EFIS-Coupled)

Figure 3-28: Airspeed Display (with EFIS-Coupled)
3.2.13. Heading Display

1) Heading Scale
2) Track Pointer
3) Heading Pointer
4) Active Waypoint Pointer

Figure 3-29: Heading Display

Figure 3-30: Dampened Integral Slip Indicator

Table 3-7: Heading Display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track pointer off scale when aircraft track is displaced from boundaries. (Extreme crosswind conditions)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When changed, heading bug value displayed for 5 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When heading bug is displaced beyond the boundaries of the heading scale. Partial heading bug is shown at the limit of the heading scale with the heading bug value above.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTE:

The track pointer is not displayed when indicated airspeed is in the noise range (indicated airspeed or groundspeed is less than 30 knots).

When AHRS is in the DG mode, DG appears.

Figure 3-31: DG Indicated when AHRS in DG Mode

Figure 3-32: GPS Loss of Navigation (LON)

3.2.14. Pitch Scale

The PFD has large aircraft symbol reference marks fixed in the center of the display. Rotation of the background, pitch scale, and background oriented display elements occur relative to the location of the large aircraft symbol reference marks.

Pitch scale has increments every 5° with major increments and pitch scale labels every 10°. Increments are equally spaced to conform approximately to the 3D PFD background. Pointer bars at the ends of each major increment indicate direction to the horizon and automatically declutter to present the fewest possible increments needed to unambiguously display pitch attitude. The pitch scale terminates with a zenith symbol (small white circle) at +90° and a nadir symbol (small white circle with “+”) at -90°.
3.2.15. Pitch Limit Indicator

The pitch limit indicator first appears above the applicable reference symbol (either the FPM or the large aircraft symbol reference marks) and converges upon the applicable reference symbol as indicated airspeed decreases.

Pitch Limit Indicator Appearance Limits: 1-G $V_{S1}$ or $V_{S1}$ corrected for G-loading.

Figure 3-34: Pitch Scale Zenith and Nadir Symbol

Figure 3-35: Pitch Limit Indicator (5 Knots above Stall)
3.2.16. Turn Rate Indicator

Rate of turn is available as an option in the PFD declutter menu to show a worm in the direction of turn with full-scale deflection indicating a standard rate of turn (and slightly beyond) and half-standard rate indicated at the mid-scale marking.

Figure 3-36: Pitch Limit Indicator (20 Knots above Stall)

Figure 3-37: Turn Indication (Selected from Declutter Menu)
3.2.17. G-Force and Fast/Slow Indicator

G-Force indicator appears in normal mode as depicted or next to the large aircraft symbol reference marks (basic or unusual attitude mode) when difference between G-force and 1-G is greater than 0.3 Gs.

**Figure 3-38: G-Force Indicator**

Positive telltales appear whenever G-force exceeds 2.5G. Negative telltales appear whenever negative G-force is less than -0.5G. Telltales appear full-time within G-indication area.

**Figure 3-39: G-Force Indicator Telltale Indications**

When selected from declutter menu, analog G-force indication is displayed to nearest tenth G.

**Figure 3-40: Analog G-Force Indicator**

Press **RESET G (L2)** to reset telltales to zero, unless the aircraft G-limits have been exceeded. If G-limits have been exceeded, reset exceedance in GMF.

**Figure 3-41: RESET G**

3.2.18. Landing Gear Indication

If configured, PFD displays landing gear position as small “tires” below FPM or large aircraft symbol reference marks.
3.2.19. Unusual Attitude Mode

Unusual attitude mode is enabled when pitch attitude exceeds +30° or -30° or bank angle exceeds 65°. Once enabled, the waterline symbol is replaced by large aircraft symbol and the unusual attitude mode remains engaged until pitch attitude returns to within 5° of the horizon and bank attitude returns to within 10° of the horizon. Recovery chevrons tied to the 30° and higher pitch scale indications (both positive and negative) aid in unusual attitude recovery and are a normal part of the pitch scale and are not necessarily tied to unusual attitude mode.

NOTE:
The recovery chevrons are a normal part of the pitch scale but are not necessarily tied to unusual attitude mode.
The following features are disabled in unusual attitude mode:

1) Terrain and obstruction rendering
2) CDI
3) VDI
4) Flight path marker
5) Highway in the Sky boxes
6) Atmospheric perspective
7) Analog and digital AGL indication
8) Active waypoint symbology
9) Mini map
10) Traffic thumbnail
11) If in basic mode, PFD reverts to Normal Mode
12) If in zoom mode FOV, PFD reverts to normal FOV
13) Runways

3.2.20. PFD Background

The PFD has a 3D background generated from terrain elevation and obstruction elevation data stored in electronic memory. The “actual horizon” displayed on the PFD is based upon the higher of terrain within 90NM or a horizon calculated using a visible horizon equation. Thus, the relative elevation of terrain and obstructions with respect to aircraft altitude and performance is observed by reference to the primary flight information pitch ladder and FPM.

The background has two pilot-selectable field-of-view (FOV) modes, wide FOV mode (approximately 70°) and narrow FOV mode (approximately 35°). In unusual attitude mode, wide FOV mode is automatically selected in the PFI area only.

A blended-tone sky is displayed in conjunction with terrain. The sky fades from light blue at the horizon to dark blue at the top of the display to simulate atmospheric perspective and enhance the 3D presentation. Additionally, the blended sky increases contrast of the directional scale, emphasizes the horizon, and provides a compelling visual cue to a nose-high attitude.

Terrain and obstruction rendering uses hidden surface removal techniques while terrain/sky rendering uses atmospheric perspective techniques. Terrain with obstruction rendering is collectively pilot-selectable to declutter the display (independent declutter of obstructions is not possible). Terrain and obstruction rendering is disabled in the basic mode, unusual attitude mode, and during any reversionary mode. In unusual attitude mode, the blue-brown boundary line of the background decouples from the pitch scale at high pitch angles so a sliver of the blue-brown boundary line always remains visible to give guidance to the horizon.
Terrain ahead of the aircraft is shown conformally with the artificial horizon in the correct scale and perspective for the aircraft’s current position and altitude. Worldwide terrain coverage is provided in each IDU and is shown with a resolution as in Table 3-8. Terrain is displayed ahead of the aircraft using a grid and simulates atmospheric perspective (terrain lines fade into the background ground color as they recede into the distance).

NOTE:

There is a one-degree dead band to prevent grid flicker while flying along one of the boundary latitudes. The grid space switching changes at one degree less latitude when flying towards the Equator than it does when flying toward the Poles.

At latitudes greater than 75°, no grid lines are shown. To keep the grid spacing relatively consistent, at latitudes between 45° and 75°, the longitude spacing is increased according as in Table 3-8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latitude Range</th>
<th>Longitude Grid Spacing</th>
<th>Heading Boundary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0° to 46°</td>
<td>24 arc-seconds</td>
<td>Pole 46°, Equator 45°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46° to 62°</td>
<td>48 arc-seconds</td>
<td>Pole 62°, Equator 61°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62° to 70°</td>
<td>72 arc-seconds</td>
<td>Pole 70°, Equator 69°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70° to 74°</td>
<td>96 arc-seconds</td>
<td>Pole 74°, Equator 73°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74° to 75°</td>
<td>120 arc-seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3-9: Terrain and Obstruction Rendering Levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Terrain Coloring</th>
<th>Obstructions</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SVS BASIC</strong></td>
<td>Shades of brown for non-water terrain</td>
<td>Within the following ranges, depicted on PFI in SVS Basic or SVS TAWS mode: Narrow FOV: 17NM, Wide FOV: 12NM</td>
<td>Amber and red colors not used for normal display of terrain. Deep blue for areas of water has precedence over shades of brown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SVS TAWS</strong></td>
<td>Shades of olive when at or below 100 ft. aircraft altitude, Shades of brown when above 100 ft. aircraft altitude, TAWS coloring of FLTA alert or warning cells</td>
<td>Amber and red colors used for normal display of terrain and terrain areas causing FLTA alerts. Deep blue for areas of water has precedence over other colors.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>No terrain nor obstructions are shown. Neither, <strong>SVS BASIC</strong> or <strong>SVS TAWS</strong> is selected.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When terrain and obstruction rendering is deselected or disabled, the PFD screen background is a conventional blue over brown attitude display presentation without atmospheric perspective. Additionally, terrain may be deselected on the PFD and retained on the ND MAP display.

![Image](19x121 to 177x240)

**Figure 3-45: Terrain Deselected on PFD and Retained on MFD Map**

**NOTE:**

The obstruction data is provided by Jeppesen and must be updated every 28 days to maintain current database information.
WARNING:

DO NOT USE THIS EFIS FOR TERRAIN-FOLLOWING FLIGHT. DO NOT ATTEMPT TO NAVIGATE USING TERRAIN DEPICTION. ALWAYS ADHERE TO PUBLISHED NAVIGATIONAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES AND NAVIGATIONAL CHARTS IN ALL FLIGHT CONDITIONS.

Obstructions such as towers, antennas, buildings, and other manmade structures are shown on the PFD display as vertical amber (yellow) lines. Obstructions are conformal in both location and size and are only shown in conjunction with terrain regardless of altitude. Obstructions representing a collision hazard are annunciated audibly and visually with a time-critical warning or caution alert. All vertical amber (yellow) lines in Figure 3-46 are obstructions near the airport. See Section 2 System Overview for description of alerts when obstructions represent a collision hazard.

WARNING:

MANY TOWERS, ANTENNAS, STRUCTURES, AND OBSTRUCTIONS ARE NOT IN THE DATABASE.

Figure 3-46: PFD with Obstructions

3.2.21. Flight Path Marker (Velocity Vector)

The FPM appears on the background to coincide with the aircraft’s actual flight path as projected on the outside world. The FPM is laterally displaced parallel to the horizon with respect to the center of the display to account for the difference between aircraft track and heading, and is vertically
displaced perpendicular to the horizon to account for aircraft climb or descent angle.

The FPM is not shown in basic mode. In unusual attitude mode, it disappears to allow the pilot to concentrate on the large aircraft symbol reference marks for unusual attitude recovery. FPM at low speed (airspeed < 45 KIAS) behavior further depends upon whether or not the aircraft is in flight or on the ground and whether or not a WOW/WOG discrete input is enabled.

Because the FPM is used in conjunction with a 3D background, the FPM utility normally associated with a HUD is achieved. When the FPM is displaced to the extent it interferes with heading, altitude, or airspeed indications, it is removed from the display.

When the location of the ghost is displaced to the extent it interferes with heading, altitude, or airspeed indications, the ghost is removed from the display.
### Table 3-10: Flight Path Marker Behavior

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crab Angle</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cage</strong> (Become laterally centered on the display)</td>
<td>When exceeding 15° (wide FOV) or 7.5° (narrow FOV mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Uncage</strong> (Resume lateral floating)</td>
<td>When returning below 13° (wide FOV mode) or 6.5° (narrow FOV mode)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FPM movement is dampened by reference to aircraft pitch and heading so as not to deviate from pitch or heading at a rate greater than 1°/sec.

---

**Figure 3-49: Flight Path Marker Ghost**

**Figure 3-50: Flight Path Marker Absence**
3.2.22. Bank Angle Scale

The bank scale and roll pointer are centered upon the large aircraft symbol reference marks in basic or unusual attitude mode. When decluttering is not selected, the bank angle scale and sky pointer appear full time with level, 10°, 20°, 30°, 45°, and 60° marks on left and right sides.

![Figure 3-51: Bank Angle](image)

When bank angle scale decluttering is selected, appearance of the bank angle scale and roll pointer are dampened based upon magnitude and time to prevent nuisance appearances, but a bank angle scale and sky pointer are displayed when magnitude of bank angle exceeds 2.8°.

3.2.23. Timer Indication

When selected, a countdown or count-up timer is displayed above the fight path marker or large aircraft symbol reference marks.

![Figure 3-52: Timer](image)

3.2.24. Marker Beacon Symbology

![Figure 3-53: Marker Beacons](image)

Marker beacon data acquired from the navigation receiver are displayed on the PFD but are disabled when the selected NAV source is FMS. Valid marker beacon signals cause circular indicators with appropriate coloring and markings.
3.2.25. Flight Director Symbology

Flight director (FD) symbology is controlled on the IDU or integrated autopilot/FD. When selected, FD symbology and valid steering commands are received from the FD with one of the following symbols shown in normal mode. The PFD has a waterline symbol fixed in the center of the display. Rotation of the background, pitch scale, and background oriented display elements occurs relative to the location of the waterline symbol or large aircraft reference marks.

![Figure 3-54: Flight Director FD1 Single Cue](image1)

![Figure 3-55: Flight Director FD1](image2)
The order of precedence of type accuracy used by the system from highest to lowest is as follows:

1) Manual RNP: The pilot may override the automatic accuracy types by setting a manual RNP value.
2) Automatic RNP: These are based upon RNP values, which are coded in the navigation database. The EFIS looks at the leg coding on all legs other than those on the final approach segment. On the final approach segment, the EFIS looks at the “Level of Service” record for those approaches, which have RNP transition legs, and then goes to LP or LPV minima for the final approach.

3) Default TSO-C146C operation: As specified as per Table 3-11 for enroute, terminal, and various approach modes according to the “Level of Service” record.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDI Pointer and Condition</th>
<th>Color or Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full Scale Deflection</td>
<td>Flash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slaved to GPS/SBAS</td>
<td>Scale is appropriate FSD value for mode of flight:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Enroute</strong>: ±2NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Enroute to Terminal</td>
<td>Change from ±2 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering terminal mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Terminal to Enroute</td>
<td>Change from ±1 NM FSD to ±2 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering enroute mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Terminal to Approach</td>
<td>If VTF, switch immediately. Otherwise, change from ±1 NM FSD to approach FSD over distance of 2 NM; start transition at 2 NM from FAWP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Approach to Terminal</td>
<td>Change to ±1 NM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Departure to Terminal</td>
<td>If initial leg is aligned with runway, change from ±0.3 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD at the turn initiation point of the first fix in the departure procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slaved to GPS/SBAS (with GPS LON)</td>
<td>Amber (Yellow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal conditions</td>
<td>Magenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In sources other than FMS</td>
<td>Angular scale annunciation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**With Analog Autopilot Configured**
### Table 3-11: CDI Behavior and Color

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDI Pointer and Condition</th>
<th>Color or Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reverse sensing (Course error exceeds 105°)</td>
<td><strong>Red “X” displayed over CDI</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected nav source FMS1</td>
<td><strong>Selected nav source VLOC1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected nav source VOR1 with “TO” indication.</td>
<td><strong>Selected nav source VOR2</strong> With “FROM” indication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### With Genesys/S-TEC DFCS Integrated Autopilot or Without Autopilot Configured

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDI Pointer and Condition</th>
<th>Color or Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reverse sensing (Course error exceeds 105°)</td>
<td><strong>Red “X” displayed over CDI</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected nav source FMS1</td>
<td><strong>Selected nav source VLOC1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected nav source VOR1 with “TO” indication.</td>
<td><strong>Selected nav source VOR2</strong> With “FROM” indication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.2.26. OBS Setting of CDI

In automatic mode, the system controls the scale and OBS setting according to the requirements of GPS/ SBAS (TSO-C-146C). The selected navigation source is annunciated below the CDI as follows:

1. **NAV: FMS1/FMS2**
2. **NAV: VOR1/LOC1**
3. **NAV: BC1/BC2** (annunciated instead of LOC1/2 when course error exceeds 105°)
4. **NAV: VOR2/LOC2**
3.2.27. Heading/Roll-Steering Sub-Mode

Heading/roll-steering sub-mode annunciation appears immediately right of the selected navigation source annunciation and displays:

1) HDG: LVL (Wing-Leveling Sub-Mode Guidance)
2) HDG: LNAV (LNAV Sub-Mode Guidance)
3) HDG: BUG (Heading Bug Sub-Mode Guidance)
4) HDG: --- (Failure Sub-Mode)

3.2.28. No Autopilot or Fully-Integrated Autopilot CDI

![Figure 3-59: CDI No Autopilot or Fully-Integrated Autopilot](image)

In an installation without an AP or with a fully-integrated AP, the heading/roll-steering sub-mode indication is decluttered from the CDI. Therefore, the shaded background of the CDI only falls behind the CDI scale. An abbreviated navigation source indication (without “NAV:”) appears above the top left corner of the CDI scale. The heading/roll-steering sub-mode indication does not appear, as it is not required with AP mode indications nor when no AP is installed.

3.2.29. Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI)

The vertical deviation indicator (VDI) on the right side displays vertical deviation for the selected vertical navigation source for displaying descent profile but disappears in unusual attitude mode.

![Figure 3-60: Vertical Deviation Indicator](image)

1) LPV Mode and LPV1 or LPV2: When descending on final approach segment in LPV mode. GPS altitude used to generate VDI; pilot may follow guidance to LPV minima regardless of temperature.
2) **LNAV Mode and VNV1-G or VNV2-G**: When descending on final approach segment in LP, LNAV/VNAV, and LNAV or RNP modes when using GPS VNAV. GPS altitude used to generate VDI; pilot may follow guidance to LNAV minima regardless of temperature.

3) **LNAV Mode and VNV1-B or VNV2-B**: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode. Using barometric altitude to generate the VDI, pilot may follow guidance to LNAV minima as long as the specified temperature is within limits.

4) **GS1 or GS2**: Glideslope receiver #1 or #2 as indicated. Pilot follows guidance to published barometric DH.

![Figure 3-61: VDI Color during GPS/SBAS LON or VLON](image)

### Table 3-12: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source (Below VDI)</th>
<th>Behavior/Condition</th>
<th>Pointer Color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FMS</td>
<td>Conforms to the VDI display</td>
<td>Magenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glideslope</td>
<td>Source must be valid when a valid glideslope is received.</td>
<td>Magenta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| LPV or VNAV mode   | Source is valid if: On VNAV descent segments when approaching Top of Descent point to provide descent anticipation as long as the following are true:  
1) On VNAV descent segments; or  
2) If the vertical deviations on VNAV level segments option is enabled, on VNAV level segments; or | Magenta       |
### Table 3-12: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source (Below VDI)</th>
<th>Behavior/Condition</th>
<th>Pointer Color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LPV,VNV-G</td>
<td>If the vertical deviations on VNAV level segments option is disabled, when approaching the Top of Descent point to provide descent anticipation; Providing: 1) Aircraft is within 2NM or twice the full scale deflection for the mode of flight (whichever is greater) of the lateral navigation route; and 2) Aircraft is in TO operation relative to the active VNAV waypoint (i.e., taking into account VNAV offsets); and 3) If on the final approach segment, aircraft is within a 35° lateral wedge of the azimuth reference point (either GARP or MAWPT + 10,000 ft.).</td>
<td><strong>LPV, VNV-G</strong> During GPS LON or GPS VLON Pointer and Text Color <strong>Amber</strong> (Yellow)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.2.30. Vertical Deviation Indicator (EFIS Coupled)

![Figure 3-62: EFIS Coupled Vertically with Glideslope Mode](image)

**Figure 3-62: EFIS Coupled Vertically with Glideslope Mode**
When vertically integrated with Genesys S/TEC DFCS enabled through glideslope mode discrete input with glideslope mode engaged, the selected vertical navigation source is green indicating the AP is vertically coupled. Otherwise, the source is white.

3.2.31. Highway in the Sky/Skyway

When not decluttered, the PFD displays the active navigation route or manual OBS course in 3D with a series of skyway boxes, which overly the flight plan route at a desired altitude and provide lateral and vertical guidance. See Section 7 IFR Procedures for details.

3.2.32. Active Waypoint and Waypoint Identifier

The PFD displays the active waypoint symbol as a magenta “tethered balloon” consisting of:
1) an “X” depicted at the ground location of the active waypoint;

2) a hoop or “tethered balloon” (for fly-over waypoints) or “tethered diamond” (for fly-by waypoints) depicted at the VNAV altitude or at aircraft altitude (if there is no VNAV altitude), and

3) a line connecting the “X” and the hoop.

The “X” and connecting line are not shown if no ground elevation information is encoded with the NavData® waypoint information (e.g., terminal and enroute fixes). The active waypoint symbol is drawn using the hidden surface removal techniques of terrain and obstruction rendering, so an active waypoint behind terrain appears to be so. The active waypoint symbol disappears in unusual attitude mode but turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

The identifier of the waypoint along with the bearing and distance to the waypoint are displayed in the lower right corner of the PFD in magenta. If a target altitude is not set and the active waypoint has a VNAV altitude associated as in Figure 3-64, the identifier includes a display of the VNAV altitude.

NOTE:

Only the active waypoint is shown on the PFD. Subsequent waypoints in a route are displayed sequentially as the current active waypoint is passed. With terrain turned off, the active waypoint is always visible regardless of distance.

If the active waypoint is beyond the lateral limits of the screen, the magenta waypoint direction pointer (i.e., magenta triangle) on the directional scale indicates shortest direction of turn to the waypoint.

If the waypoint is only a hoop hanging in space, it is a fix and not directly associated with a NAVAID on the ground (e.g. VOR, NDB, user waypoint, or airport).

If the waypoint X disappears behind terrain on the PFD, there is terrain between the aircraft present position and the waypoint.
3.2.33. Mini Map

![Figure 3-65: Mini Map](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VOR Pointer, Active Leg, Ownship Symbol</th>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VOR 1</td>
<td>Cyan</td>
<td>When Valid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOR 2</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>When Valid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Leg</td>
<td>Magenta</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amber (Yellow)</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS LON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ownship Symbol (Figure 3-67)</td>
<td>White</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 3-13: Mini-Map Behavior (When Not Decluttered)**

*Mutually exclusive with the analog AGL, traffic thumbnail, and analog G Force indicator.*

*Mini-Map disappears in Unusual Attitude Mode*

3.2.34. Runways

The PFD displays airport runways in a 3D manner. Upon activation of a DP, VFR approach, IFR approach, or STAR procedure, runways for the airport associated with the procedure, as well as, runways associated with the three nearest airports (computed by TAWS algorithms) are displayed. Runways are displayed with hidden surface removal techniques of the terrain and obstruction rendering, so runways behind terrain appear to be so. Runways are based on characteristics in the navigation database, including elevation, position, orientation, length, and width, and are displayed as defined in Table 3-14.
### Table 3-14: Runway Drawing Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Runway markings, aiming point markings, centerline, designation, and displaced threshold arrows</td>
<td>Dark gray</td>
<td>According to characteristics from navigation database, e.g., including position, orientation, length, and width.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Runway markings</td>
<td>Medium gray</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landing portion of the selected runway.</td>
<td>Light gray</td>
<td>Taking into account displaced threshold data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Runway markings for the selected runway</td>
<td>Lighter gray than light gray</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.2.35. Genesys/S-TEC DFCS Autopilot Annunciations

NOTE:
For all AP annunciations and symbology, see Genesys/S-TEC DFCS pilot guide and/or AFM.

3.3. MFD Symbology

The Navigation Display (ND) is presented in a variety of formats:

1) Moving Map
2) Conventional HSI
3) Navigation Log
4) EICAS
5) Strikes (see WX-500 Lightning Strikes Appendix)
6) Traffic (see Traffic Appendix)
7) Datalink (see Datalink Appendix)
8) WX RDR (see Weather Radar Appendix)
9) Video (see Video Appendix)

3.3.1. Ownership Symbology

Airplane FAR 23 with $V_{NE}$  
Airplane with $V_{MO/MMO}$  
Pan Mode

Figure 3-67: Ownership Symbols
3.3.2. Moving Map

![Basic Moving Map](image1)

Figure 3-68: Basic Moving Map

![Moving Map with Instrument Approach with HSI Enabled](image2)

Figure 3-69: Moving Map with Instrument Approach with HSI Enabled
Figure 3-70: North-Up Arc Mode with HSI Enabled and VOR1 Selected

Figure 3-71: North-Up Centered Mode with HSI Enabled and VLOC1 Selected
In heading up mode, the magnetic digital heading readout and pointer are aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol.

3.3.3. Compass Rose/ND Boundary Circle Symbol

3.3.4. Clock/Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the ND.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zulu Time or Local Offset</td>
<td>hh:mm:ssZ hh:mm:ssL</td>
<td>Synchronized with GPS/SBAS constellation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 3-15: Clock/Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Declutter Mode</td>
<td>DCLTR A</td>
<td>= Automatic declutter mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DCLTR M</td>
<td>= Manual declutter mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain Status</td>
<td>Enabled or Disabled</td>
<td>Indicated by the absence or presence of terrain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.3.5. Air Data and Groundspeed

The following are displayed in the upper left corner of the ND:

1) **Wind**: Information consists of the following readouts:
   a) Direction in degrees;
   b) Speed in knots;
   c) Crosswind component in knots; and
   d) Graphical wind vector arrow oriented to correspond to the ND orientation.

   **NOTE:**
   Wind information is not shown when indicated airspeed is in the noise range of less than 30 knots, when the aircraft is in the ground mode, or when the AHRS is in DG mode.

2) **Outside Air Temperature**: Digitally in Degrees C or F (as configured).

3) **International Standard Atmosphere (ISA)**: Difference between ISA temperature and current outside air temperature is displayed digitally in °C or °F (Negative values = less than Standard OAT). Decluttered if the “Show ISA Temperature Flag” is disabled in EFIS limits.
4) **Density Altitude**: Digitally in feet. Decluttered if the “Show Density altitude Flag” is disabled in EFIS limits.

5) **True Airspeed**: Digitally in knots. Decluttered if the “True Airspeed Flag” is disabled in EFIS limits.

6) **Groundspeed**: Digitally in knots.

### 3.3.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Type/Symbols</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TO Waypoint</td>
<td>If there is an active flight plan, waypoint type, identifier, range, bearing, and ETE/ETA for the active waypoint (“TO” waypoint) are shown. Waypoint information is magenta but turns amber (yellow) with GPS LON caution.</td>
<td>ETA or ETE Degree (°) or True North (T) symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEST Waypoint</td>
<td>If there is an active flight plan, waypoint type, identifier, range, and ETE/ETA for the last waypoint (“DEST” waypoint) are shown. If the active waypoint is not the last waypoint, range and time to destination waypoint are based on the flight plan route. Otherwise, range and time are based on a direct geodetic path. Waypoint information is white but turns amber (yellow) with GPS LON caution.</td>
<td>ETA or ETE Degree (°) or True North (T) symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>Based on instantaneous fuel flow, fuel remaining and groundspeed are shown immediately below “DEST” waypoint information for easy comparison.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endurance</td>
<td>Based on instantaneous fuel flow and fuel remaining is shown.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.3.7. Navigation Data

The ND displays navigation symbology in its correct relationship to the ownship symbol and includes the symbols in Table 3-17. The ND has manual and automatic decluttering of navigation data. There are six levels of automatic declutter based upon the number of potential navigation data symbols drawn in the current ND format and range. Decluttering is as follows:

1) **Airports**: Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, large airports (IFR procedure and longest runway and automatically adjusted threshold needed to achieve desired symbol count) are always shown; IFR airports that are not large airports are shown in levels 1, 2, 3, and 4; and VFR airports are shown in levels 1, 2, and 3.

2) **VORs**: Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, VORs are shown in levels 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.

3) **NDBs**: Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, NDBs are shown in levels 1 and 2. Both enroute and terminal NDBs are shown.

4) **Fixes** (including User Waypoints): Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, enroute fixes are shown in level 1. Terminal fixes are manually selected and not shown in automatic declutter mode. Enroute fixes, terminal fixes, and user waypoints may be manually decluttered separately from each other.

5) **High Altitude Airways**: Manually selected.
5) **Low Altitude Airways**: Manually selected.

The ND displays navigation symbology in its correct relationship to the ownship symbol and includes the following symbols.

**Table 3-17: Navigation Symbology**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>High Altitude Airway</th>
<th>Low Altitude Airway</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IFR Airport</td>
<td>NDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VFR Airport</td>
<td>Fix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VORTAC</td>
<td>DME only or TACAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOR</td>
<td>User Waypoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Waypoint in Pan Mode</td>
<td>HSI CDI scale</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 3-18: Airspace Depiction**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of ARINC 424 Airspace</th>
<th>Vertical Limits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dashed lines</td>
<td>More than ±500’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid lines</td>
<td>Within 500’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thick solid lines</td>
<td>Within airspace vertical limits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Airspace Color**

- Class C, Control Area, TRSAs, Class D: Green
- Class B, TCAs (Where applicable): Blue
### Table 3-18: Airspace Depiction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of ARINC 424 Airspace</th>
<th>Vertical Limits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Caution areas, danger areas, MOAs, training areas, warning areas, unknown areas</td>
<td>Amber (Yellow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prohibited areas, restricted areas, TFR areas (when equipped with Datalink)</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3.3.8. Analog Navigation Symbology

When selected, the ND displays analog (VOR1 and VOR2) navigation symbology when valid. When VOR1 and/or VOR2 pointers are selected for display, bearing and distance for the selected VOR pointers appear at the bottom of the ND view (cyan for VOR1, green for VOR2). Both VOR 1 and 2 distance readouts match the color of the respective pointer. If the DME channel is in hold mode, “H” is shown above the distance readout. If a bearing or distance are not valid, the respective field is filled with dashes.
3.3.9. Borders

National and United States state borders are drawn if selected at all map scales. They are white if the ND background includes terrain.
3.3.10. Terrain/Obstructions

Terrain and obstruction rendering is pilot-selectable to declutter the display by deselecting terrain (independent declutter of obstructions is not possible). Furthermore, terrain and obstruction rendering is disabled when:

1) The GPS/SBAS sensor is failed; OR

2) When the ADC is failed; OR

3) When the horizontal figure of merit exceeds the greater of 0.3NM or the horizontal alarm limit for the mode of flight.
Terrain is displayed on the ND in correct relationship to the ownship symbol using color to show relationship to aircraft altitude.

### Table 3-19: Terrain Color

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Based on Aircraft Altitude</th>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Terrain at or below 100 ft. less than aircraft altitude</td>
<td>Olive shades</td>
<td>Terrain slope determines shade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain above 100 ft. less than aircraft altitude</td>
<td>Brown shades</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLTA alerts</td>
<td>Amber and Red</td>
<td>See Section 8 TAWS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water at all altitudes</td>
<td>Deep Blue</td>
<td>Takes precedence over other colors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 3-20: Obstructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lateral Distance Away</th>
<th>Vertical Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17 NM or less</td>
<td>More than 2000’ below aircraft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 NM or less</td>
<td>Within 2000’ but more than 500’ below aircraft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5 NM or greater</td>
<td>Within 500’ but below aircraft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5 NM or less</td>
<td>At or above aircraft altitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PFD in Narrow FOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not depicted on ND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Depicted in amber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Depicted in light red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Depicted in deep red</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:**

See Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System for obstructions causing TAWS alarms and depiction of separate symbology.

### 3.3.11. Pan Mode

The map has a pan mode to view details along the route of flight and at the intended or alternate destination while in flight or on the ground. When pan mode is active, use labeled buttons to move the pan mode location north, south, east, and west in a north-up, centered orientation. Upon entering the pan mode, the heading pointer, track pointer, lubber line, waypoint pointer, analog navigation symbology, and field of view lines are removed.

Figure 3-83 shows the line with bearing and distance from the map center to the aircraft’s current position in white when the aircraft is more than 0.5
NM away. When panning, the nearest displayed airport, VOR, NDB, or fix within the inner range ring is highlighted with a flashing circle. Buttons are labeled to allow for viewing or hiding waypoint information. When exiting the pan mode, all previous settings are restored as before pan mode was enabled.

![Figure 3-83: Pan Mode](image)

### 3.3.12. Start Point

Activation of NRST or Direct-To functions creates and activates a flight plan from the present position to the selected waypoint. A waypoint named “START” is placed at the current aircraft location when the flight plan is created.

![Figure 3-84: Start Point](image)

### 3.3.13. Direct Point

Unnamed waypoints appear depending upon the procedure loaded when a direct-to command is entered. See Section 7 IFR Procedures for more information.
1) **-ALT-** for altitude terminations  
2) **-DIR-** for waypoints that begin a direct-to leg  
3) **-DME-** for distance or DME terminations  
4) **-INT-** for intercept terminations  
5) **-RAD-** for radial terminations

Figure 3-85: Direct Point

### 3.3.14. Altitude Capture Predictor/Top-of-Descent

When a selected altitude or VNAV altitude is specified on the PFD, T/D marks correct point on the flight plan path at which descent must commence and contains location on the flight plan path with indication of the glidepath angle used to calculate position. After passing top of descent along the lubber line, altitude is captured and shown as a green arc located ahead of the aircraft. The arc marks the bottom-of-descent or top-of-climb point.

Figure 3-86: Top-of-Descent or Top-of-Climb
3.3.15. Projected Path

When the aircraft is in a bank angle, a projected path emanates from the ownship symbol. This curving path is based on aircraft bank angle and groundspeed as projected one minute into the future up to a maximum of 180° of turn. The projected path or “noodle” assists in course interception and making small adjustments to bank angle for proper roll out.

3.3.16. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

3.3.16.1. Parallel Track

When there is an active flight plan and GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown on the ND in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. See Section 5 Menu Functions and Procedures for details on creating a parallel track.
3.3.16.2. Manual Course

Manual course through the waypoint shown centered on the waypoint, which matches lateral guidance on PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

3.3.16.3. Active Flight Plan Path

The active flight plan path’s active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.
3.3.17. Field of View Indication

The ND background indicates the ND FOV with a set of segmented gray lines leading out from the ownship symbol in either 35° or 70° angles depending on the zoom mode setting on the PFD.

![Normal FOV (Zoom Off)](image1)

![Narrow FOV (Zoom On)](image2)

Figure 3-91: Field of View

3.3.18. Range

The white range ring is centered on the aircraft’s position to quickly estimate distances. Distance (in NM) from the aircraft to the ring is a white number overlaying the 6 o’clock position of the ring. The range ring is half the distance to the directional scale. Consequently, when the range ring shows a distance of 5NM, the directional scale is 10NM. Rotate to set the overall map scale ranges to .5, 1, 2.5, 5, 10, 25, 50, 100, and 200NM as appropriate.

![Figure 3-92: Range](image3)
3.4. HSI Page

When selected, VOR1, VOR2, and ADF navigation are displayed with a magenta single line FMS1 (1), a cyan single line VOR1 needle (2), and a green double line VOR2 needle (3), and ADF (4) tuned to an NDB. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown.

![Figure 3-93: HSI Screen](image)

3.4.1. Compass Rose Symbols

![Normal Mode](image)  ![True North Mode](image)

When selected, a digital heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the compass rose boundary circle. If referenced to magnetic north, the heading readout uses the degree (°) symbol. Otherwise, a stylized true north.

See Section 7 IFR Procedures for description of the following heading modes with the AHRS and EFIS:

1) ADAHRS Slaved—EFIS Magnetic North
2) ADAHRS Slaved—EFIS True North
3) ADAHRS Free/”DG”—EFIS Magnetic North
4) ADAHRS Free/”DG”—EFIS True North
3.4.2. Conventional HSI/Ptr Format

When selected, the ND displays conventional HSI symbology, including a selected course needle, lateral deviation indicator, and “TO-FROM” indicator. Navigation source and OBS setting are displayed in the top center of the HSI in the same color as the course needle. HSI pointer color is:

1) Magenta (if FMS is the selected navigation source);
2) Cyan (if VLOC1 is the selected navigation source);
3) Green (if VLOC2 is the selected navigation source); or
4) Amber (Yellow) when HSI is slaved to GPS/SBAS and there is a GPS LON condition.

The ownship symbol (Figure 3-67) is centered and pointing straight up on the HSI. The HSI has a compass rose aligned with either magnetic north or true north depending on the status of the true north discrete input. When the HSI NAV source (FMS, VOR1, or VOR2) fails, a red “X” is displayed in place of the HSI deviations. When the AHRS is in DG mode, “DG” appears to the right of the ownship symbol.

3.4.3. HSI CDI and VDI Scale

A VDI appears when the VDI source is valid to display vertical deviation information for the currently selected navigation source. When the selected source is FMS, the VDI displayed on the HSI has the same behavior as the VDI displayed on the PFD, with the exception of the VDI source displayed on the top of the VDI to avoid clutter with waypoint information below.
1) VNV1-B: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode
2) VNV2-B: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode
3) GS1: Glideslope #1
4) GS2: Glideslope #2

Figure 3-96: CDI Scale with VDI

3.4.4. Analog Navigation Symbology

Figure 3-97: Analog Navigation Display VOR1 and VOR2

When selected, the HSI displays analog (VOR1 [cyan] and VOR2 [green]) navigation symbology with an RMI pointer format overlaid upon the HSI. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown. When the signal is valid for VOR1 and VOR2, a bearing and distance display for the selected VOR pointers appears at the bottom of the display in the same
color of the respective pointer. When an ADF2 is enabled, the ADF2 double needle is as shown in Figure 3-98.

![Analog Navigation Display FMS and ADF2](image)

**Figure 3-98: Analog Navigation Display FMS and ADF2**

If a DME channel is in hold mode, the associated distance readout is displayed in amber (yellow) rather than blue or green, and “H” is above the distance readout.

![HSI Bearing Distance Readout with DME in HOLD](image)

**Figure 3-99: HSI Bearing Distance Readout with DME in HOLD**

Valid marker beacon discretes are displayed on the PFD and ND HSI with appropriate coloring markings. Only during a built-in-test, more than one marker beacon may be active. Marker beacons are disabled when NAV source is FMS.
1) Cyan OBS CDI for VOR1  
2) Green ground track pointer  
3) VOR1 OBS setting  
4) Valid marker beacon

Figure 3-100: PFD and MFD HSI with Marker Beacon Displayed

3.4.5. Air Data and Groundspeed

Air data and groundspeed are displayed as shown as specified in § 3.3.5.

Figure 3-101: HSI Display Air Data and Groundspeed

3.4.6. Clock/Options

Figure 3-102: HSI Clock
The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the HSI:

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time**: As specified in § 3.3.4.
2) **Traffic**: If configured as specified in Traffic Appendix.
3) **Datalink**: If configured as specified in Datalink Appendix.
4) **Weather Radar**: If configured Weather Radar Appendix.

### 3.4.7. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

Fuel totalizer and waypoint distance are displayed in lower right corner of the HSI as specified in § 3.3.6.

**Figure 3-103: HSI Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance**

### 3.5. Navigation Log

#### With Fuel Enabled

![Navigation Log with Fuel Enabled](image)

**Figure 3-104: Navigation Log**

#### Without Fuel Enabled

![Navigation Log without Fuel Enabled](image)

### 3.5.1. Clock and Groundspeed

The following are displayed in the upper left corner of the nav log:

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time**: As specified in §3.3.4.
2) **Groundspeed**: Displayed digitally in knots.

### 3.5.2. Fuel Remaining and Fuel Flow Data

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the nav log:

1) **Fuel Remaining**: If fuel level or fuel flow is available, current fuel remaining is displayed digitally in fuel units.
2) **Fuel Flow**: If fuel flow is available, current total fuel flow is displayed digitally in fuel units.

### 3.5.3. Waypoint Identifier Column

The identifier for each waypoint of the active flight plan is displayed in the left-most column of the nav log. The active waypoint, indicated with an asterisk, is magenta but turns amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. Brackets indicate suppressed waypoints. Navigation data symbols are shown with the waypoint identifier to easily distinguish the waypoint type.

When a waypoint is part of a procedure or parallel offset, the following legends are drawn on top of the navigation data symbols:

1) **SAR** = Waypoint is part of SAR pattern
2) **HOLD** = Waypoint is part of an enroute Holding pattern
3) **Airway Designation** = Waypoint is part of the designated Airway
4) **FAF** = Waypoint is a final approach fix
5) **MAP** = Waypoint is a missed approach point
6) **MA** = Waypoint is part of the missed approach segment of an instrument approach procedure
7) **APP** = Waypoint is part of an instrument approach procedure but not a final approach fix, missed approach point, nor part of the missed approach segment
8) **VFR** = Waypoint is part of a VFR approach
9) **STAR** = Waypoint is part of a standard terminal arrival procedure
10) **DP** = Waypoint is part of a departure procedure
11) **PTK** = Parallel Offset. In the case of a STAR or DP waypoint subject to a parallel offset, both STAR/DP and PTK are shown

### 3.5.4. VNAV and VNAV Offset Column

VNAV altitude and associated VNAV offset (in NM) are displayed immediately to the right of the waypoint identifier column. In the case of an approach with a final approach segment data block, VNAV offset readout associated with the missed approach point is “GPI” to designate distance to the glidepath intercept point. VNAV altitudes and offsets from the navigation database or manually entered are white; those computed automatically are gray. VNAV and VNAV offset column elements align with
waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the VNAV information applies to the associated waypoint.

3.5.5. Path Column

LNAV path between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the VNAV and VNAV offset column. The following are displayed:

1) Geodetic path between waypoints is displayed with \((R4)\), followed by the initial geodetic course for the leg.

2) Discontinuities (i.e., a leg where FMS is unable to compute a valid path) are shown with the legend -DISCONT-

3) Procedure turns are shown with a pictorial representation of a procedure turn (either left or right turns) as well as the entry and exit course for the procedure turn.

4) Holding patterns are shown with a pictorial representation of a holding pattern (either left or right turns) as well as the inbound course for the holding pattern.

5) Arcs are shown with a pictorial representation of an arc (either left or right turns) as well as the entry and exit radials for the arc.

6) An altitude termination leg is shown by the initial geodetic course for the leg followed by the altitude at which the leg terminates.

Path column elements are offset from waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the path information applies to the leg between waypoints.

3.5.6. Distance Column

Distance between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the path column and is calculated taking into account the associated path as well as parallel offsets. In the case of a discontinuity, distance between waypoints is the direct geodetic distance between the two waypoints. Distance column elements are offset from waypoint identifier column elements to indicate distance information applies to the leg between waypoints.

3.5.7. Estimated Time Enroute Column

ETE between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the distance column and is calculated taking into account the associated distance between waypoints and current groundspeed. ETE column elements are offset from waypoint identifier column elements to indicate ETE information applies to the leg between waypoints.
3.5.8. Estimated Time of Arrival Column

ETA at the active waypoint and all subsequent waypoints are displayed immediately to the right of the ETE column. ETA at the active waypoint is calculated taking into account the associated time remaining on the active leg and current time. ETA at subsequent waypoints is calculated taking into account the cumulative ETEs and current time. ETA column elements align with waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the ETA information applies to the associated waypoint.

3.5.9. Fuel Remaining Column

Fuel remaining at the active waypoint and all subsequent waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the ETA column. Fuel remaining at the active waypoint is calculated taking into account the associated time remaining on the active leg, current fuel flow, and current fuel quantity. Fuel remaining at subsequent waypoints is calculated taking into account the cumulative ETEs, current fuel flow, and current fuel quantity. Fuel remaining column elements are aligned with waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the fuel remaining information applies to the associated waypoint.

NOTE:

Since a suppressed waypoint is not part of the active flight plan, dashes appear in the absence of the following VNAV data associated with a suppressed waypoint:

1) Path data
2) Distance data
3) ETE data
4) ETA data
5) Fuel remaining data
4.1. Reversionary Modes

The equipment has eight reversionary modes as follows:

- **Mode 0**: GPS/SBAS, ADC, and AHRS normal.
- **Mode 1**: GPS/SBAS failed; ADC and AHRS normal.
- **Mode 2**: ADC failed; GPS/SBAS and AHRS normal.
- **Mode 3**: AHRS failed; GPS/SBAS and ADC normal.
- **Mode 4**: GPS/SBAS and ADC failed; and AHRS normal.
- **Mode 5**: GPS/SBAS and AHRS failed; and ADC normal.
- **Mode 6**: ADC and AHRS failed; and GPS/SBAS normal.
- **Mode 7**: GPS, ADC, and AHRS failed.

To use this section, review the following table and notes to determine what feature or function is affected by one or more of the three sensors failed conditions. Examples follow with the IDU-450 displays in various configurations with a table breaking down the affected functions.

Not all possible IDU-450 display configurations and format combinations are represented here. All eight modes of system operation are represented for description purposes.
### Table 4-1: PFD Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PFD Function</th>
<th>Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airspeed</td>
<td>OK OK 19 OK 19 OK 19 OK 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altimeter</td>
<td>OK OK 19 OK 19 OK 19 OK 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altimeter Set Display</td>
<td>OK OK - OK - OK - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank Scale</td>
<td>OK OK OK OK - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDI</td>
<td>OK 1 + 20 OK OK 20 20 OK 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Runway</td>
<td>OK 1 25 - - - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waypoint Pointer</td>
<td>7 1 7 7 - - 7 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heading Scale</td>
<td>7 7 7 7 7 7 - 7 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGL Ind.</td>
<td>OK 2 4 OK 11 11 4 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight Path Marker</td>
<td>OK 1 + 14 - - - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G-meter</td>
<td>OK OK OK - OK - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground Track</td>
<td>7 1 7 7 - - 7 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heading Indicator</td>
<td>7 7 7 - 7 - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizon</td>
<td>OK OK OK - OK - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mini-Map</td>
<td>7 1 7 7 - - 7 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitch Limit Indicator</td>
<td>OK OK - 8 - 8 - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitch Scale</td>
<td>OK OK OK - OK - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highway in the Sky</td>
<td>OK 1 + 15 - - - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain/Obstructions</td>
<td>OK - 25 - - - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock Functions</td>
<td>OK OK OK OK OK OK OK OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSI</td>
<td>OK OK - OK - OK - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterline Symbol</td>
<td>22 22 5 13 5 13 13 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waypoint Symbol</td>
<td>OK 1 - - - - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waypoint Brg/Dist</td>
<td>OK 1 OK OK - - OK -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic</td>
<td>OK OK OK - - - - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic Thumbnail</td>
<td>OK OK OK OK OK OK OK OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Trend</td>
<td>OK OK - 8 - 8 - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic Stall Speed</td>
<td>OK OK - 8 - 8 - -</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 4-2: ND Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ND Functions</th>
<th>Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft Position</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Use Airspace</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waypoint Pointer</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Flight Plan Path</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glide Range</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groundspeed</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground Track</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heading Indicator</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation Symbols</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside Air Temp.</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projected Path</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain/Obstructions</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock Functions</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waypoint Brg./Dist.</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WX-500 Data</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compass Rose</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Totalizer Functions</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>True Airspeed</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density Altitude</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAT/ISA Display</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 4-3: Output Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output Functions</th>
<th>Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air/Ground Output</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autopilot EFIS Valid</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAWS Alarm Output</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit Enabled</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning Light Output</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caution Light Output</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mstr. Caut. Light Output</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDA/DH Output</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altitude Capture Output</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAS Switch Output</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note 1: Presented using inertial dead-reckoning based on last known wind information. If unable to dead-reckon (e.g., heading is failed or true airspeed cannot be calculated), function is disabled.

Note 2: Only radar altitude presented when available.

Note 3: Last known wind is saved during GPS/SBAS failure.

Note 4: Either radar altitude or geodetic altitude less database elevation.

Note 5: Waterline symbol expanded to large attitude bars.

Note 6: Special use airspace boundaries are drawn with bold lines due to lack of aircraft altitude data.

Note 7: In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode, heading scale aligned with aircraft track and heading indication is removed. In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode combined with GPS failure, heading scale is replaced with a red-X.

Note 8: Based upon 1G stall speed.

Note 9: In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode, compass rose aligned with aircraft track and heading indication is removed when in heading up mode. In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode combined with GPS failure, compass rose is removed.

Note 10: Presenting using last-known wind information and aligned with aircraft track in heading up mode.

Note 11: Only radar altitude presented when available.

Note 12: Assuming valid fuel flow information, endurance is presented.

Note 13: Large attitude bars presented and X’d out.

Note 14: Flight path marker grayed after one minute to indicate degraded operation.

Note 15: Highway in the Sky removed after one minute.

Note 16: See IDU SCC card and limits requirements for activation requirements.

Note 17: Defaults to AIR unless Weight on Wheel/Weight on Ground discrete input is active.
Note 18: Only DH function (with valid AGL altitude) in this mode.

Note 19: Red X in place of scale.

Note 20: VLOC CDI always available if optional VOR symbology enabled.

Note 21: Function removed during heading-only failure mode.

Note 23: Assuming valid fuel flow information, both range and endurance are presented.

Note 24: Assuming valid fuel flow information, both range and endurance are presented using inertial dead-reckoning based on last known wind information. If the pilot is unable to dead-reckon due to loss of heading or true airspeed cannot be calculated, endurance only information is presented.

Note 25: Inhibited in accordance with the conditions specified in TAWS automatic inhibit function (abnormal operation).

4.1.1. Oat Sensor Failure Mode

In addition, the equipment has an OAT sensor failure mode. With the OAT sensor failed, the display of wind, OAT, density altitude, and true airspeed on the ND are disabled.

4.1.2. Heading Failure Mode

In addition, the equipment has a heading failure mode. With heading failed, the PFD heading scale and MFD compass rose align with track (if available) or are removed and replaced with a red-X.

In this failure mode, the PFD heading scale includes “GPS TRK” around the track marker to clearly delineate the failure mode.

Figure 4-1: GPS TRK

4.1.3. PFD Screen Auto Reversion

For IFR approval in aircraft, flight instrument information essential to safety of flight remains available to the pilot without additional action after a failure. To accommodate this, MFDs must have the ability to sense when the PFD has failed and take over the PFD function automatically. The manner in which this occurs is as follows:

When an MFD (IDU #2) becomes the transmit-enabled IDU, the MFD automatically switches to a PFD.
4.1.4. GPS Failure

GPS degrades or fails as a result of loss of satellite information or GPS equipment failure. When SBAS provides the integrity, the IDU provides a loss of integrity (LOI) caution within two seconds if the current horizontal protection level (HPL) exceeds the horizontal alert level (HAL). LOI caution appears when there is no integrity monitoring and disappears when it is restored.

Figure 4-2: Loss of Integrity (LOI)

Further GPS degradation causes the EFIS to lose GPS updating of aircraft position, groundspeed, and ground track, and the ability to calculate the wind information.

1) **LOI** (Loss of Integrity) displayed with no time delay.

2) HPL > HAL for the phase of flight currently in. Position is still presented based upon a GPS navigation solution.

3) **LOI** (Loss of Navigation) displayed with no time delay of the onset of the following:

   a) The absence of power;

   b) Equipment malfunction or failure;

   c) The presence of a condition lasting five seconds or more where there are an inadequate number of satellites to compute position solution;

   d) Fault detects a position failure that cannot be excluded within time-to-alert when integrity is provided by FDE;

   e) HPL > HAL on the final approach segment. Genesys Aerosystems EFIS does not transition to DR navigation at this stage. A GPS navigation solution is still presented; and

   f) Where HPL > HAL on the final approach segment, this position may still be satisfactory for GPS navigation. For example, an HPL of 0.31NM exists, which means as soon as a transition to terminal mode occurs, all alerts disappear. This is significantly important during a wind change if the system had been in a DR mode.
NOTE:
At any time, view HFOM on the faults page to see the system-reported accuracy.

Figure 4-3: FAULTS Menu on MFD

4) **DR (Dead Reckoning)**

If a GPS position cannot be calculated, a dead reckoning solution is provided with a timer **DR 01:23**. This solution is calculated from heading and TAS derived from the AHRS and ADC.

5) **Loss of Vertical Navigation**

If the navigation equipment is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the LNAV/VNAV approach, “VLON” appears within one second of the onset of any of the following conditions:

a) The absence of power;

b) Equipment malfunction or failure;

c) The presence of a condition where fault detection detects a position failure that cannot be excluded;

d) There are an insufficient number of SBAS HEALTHY satellites;

e) The horizontal protection level exceeds the alert limit as follows for LNAV/VNAV approaches:
Section 4 Reversionary Modes

i) Prior to sequencing, the FAWP-HAL should be 0.3 NM with no limit on VAL.

ii) After sequencing the FAWP-HAL 556m (0.3NM) and VAL 50m.

Figure 4-4: Loss of Vertical Navigation (VLON)

When in LNAV mode, the fault detection function detects positioning failures within 10 seconds after the onset of the positioning failure.

4.2. PFD and MFD Failure Mode Examples

GPS failure results in the EFIS operating in dead reckoning mode. The EFIS continues to provide navigational position, groundspeed, and ground track information, based upon the last known wind, current air data, and heading. The PFD and MFD are affected as follows.
4.2.1. PFD Failure Mode 0

Figure 4-5: PFD Failure Mode 0 GPS, ADC and AHRS Normal

4.2.2. MFD Failure Mode 0

Figure 4-6: MFD Failure Mode 0
GPS, ADC and AHRS Normal
4.2.3. PFD Failure Mode 1

![Figure 4-7: PFD Failure Mode 1](image)

GPS/SBAS Failed, ADC and AHRS Normal

4.2.4. MFD Failure Mode 1

![Figure 4-8: MFD Failure Mode 1](image)

GPS/SBAS Failed, ADC and AHRS Normal
4.2.5. PFD Failure Mode 2

Figure 4-9: PFD Mode 2
ADC Failed, GPS/SBAS and AHRS Normal

4.2.6. MFD Failure Mode 2

Figure 4-10: MFD Failure Mode 2, (Normal Mode)
ADC Failed, GPS/SBAS and AHRS Normal
4.2.7. PFD Failure Mode 3

Figure 4-11: PFD Failure Mode 3
AHRS Failed, GPS/SBAS and ADC Normal

4.2.8. MFD Failure Mode 3

Figure 4-12: MFD Failure Mode 3
AHRS Failed, GPS/SBAS and ADC Normal
4.2.9. PFD Failure Mode 4

GPS/SBAS and ADC Failed, AHRS Normal

Figure 4-13: PFD Failure Mode 4

4.2.10. MFD Failure Mode 4

GPS/SBAS and ADC Failed, AHRS Normal

Figure 4-14: MFD Failure Mode 4
4.2.11. PFD Failure Mode 5

Figure 4-15: PFD Failure Mode 5
GPS/SBAS and AHRS Failed, ADC Normal

4.2.12. MFD Failure Mode 5

Figure 4-16: MFD Failure Mode 5
GPS/SBAS and AHRS Failed, ADC Normal
4.2.13. PFD Failure Mode 6

Figure 4-17: PFD Failure Mode 6
ADC and AHRS Failed, GPS/SBAS Normal

4.2.14. MFD Failure Mode 6

Figure 4-18: MFD Failure Mode 6 (Normal Mode)
ADC and AHRS Failed, GPS/SBAS Normal
4.2.15. PFD Failure Mode 7

Figure 4-19: PFD Failure Mode 7
GPS/SBAS, ADC and AHRS Failed

4.2.16. MFD Failure Mode 7

Figure 4-20: MFD Failure Mode 7
GPS/SBAS, ADC and AHRS Failure
Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures

5.1. Menu Functions

The top-level menu level corresponds to the permanent labeling of the IDU pushbuttons and is active any time no soft menu options appear on the screen. Soft menu function tiles appear next to the appropriate IDU button and the right encoder (⍰) when appropriate.

On the PFD, rotate ♂ to activate the heading menu. On MFD pages with an adjustable display (e.g., ND, Strikes, Traffic, Datalink, Weather Radar, rotate ♂ to change the display scale (CW = increase scale, CCW = decrease scale, or as set in EFIS limits).

With the exception of IDU #1, push ♂ to swap between the PFD and MFD, unless the IDU is in MFD-only mode. IDU #1 is always configured to the PFD page.

5.1.1. Menu Philosophy

The menu system and buttons with an action are clearly labeled. The following rules are in the design of the menu system.

Figure 5-1: IDU-450 Input Controls
EXIT (R1): Whenever menu system is beyond the top level, provides a one-touch escape to the top-level.

BACK (L1): Whenever soft menu level is deeper than the first level, regresses through the menu system by one level.

Soft menu tiles: Used (even at the top-level) and are annunciated in a dedicated, blacked-out area in the screen margins adjacent to the appropriate IDU button or encoder when appropriate.

Selection list: Menus adjacent to are frequently a selection list. Lists too long to be presented in the space available provide an indication of location within the list.

Indication of further menu levels: A filled triangle next to a menu legend means the button press leads to a further menu level. An empty triangle next to a menu legend means the button press is a final action.

Within lists or on a soft menu tile, a two-dot trailer indicates further menu levels.

Menu messages are displayed for ten seconds but are cleared if no IDU button is pressed or encoder pushed or rotated.

Figure 5-2: IDU-450 Menu Messages

5.1.2. Avoidance of Autonomous Behavior

The displays are designed to be under the control of the pilot to ensure critical functions are placed at the top level. Autonomous changes in function are avoided to the most extent possible. The following autonomous behaviors incorporated into the IDUs, all of which are required by regulation or guidance.

Automatic popup of flight instruments: For IFR approval in aircraft, flight instrument information essential to flight safety must remain available to the
pilot without additional crewmember action after a failure. This guidance is specific to flight instruments, navigation instruments. This requirement is met by assigning an order of precedence of the IDUs based upon the IDU number. IDU #1 always shows the essential flight instruments, because the PFI page is always shown on the PFD. Lower priority IDUs monitor the higher priority IDU via intra-system communications and automatically switch to the PFD upon determining the higher priority IDU has failed.

**TAWS popups:** When an FLTA alert is generated, a popup function enables PFI SVS (returns PFI to screen showing synthetic vision display) and activates terrain at an appropriate scale and format on the moving map MFD (one of the multi-function pages). This is a required function of TSO-C151 (Class A, B and C TAWS are described in Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System.)

**Traffic popups:** See Traffic Appendix.

5.2. Menu Synchronization

System settings changed by the menu system are synchronized between multiple IDUs according to Table 5-1. All parameters for fixed wing aircraft are included. Each appendix for Datalink, Strikes, RBP, Traffic, and Weather Radar contains specific limitations for menu synchronization for that feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AHRS 1 and 2 mode and slewing values</td>
<td>The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Totalizer Quantity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VNAV Climb Angle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countdown Timer Start Time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countdown Timer Default Value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Tune Frequencies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu Parameter</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VNAV Descent Angle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G-Force Limit Parameters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decision Height Setting</td>
<td>Used when “Dual Decision Height” option is not selected in EFIS Limits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency and Minimum Fuel Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heading Bug and Heading Sub-Mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Altitude Bug Value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLOC OBS Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roll Trim parameter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airspeed Bug Setting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCAS-II control parameters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target Altitude Bug Setting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer Starting Signal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>True North Mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTC Offset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSI Bug Setting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crosslink Synchronization Status</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays when crosslink is enabled. Otherwise, they are only synchronized onside. These parameters are FMS parameters and allow the pilot and co-pilot FMSs to be operated independently when crosslink is inhibited.

Active Flight Plan Parameters
Runway Display Parameters

The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot’s PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference.
### Table 5-1: Menu Synchronization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sensor Selections</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transition Altitude</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Decision Height Setting</strong></td>
<td>Used when “Dual Decision Height” is selected in EFIS Limits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Barometric Setting Parameters</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation Source</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Basic Mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Zoom Mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Analog AGL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Analog G-Force Indicator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Full-time Bank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Flight Director</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Mini-map</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Altitude (meters)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Skyway</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Traffic Thumbnail</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Terrain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rate of turn indication</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CPU Type</strong></td>
<td>To support mixed CPU type installations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MFD Map and HSI Page Pointer Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5-1: Menu Synchronization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MFD Map NavData® Symbol Declutter Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD Map Function Declutter Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD Selected Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD OASIS Overlay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD Map Page Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD Show ETA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDU-450 Screen Display status</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3. Normal Top-Level Menu

There are two types of menu functions on the IDU-450, top-level menu functions corresponding to the labeled pushbutton, and soft menu functions indicated by menu tiles, which appear on screen. Soft menu function tiles appear next to the appropriate IDU button or in the lower right corner when use of the encoder is appropriate. Soft menu functions take precedence over IDU button functions.

5.3.1. Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions

**Figure 5-3: PFD Top-Level Menu**

1) **FPL (L1)**: Flight plan menu

- PFD Page:
  - Push – Switch to MFD (N/A to CPU #1)
  - Rotate – Activate Heading Bug Menu
- MFD Page
  - Push – switch to PFD
  - Rotate (MFD Page with adjustable range) – Change range
2) **ACTV (L2)**: Active flight plan menu

3) **INFO (L3)**: Information menu

4) **OBS (L4)**: Omnibearing selector menu

5) **MENU (R1)**: First-level associated with the current display page and times out after 10 seconds if there are no subsequent pilot actions.

6) **BARO (R2)**: Altimeter menu option

7) **NRST (R3)**: Nearest menu option

8) **(R4)**: Direct menu option

9) **#1 Encoder ()**
   a) On a PFD, rotate to activate the heading menu.
   b) On MFD pages with an adjustable display scale (e.g., Map, Strikes, Traffic, Datalink, or Weather Radar), rotate to change display scale (CW = increase, CCW = decrease or as set in EFIS limits).
   c) With the exception of IDU #1, push to swap between the PFD and MFD. IDU #1 is always fixed to the PFD page.

5.3.2. **Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-up Function Descriptions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FPL (L1)</th>
<th>1) When a terrain popup occurs during a TAWS FLTA alert, <strong>RESET</strong> appears. (MFD only)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) When ND page with pan mode enabled, <strong>PN OFF</strong> appears. Press to disable pan mode. (MFD only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) When display is transmit enabled, <strong>LNAV</strong> appears when there is an active flight plan, heading bug sub-mode is active, and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot. Press to deactivate heading bug sub-mode and resume guidance to active flight plan path. (PFD only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4) When display is transmit enabled, <strong>MISS</strong> appears upon transitioning the FAF. Press to activate the missed approach procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5) When the display is transmit enabled, <strong>HDG</strong> appears when LNAV sub-mode is active and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot with HDG mode engaged. Press to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 5-2: Top-Level Menu Automatic Function Descriptions, Tile Legend, and Action in Order of Precedence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deactivate LNAV sub-mode and resume guidance to the heading bug. (PFD only)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **ACTV (L2)** | 1) When showing ND Page with: (a) pan mode enabled; (b) information for the nearest highlighted waypoint is shown; and (c) airport weather information present in the information block.  
2) When the display is transmit enabled, **CONT** appears when in a holding pattern with further active flight plan legs after the holding pattern. Press to re-enable automatic waypoint sequencing to allow normal sequencing to the leg after the holding pattern. (PFD only)  
3) When the display is transmit enabled, **RESUME** appears when the following leg is a manual leg and the FMS is in FROM operation. Press to activate a Direct-To the waypoint after the manual leg. (PFD only)  
4) When the display is transmit enabled, **VNAV** appears when VNAV guidance is valid, the selected altitude sub-mode is active, and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot. Press to deactivate selected altitude sub-mode and resume guidance to VNAV path. (PFD only)  
5) When the display is transmit enabled, **ARM** appears when on the final approach segment (between FAF and MAP). Press to arm missed approach procedure to automatically activate upon sequencing MAP. (PFD only) |
| **INFO (L3)** | When ND page with pan mode enabled, **NORTH** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |
| **OBS (L4)** | When ND page with pan mode enabled, **SOUTH** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |
| **BARO (R2)** | When ND page with pan mode enabled, **INFO** or **HIDE** appears. Press to toggle the display of information for the nearest highlighted waypoint. |
| **NRST (R3)** | When ND page with pan mode enabled, **EAST** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |
| **(R4)** | When ND page with pan mode enabled, **WEST** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |
5.4. First Page (PFD)

The IDU #1 is fixed to the PFD page, and other IDUs may show the PFD page as a backup function. The PFD page first-level options are as follows.

![Figure 5-4: First Page PFD](image)

5.4.1. PFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

1) **XFILL SYNC (FPL) (L1)**: Appears in dual-system installations where the pilot and co-pilot systems are not synchronized, but crosslink is enabled. Press to synchronize the pilot and co-pilot active flight plan parameters to the system where the button press occurred.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crossfill (1)</th>
<th>Flight Plan</th>
<th>Indication (Pilot and Co-pilot)</th>
<th>Action to Synchronize Flight Plans</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabled (Cond.1)</td>
<td>Synchronized</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Pilot</td>
<td>Co-pilot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabled (Cond.2)</td>
<td>Not Synchronized (2)</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>MENU (R1) XFILL SYNC (L1)</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is no expansion of the table for the Co-pilot side. The last row should be expanded to show the Co-pilot side actions.

Co-pilot’s flight plan is sent to pilot side and both sides are synchronized going forward.

**Table 5-3: Crossfill Inhibit/Arm/ Sync Function**
### Table 5-3: Crossfill Inhibit/Arm/Sync Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crossfill (1)</th>
<th>Flight Plan</th>
<th>Indication (Pilot and Co-pilot)</th>
<th>Action to Synchronize Flight Plans</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inhibited</td>
<td>Not Synchronized</td>
<td><strong>XFILL INHBT</strong></td>
<td>Enable crossfill (1) (proceed to Cond. 2)</td>
<td><strong>XFILL INHBT</strong> removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Cond.3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>XFILL ARM</strong> displayed on both sides.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Crossfill is inhibited with the use of a latching (ON) crossfill inhibit switch. Crossfill is enabled by releasing (OFF) this switch. The location and number of crossfill inhibit switches in a cockpit varies by installation. Usually a single crossfill switch can be centrally located in a side-by-side cockpit within reach of both pilots. If a single switch cannot be installed within reach of both pilots (tandem cockpits or very wide cockpits), two switches can be installed to function in parallel (either switch inhibits or enables crossfill on both the pilot and co-pilot sides).

(2) Pilot and co-pilot flight plans can become unsynchronized under the following conditions:

1. Crossfill is inhibited, and pilot and co-pilot flight plans are separately changed before crossfill is re-enabled.
2. Either the pilot or co-pilot side is restarted with an active flight plan on the other side and crossfill enabled.
3. If **XFILL FAIL** condition exists and any changes are made to either side flight plans.

---

2) **SOURCE (L2):** Activates PFD source selection menu.

3) **DESIG (L3):** Creates a user waypoint at current aircraft location. In addition, if pressed with an ND page in pan mode, creates a user waypoint at the panning location. User waypoint at current location is automatically named “OF###” where “###” is the next available over-fly user waypoint number. User waypoint at panning location is automatically named “PN###” where “###” is the next available panning user waypoint number. When **DESIG (L3)** is pressed but there are more than 998 user waypoints, the EFIS displays **USER WPTS FULL** message.

4) **TIME (L4):** Activates timer menu

5) **BUGS (R2):** Activates the PFD bug set menu
6) **ZOOM ON/ZOOM OFF (R3):** Toggles between wide FOV mode and narrow FOV mode.

7) **DCLTR (R4):** Activates the PFD declutter menu

8) **EXPAND CAS (1):** Activates Expand CAS menu only when there are more than 11 active CAS messages.

### 5.5. First-Level (MFD)

IDUs other than #1 may show various MFD pages as described in § 5.21. MFD first-level options are as follows.

#### 5.5.1. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

1) **FAULTS (L1):** Activates the fault display menu

2) **CLEAR STRKS (L2):** Activates the strike clear

3) **DESIG (L3):** Same function as first-level PFD page

4) **TIME (L4):** Same function as first-level PFD page

5) **SET FUEL (R2):** Activates fuel totalizer set menu

6) **PAGE:** On MFD, push ① and ② to perform function at top-level

7) **FORMAT:** DCLTR (R4) or EXCD (R4): On the ND, activates the appropriate page format menu.
Section 5 Menu Functions and Procedures

a) **FORMAT**: On the Map, Traffic, Strikes, Datalink, and Weather Radar pages, activates the appropriate page format menu option.

b) **DCLTR**: On HSI page with VOR or ADF symbology enabled, activates HSI declutter menu option.

8) **EXPAND CAS (1)**: Activates the expand CAS menu option only when there are more than 11 active CAS messages.

5.6. **Lower-Level Menus (Below First-Level)**

The buttons and encoders, which control the top-level and first-level menus, called lower-level menus, are described in the following diagrams with button and encoder numbers as defined in Figure 5-1.

5.7. **Flight Plan (FPL) Menu**

![Figure 5-6: Flight Plan Menu](image)

5.7.1. **Flight Planner Page**

Upon activation of the flight plan menu, the system checks for saved flight plans. If there are no saved flight plans, **CREATE-EDIT..** encoder message
is issued (MFD only). Otherwise, a list of saved flight plans is presented. Upon selection of a saved flight plan, the second waypoint in the flight plan is activated.

Because the flight planner takes over the IDU’s controls, limitations are placed upon access and display of the flight planner. The flight planner is not available when a PFD page is being displayed on the IDU. (MFD in reversion mode).

When the flight planner is accessed, it only appears on the MFD to preserve access to crucial PFD page controls such as altimeter settings.

**Flight Plan Limits:** Flight plans are stored routes (100 maximum) for repeated use without having to re-enter the waypoints each time. A flight plan consists of at least two waypoints (a start and an end) and may have up to 40 waypoints. Flights requiring more than 40 waypoints are divided into two or more flight plans.

5.7.2. Flight Planner Page

Perform following types of functions through the flight planner page.

1) Manage stored flight plans (activating, creating, editing, deleting, and reversing);

2) Manage user waypoints (creating, editing, and deleting); and

3) Perform RAIM predictions.

These operations demand pilot attention and are not a normal operating condition for the IDU. When the flight planner page is in use, it takes over the IDUs controls and disables the menu operations described (other than automatic EICAS page reversions). Normal menu operation and IDU control function are restored upon:

1) Exiting the flight planner page; or

2) Automatic reversion of the IDU to PFD automatic reversion exits the flight planner page and wipes out any changes being performed.

Because the flight planner page takes over the IDUs controls, limitations are placed upon access and display of the flight planner page. When the flight planner page is accessed, it only appears on the MFD.

5.7.3. PFD Page Shown

Upon activation of the flight plan menu, the system checks for existing saved flight plans. If there are no saved flight plans, **NO SAVED FPLS** appears. Otherwise, a selection list of saved flight plans is presented. Upon
selection of a saved flight plan, the second waypoint in the flight plan is activated.

5.7.4. MFD Page Shown on IDU

Upon activation of the flight plan menu, the system checks for existing saved flight plans. If there are no saved flight plans, the flight planner is activated. Otherwise, an option list is presented for the pilot to either select a saved flight plan or enter the flight planner. Selecting the saved flight plan option leads to a list of saved flight plans. Upon selection of a saved flight plan, the second waypoint in the flight plan is activated.

5.7.5. To Create an Overfly User Waypoint (Step-By-Step)

1) When flying over intended waypoint, press **MENU (R1)** then  **DESIG (L3)** on the PFD or MFD. (PFD shown)

2) A user waypoint is created at the present position and automatically named "OF###," where ### is the next available sequence overfly user waypoint number. (MFD shown)

**NOTE:**

A maximum of 998 user waypoints may be created and stored.

If a discrete input has been enabled as “Remote User Waypoint Designate,” it may be used to easily create a user waypoint.

5.7.6. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu Selecting (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **FPL (L1)**. (PFD shown)

2) Rotate 0 to desired flight plan and push to enter.
5.7.7. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu Create-Edit (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press FPL (L1).

2) Rotate 1 to CREATE-EDIT.. and push to enter.

3) Rotate 1 to CREATE FLIGHT PLAN and push 1 to enter.

4) Press ADD (R2) to begin creating first waypoint.

5) Press NRST APT (L2), NRST VOR (L3), NRST NDB (L4), NRST FIX (R2), NRST USR (R3), or AIRWAY (R4) to view applicable list, rotate 1 to desired selection. Push to insert into flight plan as first waypoint.

6) Each flight plan is required to have a minimum of two waypoints. Press ADD (R2) and continue process as stated above to build flight plan.

7) When all desired waypoints have been added (no more than 40), press SAVE (R4) to save flight plan and store as one of the 100 possible stored flight plans.
5.7.8. **Activate Flight Plan (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)**

1. Press **FPL (L1)**. (PFD shown)

2. Press **FPL (L1)**. (MFD shown)

3. Rotate the selector to desired flight plan and push to enter for activation. (PFD shown)

4. Rotate the selector to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter. (MFD shown)

5. Rotate the selector to **ACTIVATE FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter. (MFD shown)

6. Rotate the selector to desired saved flight plan and push to enter. (MFD shown)

7. Press **EXIT (R1)** if no other action is necessary. (PFD shown)

8. Press **EXIT (R1)** if no other action is necessary. (MFD shown)

5.7.9. **Edit Flight Plan (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)**

1. Press **FPL (L1)**.

2. Rotate the selector to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.

3. Rotate the selector to **EDIT FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.
4) Rotate ① to desired flight plan and push to enter.

5) Edit flight plan by adding or deleting waypoints as appropriate.

6) To verify any waypoint in the flight plan, rotate ① to desired waypoint and press INFO (L3).

7) Once the information for selected waypoint is reviewed, press BACK (L1) to regress one step in the flight plan editing process or press EXIT (R1) to exit flight plan editing menu.
8) If changes were made to flight plan as in this case where KMMU was inserted above KLDJ, press \textbf{SAVE (R4)} to save changes and return to EDIT WHICH FPL: menu.

9) If there are no other flight plans to edit press \textbf{EXIT (R1)}, to exit EDIT FLIGHT PLAN menu.

5.7.10. Reverse Flight Plan (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press \textbf{FPL (L1)}.

2) Rotate 1 to \textbf{CREATE-EDIT..} and push to enter.

3) Rotate 1 to \textbf{REVERSE FLIGHT PLAN} and push to enter.

4) Rotate 1 to desired flight plan and push to enter. This action reverses the selected flight plan and alphabetizes the flight plan list in the new order.

5) If no other flight plan to reverse, press \textbf{EXIT (R1)}.

5.7.11. Delete Flight Plan (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press \textbf{FPL (L1)}.

2) Rotate 1 to \textbf{CREATE-EDIT..} and push to enter.
Section 5 Menu Functions and Procedures

3) Rotate ① to **DELETE FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.

4) Rotate ① to flight plan to delete. Push to enter.

5) Push ① to **CONFIRM DELETE FPL**.

6) The next flight plan is highlighted.

7) If no further deletions, press **EXIT (R1)**.

5.7.12. Create User Waypoint (MFD only) (LAT-LON) (Step-By-Step)

User waypoints may be created with three methods:

1) Latitude and Longitude
2) Radial and Distance
3) Overfly (Designate)

To create a user waypoint using latitude and longitude, use the following step-by-step procedure.

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ① to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.

3) Rotate ① to **CREATE USER WPT (LAT-LON)** and push to enter.

4) To name a new user waypoint, rotate ① and push to enter all five character spaces.
5) With new user waypoint name created, push \( \text{①} \) to proceed through all fields as necessary.

Approach bearing preloading depends on mode of flight as follows:

On Ground: Preloaded with current heading

In Flight: Preloaded with “OFF” value.

If desired, specify the approach bearing to user waypoint in degrees 1°-360°. “OFF” disables VFR approaches to the user waypoint.

6) Once all fields are entered, press \( \text{SAVE (R3)} \) to save user waypoint and return to editing screen or press \( \text{(R4)} \) to activate/save ROTOR as the active waypoint and begin navigation guidance.

5.7.13. Create User Waypoint (RAD-DST) (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press \( \text{FPL (L1)} \).

2) Rotate \( \text{①} \) to CREATE-EDIT.. and push to enter.

3) Rotate \( \text{①} \) to CREATE USER WPT (RAD-DST). Push to enter.
4) Identifier is automatically named **RD###** where ### is the next available radial distance waypoint number.

5) Rotate 0 to enter identifier for reference waypoint. If a single search result, menu advances to radial entry box. If multiple search results appear, a list appears. **INFO (R3)** appears to verify each waypoint information.

6) If OF004 is desired, push 0 to enter as the waypoint to be used.

7) Rotate 0 to enter the radial entry and distance as the 060° at 14.7 NM from OF004.

8) Press **SAVE (R3)** to save new waypont or press **(R4)** to activate/save RD004 as the active waypoint and begin navigation guidance.

5.7.14. Edit User Waypoint (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate 0 to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.
3) Rotate ① to **EDIT USER WPT** and push to enter.

4) Rotate ① to waypoint to be edited. Push to enter.

5) Use ① to enter alphanumeric characters; follow prompts to edit information. Push ① to step through all character spaces. To back up, press **BACK (L1)** and continue to the end of all character spaces.

6) OF004 was renamed RUFUS and APP BRG was set to 015°. Press **SAVE (R3)** to save new waypoint name or press ④ (R4) to activate/save RUFUS as active waypoint and begin navigational guidance.

7) Press **BACK (L1)** to regress inside procedure for making changes or press **EXIT (R1)** to exit **EDIT USER WPT** menu.

### 5.7.15. Delete User Waypoint (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ① to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.

3) Rotate ① to **DELETE USER WPT** and push to enter.

4) Rotate ① to desired waypoint to be deleted and push to enter.
5) Push 1 to confirm DEL USER WPT.

6) If no more waypoints to delete, press EXIT (R1).

When changes are made to a user waypoint, and those changes are desired in existing flight plans, which use the waypoint, it must be deleted and replaced in the flight plans with the following steps:

1) Edit the user waypoint as described above
2) Open a flight plan which uses the user waypoint
3) Delete the existing waypoint from the flight plan
4) Save and exit
5) Reload the flight plan if it was in use.

NOTE:

Alterations of user waypoint parameters while in flight are not automatically updated to an active flight plan.

5.7.16. RAIM Prediction (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

When selected, the RAIM prediction screen is only shown if the GPS/SBAS receiver is capable of performing a RAIM prediction (not suitable for enroute predictions). This requires there be no faults along with a current almanac in memory. Check the FAULTS menu to determine if the GPS/SBAS receiver is capable of performing a RAIM prediction.

1) Press FPL (L1).
2) Rotate 1 to CREATE-EDIT.. and push to enter.
3) Rotate 1 to RAIM PREDICTION and push to enter.
SEE NOTE BELOW.

4) If another RAIM prediction is necessary, press **START OVER (R2)** or press **EXIT (R1)**.
NOTE:

The pilot may perform RAIM prediction at a designated waypoint. The screen has various data entry boxes as follows:

1) Designated Waypoint: Prompted to enter an identifier for the designated waypoint. If there is a single result, advanced to UTC time entry box. If there is no result, re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented and, upon selection, is advanced to UTC time entry box. INFO (R2) aids in selection and gives access to information for the highlighted results.

2) UTC Time Entry: Allows entry of the 24-Hour UTC estimated time of arrival at the designated waypoint.

3) UTC Date Entry: Allows entry of the UTC estimated date of arrival at the designated waypoint.

4) PRN Mask Entry: Allows specification the PRN number of satellites expected to be unavailable at the destination.

5) EXIT: Exit of the RAIM prediction screen at any time.

6) Once a designated waypoint and UTC estimated time of arrival are entered, CALC (R2) appears to initiate the RAIM Prediction. Press CALC (R2) to check the UTC estimated time of arrival and ensure it is within the current almanac (i.e., <3.5 days from current date and time). If it is, a Predictive FDE Request message requesting “Detection Availability” with a required HAL of 0.3NM is sent to the GPS/SBAS receiver. In response, the GPS/SBAS receiver replies with a sequence of Predictive FDE Response messages. These messages are parsed and used to fill in the RAIM Prediction result area at the bottom of the screen. The RAIM Prediction result area shows the RAIM Prediction results as “OK” or “XX” for ETA ± in 5-minute increments. Once a prediction is complete, press START OVER (R2) to perform another prediction without exiting the RAIM Prediction screen.
5.8. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu

See Section 7 IFR Procedures for active flight plan description.

![Diagram of Active Flight Plan Main Menu](image)

Figure 5-7: Active Flight Plan Main Menu
5.8.1. **Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options**

The following options allow various modifications to be made to the active flight plan. Press **ACTV (L2)** for the various options to appear at the same level as the nav log.

![Diagram of Active Flight Plan Menu Options]

*Figure 5-8: Active Flight Plan Menu Options*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Options</th>
<th>Action for Active Flight Plan</th>
<th>Search Limits</th>
<th>Limitations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SAVE (L1)</td>
<td>Saves and is part of 100 stored flight plans</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Saves without procedures or phantom waypoints. Named by first and last waypoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACTV OFF (L2)</td>
<td>Deletes</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Prompted to confirm deletion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO.. (L3)</td>
<td>Activates information menu for the highlighted waypoint.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>With no active flight plan, activates information for nearest airport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTK.. (L4)</td>
<td>If active leg is eligible for offset, allows pilot to specify parallel offset distance for non-procedure segments.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>20NM left or right in 1NM increments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSERT../ADD.. (R2)</td>
<td>Insert or add a waypoint or airway.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>ADD: At the end of active flight plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>INSERT: Above the highlighted waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SEARCH: Requires minimum of 2 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>INFO: After adding waypoint, appears to aid in selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AIRWAY: Search for all airways going through highlighted waypoint. Offers option to select exit waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu Options</td>
<td>Action for Active Flight Plan</td>
<td>Search Limits</td>
<td>Limitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRST APT.. (L2)</td>
<td>Search for airports of runway length criteria set in EFIS limits.</td>
<td>NO RESULTS: No eligible airports within search area or selection list includes bearing, distance to each result. INFO: After adding waypoint, appears to aid in selection.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRST FIX.. (R2)</td>
<td>Search for fixes</td>
<td>NO RESULTS: No fixes within search area or selection list includes identifier, bearing and distance to each result. INFO: Provides information and aids in selection.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRST NDB.. (L4)</td>
<td>Search for NDBs</td>
<td>NO RESULTS: No NDBs within search area or selection list including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result. INFO: Provides information and aids in selection.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRST USR.. (R3)</td>
<td>Search for nearest user waypoints</td>
<td>NO RESULTS: No user waypoints within search area or selection list including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 5-4: Active Flight Plan Menu Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Options</th>
<th>Action for Active Flight Plan</th>
<th>Search Limits</th>
<th>Limitations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NRST VOR.. (L3)</td>
<td>Search for nearest VORs</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>INFO</strong>: Provides information and aids in selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NO RESULTS</strong>: No VORs within search area or selection list including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result. (Geodetic results only) <strong>INFO</strong>: Provides information and aids in selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifier Entry Box</td>
<td>Area to enter identifier where encoder message would normally appear.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Entry of at least 2 characters and then <strong>SEARCH (R4)</strong> appears for immediate search to begin. Selection list may appear for addition to add to flight plan. <strong>INFO</strong>: Provides information and aids in selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETE (R3)</td>
<td>If highlighted waypoint is a non-procedure waypoint, deletes the waypoint after confirmation.</td>
<td></td>
<td>If highlighted waypoint is part of a procedure, deletes entire procedure after confirmation. Does not appear if highlighted waypoint is a non-procedure and there are fewer than three non-procedure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5-4: Active Flight Plan Menu Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Options</th>
<th>Action for Active Flight Plan</th>
<th>Search Limits</th>
<th>Limitations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>waypoints in active flight plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Does not appear if highlighted waypoint is suppressed or one position beyond the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIRECT (R4)</td>
<td>Inserts phantom waypoint at the current aircraft position and makes the highlighted waypoint active.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Phantom waypoint is a fly-over defined entry waypoint, and leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated a discontinuity. Assures the skyway is re-centered for guidance. Does not appear when the highlighted waypoint is suppressed or one position beyond the end.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.8.2. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **ACTV (L2)** to view active flight plan.
2) Rotate ① to desired waypoint. Push to enter.

3) Rotate ① to desired option (for example OFLY/AUTO..) and push to enter.

4) Rotate ① to OVERFLY and push to enter.

5) KJRB is now overflown as a “Fly-Over” waypoint.

5.8.3. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)

1) With desired flight plan selected and activated, press ACTV (L2) to view active flight plan.

2) Rotate ① to desired waypoint and push to enter.

3) As one option, rotate ① to VNAV.. and push to enter a VNAV setting.

4) Rotate ① to ALTITUDE: and push to enter. Rotate ① to select 3000’ and push to enter. Rotate ① to OFFSET: and push to enter. Rotate ① CCW to -1NM and push to enter.

5) View active flight plan with waypoint crossing altitude offset of 1 NM before at 3000’.
5.8.4. **Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Options NRST Menu Option (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)**

1) With active flight plan displayed, press **INSERT (R2)** below where new waypoint is to be inserted.

2) Press **NRST APT.. (L2)**, **NRST VOR.. (L3)**, **NRST NDB.. (L4)**, **NRST FIX.. (R2)**, or **NRST USR.. (R3)**, to view applicable list. Rotate \(\downarrow\) to desired selection and push to insert into active flight plan.

3) Press **SAVE (L1)** to save this active flight plan as one of the 100 saved flight plans on all IDUs.

5.9. **Information (INFO) Menu**

If **INFO** is activated from within the **ACTV**, **NRST**, or **Direct** menus, information on the highlighted waypoint is shown. Otherwise, the function checks for an active waypoint. If there is an active waypoint, it becomes the default entry. If there is no active waypoint, then the nearest airport becomes the default entry. If the default entry is accepted, then information for the default entry is shown. If the user rejects the default entry by entering identifier characters, then a search for matching characters is performed.
Only two identifier characters are needed prior to searching, therefore after entering two identifier characters, SEARCH (R4) appears which allows an immediate search to begin if desired. If there is a single result from the search, information for that result is shown. If there is no result from the search, the user is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented to allow the user to select the desired identifier.

Figure 5-9: Information Menu

The amount and type of information presented depends upon the type of waypoint as in Table 5-5.
Table 5-5: INFO Menu Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>NAVAID</th>
<th>Airports</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waypoint Identifier</td>
<td>NAVAID Type</td>
<td>Communication frequencies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waypoint Type</td>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Airport runway data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waypoint elevation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long Name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bearing and distance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latitude and longitude</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For remote tuning, **COM1 (R2)** and/or **COM2 (R3)** is shown to allow transmission of the frequency to remote radios when frequencies greater than or equal to 118 MHz are highlighted in the INFO block.

**NAV1 (R2)** or **NAV2 (R3)** is shown to allow transmission of the frequency to remote radios when frequencies less than 118 MHz are highlighted in the INFO block.
When information presented is for an ILS or localizer waypoint and the VLOC1 or VLOC2 omnibearing selectors are not synchronized with the localizer course, **CRS SYNC (L4)** synchronizes VLOC1 and VLOC2 omnibearing selectors to the localizer course.

### 5.9.1. Information (INFO) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1. Rotate ⬇️ to desired waypoint and press INFO.. (L3) to view active waypoint information.
2) View information press BACK (L1) to regress one step and view the active flight plan again or press EXIT (R1) to exit Active Flight Plan menu.

5.10. Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu

OBS menu allows the pilot to control the omnibearing selector for showing course deviations. Press NAV:FMS. (L2) to specify a manual or automatic OBS setting in which the active OBS is controlled by the active flight plan. With optional VOR equipment enabled, OBS for VLOC1 allows the pilot to specify the active OBS setting for the VLOC1 navigation function. OBS for VLOC2 allows the pilot to specify the active OBS setting for the VLOC2 navigation function. Manual FMS, VLOC1, and VLOC2 OBS settings are settable in increments of 1°. OBS SYNC (R3) synchronizes the manual FMS, VLOC1, or VLOC2 OBS settings (depending upon HSI source) to the inbound course or, if the inbound course cannot be determined, to aircraft heading. When HSI source is FMS, OBS AUTO/OBS MAN (R4) toggles between automatic and manual OBS settings.

Figure 5-13: Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu
NOTE:
If true north mode discrete input is not configured, the OBS menu allows the pilot to toggle between **TRUE NORTH** and **MAG NORT** modes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBS (L4) *Nav Source in use</th>
<th>OBS SYNC (R3)</th>
<th>OBS MANUAL (R4)</th>
<th>Nav Source and CDI Indication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NAV:FMS (L2)</td>
<td>Only available with active waypoint. Synchronizes <strong>FMS</strong> to inbound course.</td>
<td>Only available with active waypoint. Set in increments of 1° with 1.</td>
<td>GPS navigation source <strong>FMS1</strong> or <strong>FMS2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAV: VLOC1 (L3)</td>
<td>Synchronizes <strong>VLOC1</strong> or <strong>VOR1</strong> to the inbound course or if the inbound course cannot be determined, to aircraft heading.</td>
<td>Set in increments of 1° with 1.</td>
<td><strong>LOC1</strong>: <strong>VOR1</strong>: <strong>BC1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAV: VLOC2 (L4)</td>
<td>Synchronizes <strong>VLOC2</strong> or <strong>VOR2</strong> to the inbound course or if the inbound course cannot be determined, to aircraft heading.</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>LOC2</strong>: <strong>VOR2</strong>: <strong>BC2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNP (R2)</td>
<td>When selected, allows for RNP(R4) or OBS: AUTO or OBS MANUAL</td>
<td>Rotate 1 to set desired manual RNP value.</td>
<td>Manual RNP is selectable between 0.15NM and 15NM. 0.01 increments RNP 0.10-0.3 0.1NM increments RNP0.3-2.0 1NM increments RNP 2.0-15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5-6: Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBS (L4) *Nav Source in use</th>
<th>OBS SYNC (R3)</th>
<th>OBS MANUAL (R4)</th>
<th>Nav Source and CDI Indication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TRUE NORTH (L1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OBS Menu allows the pilot to toggle between TRUE NORTH (L1) and MAG NORTH (L1)

The OBS function also permits the pilot to select either FMS, VLOC1, or VLOC2 as the HSI source. The HSI source selects the navigation source used to generate HSI guidance symbology. The OBS function also permits the pilot to select between manual and automatic RNP settings.

5.10.1. Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Before pressing OBS (L4) to make any OBS changes, view the current setting to see FMS1 is selected.

2) Press OBS (L4) then make HSI source selection or change to OBS MANUAL (R4). (There must be an active waypoint selected to use manual OBS.)

3) When the OBS is set to FMS, press OBS MANUAL (R4) and rotate 1 to select new OBS course and push to enter.

4) To select manual RNP press OBS (L4) then RNP (R2).
5) Press **RNP MANUAL (R4)**.

6) Rotate to desired RNP FSD setting and push to enter to view estimate of position uncertainty required in RNP airspace.

---

**5.11. Heading Bug (HDG) Menu**

Rotate to activate the heading bug menu to set the heading bug in increments of 1°, and to synchronize to current heading.

(a) Not available if integrated autopilot installed

---

**Figure 5-14: Heading Bug (HDG) Menu**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Key</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synchronize heading bug to current aircraft heading</td>
<td>R3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn heading bug off</td>
<td>R4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotate – Change heading bug in 1° increments</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Push – Set selected heading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**5.11.1. Heading Bug (HDG) Menu (PFD only) (Step-By-Step)**

1) Rotate to change heading bug in 1° increments.

2) Press **SYNC (R3)** to synchronize heading to current heading.

3) When heading bug is a heading far from current heading, it is often easier to press **SYNC (R3)** and then make small adjustments by rotating to desired heading and pushing to enter or press **EXIT (R1)** to exit menu and save HDG bug setting.
5.12. Nearest (NRST) Menu

Upon selecting a category from the option list, a list of up to 20 items within 240NM matching the category appears. If the list is empty (i.e., no items within 240NM), **NO RESULTS** is displayed. The selection list includes identifier, bearing, and distance to the item. The list of airports contains only airports with runway length greater than or equal to the minimum runway length setting as configured during installation.

The list for airports, VORs, ILSs, NDBs, ARTCCs, and FSSs includes an associated frequency (CTAF for airports). Tiles allow transmission of the
associated frequency to remote NAV or COM radios. If the frequency is
greater than or equal to 118 MHz, tiles read to either COM1 (R2) or COM2
(R3). If the frequency is less than 118 MHz, tiles read NAV1 (R2) or NAV2
(R3).

When the results for the nearest category of airports, VORs, ILSs, NDBs,
fixes, user waypoints, ARTCC, and FSS, are displayed, INSERT (R2)
inserts a waypoint into the active flight plan at the active waypoint position.
This feature facilitates rapid clearance changes from air traffic control. To
prevent corruption of IFR approaches, STARs, and DPs, INSERT (R2)
does not appear if the active waypoint is within a procedure.

When the results for airports, VORs, ILSs, NDBs, fixes, and user waypoints
are displayed, INFO (L3) provides further information on the highlighted
item.

In the case of NRST ILS where the current VLOC1 or VLOC2 OBS does
not match the localizer course, CRS SYNC (L4) synchronizes VLOC1 and
VLOC2 OBS to the localizer course.

Upon selecting airport, VOR, NDB, fix, or user waypoint, a new active flight
plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. Upon
selecting ILS, CONFIRM ACTIVATE ILS is displayed. When the ILS is
confirmed, the following actions occur:

1) A direct flight plan to the airport associated with the ILS is created;
2) A vectors-to-final ILS approach to the ILS is activated;
3) If the heading bug is turned off, it is activated to current heading to act
   as a starting point for receiving vectors (AP enabled systems only);
4) VLOC1 and VLOC2 OBS settings are set to the associated localizer
course;
5) HSI source is switched as follows:
   a) Default sensor for the selecting side controls which source is used.
      Source for the other side does not change.
6) Connected NAV radios are remote tuned to ILS frequency.

5.12.1. Nearest (NRST) Menu PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press NRST (R3) to enter nearest menu.
2) Rotate ① to select APT.. and push to enter.

3) Rotate ① to desired airport and select TO COM1 (R2), COM2 (R3), INFO.. (L3), or push ① to change active waypoint to desired airport.

4) Or, if a nav frequency is selected, press NAV1 (R2) or NAV2 (R3) to send frequency, or push ① to change active waypoint to selected VOR.

5.12.2. Nearest (NRST) Menu ILS (Step-By-Step)

1) Press NRST (R3) to enter nearest menu.

2) Rotate ① to ILS.. and push to enter.

3) If selection is a LOC, no action is taken. Selection must be an ILS.
4) Rotate to desired (eligible) airport and ILS approach. Push to select and enter.

5) Push to confirm and activate ILS.

5.13. Direct Menu

Upon activating the direct menu from the top-level menu, if an active waypoint is found, it is the default entry. If there is no active waypoint, the nearest airport is the default entry.

![Diagram of Direct Menu](image)

**Figure 5-16: Direct Menu**

If the default entry is the active waypoint and accepted by the pilot, a phantom waypoint is inserted at the current aircraft location. The phantom waypoint is a fly-over defined entry waypoint, and the leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated a discontinuity. This assures the skyway is re-centered to provide guidance to the new active waypoint. The rest of the active flight plan remains unchanged.

If the default entry is not the active waypoint and accepted by the pilot, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted.
for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint.

If the pilot rejects the default entry by entering identifier characters, a search for matching identifiers is performed. If there is a single result, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint.

If there is no result, pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented. Upon selection, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. INFO.. (L3) gives information for the highlighted result.

5.13.1. Direct Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press (R4) to enter direct menu.

2) Active or nearest airport waypoint appears. In this case KMKE was the active waypoint.

3) If new waypoint is to be created, push 1 to begin entering new waypoint identifier and rotate 1 to complete all 5 spaces and push to enter new identifier.

4) ABQ_ _ _ was entered bringing up a list of two options from which to select.
5) Rotate 1 to the desired destination waypoint and push to enter. This created a new active flight plan from the present aircraft position.

5.14. Time (TIME) Menu

Upon selecting the time menu, a list appears to choose the count up timer, countdown timer, or flight time display. OFF (R4) turns off any active timer functions.

If the pilot selects the count up timer, the count up timer is activated. If the countdown timer is selected, the pilot is prompted to enter a start time from which the countdown begins. Shortcut buttons to quickly add or decrement by five-minute increments. After entering a start time, start the countdown timer or press STORE (R4) or push 1 to store the start time for later use.

Figure 5-17: Time Menu

If UTC offset is selected, the pilot is prompted to enter a UTC offset between -12:00 and +14:00 in 15-minute increments.

If the pilot selects the flight time display option, the elapsed time since the aircraft transitioned from ground to air mode is displayed for 10 seconds or
until any button is pressed. If the aircraft has not yet transitioned from ground to air mode, upon selecting the flight time display option, elapsed time is displayed as **FLT TM: 00:00:00**.

### 5.14.1. Time (TIME) Menu (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)

1. Press **MENU (R1)**. (PFD shown)
2. Press **MENU (R1)**. (MFD shown)
3. Press **TIME.. (L4)** to enter time menu. (PFD shown)
4. Press **TIME.. (L4)** to enter time menu. (MFD shown)
5. Rotate **COUNT UP, COUNT DN.., UTC OFFSET.., or FLT TIME**. Push to enter. (PFD shown, MFD is similar)
6. If **COUNT UP** is selected, a timer appears on the PFD only, below bank scale.
7. To turn off timer, press **MENU (R1), TIME (L4), then OFF (R4)**. (PFD shown, MFD is similar)
8. If **COUNT DN..** is selected, a timer appears on the PFD only. Below bank scale. (PFD shown, MFD is similar)
9. Press **+5 MIN (R2)** to step up in 5-minute increments (up to 55 minutes) for storage in memory.
10. Press **STORE (R4)** to save in storage for later retrieval of countdown timer. (PFD shown, MFD is similar)
11) To adjust time set in countdown timer storage, press -5 MIN (R3) to step down in 5-minute increments. (PFD shown, MFD is similar)

12) To set offset for local time, rotate .utc to UTC OFFSET... Push to enter. (PFD shown, MFD is similar)

13) Rotate .utc to desired offset value. Push to enter. (PFD shown, MFD is similar)

14) Local time now appears where Zulu time was previously displayed on the MFD only.

15) Press ZULU (R4) to quickly reset local time back to ZULU time.

16) Rotate .utc to FLT TIME and push to enter to view current elapsed time since the aircraft transitioned from ground to air mode.

17) Current elapsed time aircraft transitioned from ground to air mode is displayed for 10 seconds or until any key is pressed. If not yet transitioned to air mode FLT TM: 00:00:00 appears for 10 seconds. (MFD shown, PFD is similar)
### 5.15. PFD Source (SOURCE) Menu

Upon activating the PFD source menu, an option list of sensor sources appears to select/deselect the following items if external switches are not configured through discrete input configuration:

1) ADC1  
2) ADC2  
3) AHRS1  
4) AHRS2  
5) GPS1  
6) GPS2  
7) Radar Altimeter 1  
8) Radar Altimeter 2

**AHRS SLAVE/AHRS DG (R2)** toggles between the two AHRS modes. **AHRS SLEW (R3)** enters a submenu to adjust the DG mode slewing value (if a DG/Slave discrete input is not configured for that AHRS.)

![Figure 5-19: AHRS SLAVE/AHRS SLEW](image-url)
5.15.1. PFD Page First-Level Source Selection (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **MENU** (R1).

2) Press **SOURCE..** (L2).

3) Rotate  to check desired source, push to check, rotate to **DONE**, and push to enter or press **EXIT** (R1).

5.16. PFD Bug (BUGS) Menu

Upon selecting the PFD bugs menu, choose from the following:

1) **MINS..** (R3): Push  to select **DEC HT..** then **200 FT** (R3) or **OFF** (R4), or set DH in increments of 10’ or;

   Rotate  to select **MIN ALT..** press **SYNC** (R3) to synchronize minimums to current altitude or rotate  to desired minimum altitude in increments of 10’;

2) **IAS..** (L2): Set airspeed bug to synchronize with current airspeed, turn off, or set the bug in increments of 1 knot IAS. (No bug setting less than 1.2 \(V_s\) or 60KIAS, whichever is lower. No higher than \(V_{MO}/M_{MO}\));

3) **VNAV CDA..** (R4): Set VNAV climb or descent angle (setting either in increments of 0.1° with corresponding feet per nautical mile, or selecting a shortcut for 3° (R4));

4) **V-SPDS..** (L3): Set V-speeds options for either takeoff V-speed (\(V_1\), \(V_R\), \(V_2\), and \(V_{ENR}\)) or approach V-speeds (\(V_{REF}\) and \(V_{APP}\)) or;

5) **VSI..** (L4): Set vertical speed by synchronizing the VSI bug to the current VSI, turning off the VSI bug, or setting the VSI bug in increments of 100 feet per minute.

**NOTE:**

With the exception of when integrated with a Genesys/s-TEC DFCS, the airspeed bug and VSI bug are mutually exclusive and therefore selecting one turns off the other.
Section 5 Menu Functions and Procedures

**Figure 5-20: PFD Bug (BUGS) Menu**

- **BUGS..**
  - **R3**
    - **SYNC**
      - Synchronize target altitude to current altitude
    - **OFF**
      - Turn target altitude off
    - **Enter altitude**
      - Rotate – Change altitude 100 ft increments
      - Push – Set selected altitude

- **R3**
  - **MIN ALT..**
    - **1**
      - **SYNC**
        - Synchronize minimum altitude to current altitude
      - **OFF**
        - Turn minimum altitude off
      - **Enter altitude**
        - Rotate – Change altitude in 0.1° increments
        - Push – Set selected altitude

- **R2**
  - **ALT SEL..**
    - **Enter altitude**
      - Rotate – Change altitude 100 ft increments
      - Push – Set selected altitude

- **R3**
  - **MINS..**
    - **Enter altitude**
      - Rotate – Change altitude 100 ft increments
      - Push – Set selected altitude

- **R4**
  - **200 FT**
    - **Enter height**
      - Rotate – Change height in 10 ft increments
      - Push – Set selected height
  - **OFF**
    - **Enter height**
      - Rotate – Change height off
      - Push – Set selected height

- **R3**
  - **DEC HT..**
    - **MIN ALT..**
      - **Enter angle**
        - Rotate – Change descent angle in 0.1° increments
        - Push – Set selected angle
      - **3°**
        - Set 3° descent angle

- **R4**
  - **CLMB ANG..**
    - **Enter angle**
      - Rotate – Change climb angle in 0.1° increments
      - Push – Set selected angle
      - **3°**
        - Set 3° climb angle
  - **SYNC**
    - Synchronize minimum altitude to current altitude
  - **OFF**
    - Turn minimum altitude off
  - **Enter altitude**
    - Rotate – Change altitude 10 ft increments
    - Push – Set selected altitude

**MENU**
5.16.1. PFD Bug (BUGS) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press MENU (R1) and then BUGS.. (R2) to enter the bugs menu.
2) Press IAS.. (L2), V-SPDS.. (L3), VSI.. (L4), MINS.. (R3), or VNAV.. CDA (R4).

3) If IAS was pressed, press SYNC (R3) to accept or OFF (R4) to turn off IAS bug. (When integrated with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS in IAS mode, it is not possible to turn off the airspeed bug.)

4) Press VSI (L4) for adjustment of VSI BUG. Rotate 1 to set in increments of 100 fpm and push to select. (When integrated with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS in VS mode, it is not possible to turn off the VSI bug.)

5) For a different IAS bug, rotate 1 to select airspeed. Push to enter new value. Value is displayed in PFI area above airspeed tape.

6) If MINS (R3) is pressed, rotate 1 to select DEC HT.. or MIN ALT.. and push to enter.

7) If DEC HT.. is pushed, rotate 1 to create new decision height and push to enter.

8) New DH displays on the PFI area below the FPM.

9) If VNAV CDA (R4) is pressed, rotate 1 to select DCND.. or CLIMB.. Push to enter.
10) If DCND.. is pressed, rotate ① to create new descent angle.

11) For example, select -4.5° (-499 FPNM). Push ① or press EXIT (R1) to enter.

12) For V-speeds, press V-SPDS.. (L3). Rotate ① to TAKEOFF.. and push to enter.

13) Rotate ① to desired $V_1$ speed and push to enter.

14) Rotate ① to desired $V_R$ speed and push to enter.

15) Rotate ① to desired $V_2$ speed and push to enter.

16) Rotate ① to desired $V_{ENR}$ speed and push to enter. Normally, takeoff speeds are set in sequence on the ground prior to takeoff.

17) To set approach bugs, press V-SPDS.. (L3) and rotate ① to APPROACH.. and push to enter.

18) Rotate ① to desired $V_{REF}$ speed and push to enter.

19) Rotate ① to desired $V_{APP}$ speed and push to enter. Press OFF (R4) to turn off $V_{REF}$ speed bug.

NOTE:

When integrated with the Genesys/S-TEC DFCS, it is only possible to toggle between single cue and dual cue flight director options. This is due to the flight directors when integrated with the Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is controlled through the mode control panel.
5.17. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

Upon activation of the PFD declutter menu, an option list of declutter items are shown.

Table 5-7: PFD Declutter Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANLG AGL</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANLG G</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINI MAP</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINI TRFC</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BANK SCL</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Always in view while in basic mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BASIC</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SKYWAY</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVS TAWS</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>SVS TAWS is labeled “SVS ADVNCD” when TAWS is not enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVS BASIC</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAFFIC</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TURN IND</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5-7: PFD Declutter Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SVN</td>
<td>Basic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FD1</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FD2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>METERS</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(OASIS)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.17.1. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press MENU (R1) then DCLTR (R4) to enter the declutter menu.

2) Rotate 1 to ANLG AGL, ANLG G, BANK SCL, BASIC, MINI MAP, MINI TRFC, SKYWAY, SVS TAWS, SVS BASIC, TRAFFIC, TURN IND, FD1, FD2, or METERS. Push to enter.

3) If BANK SCL is unchecked, press EXIT (R1) or rotate 1 to DONE and push to enter.

4) Bank scale is removed while in level flight.
5) Press MENU (R1) and DCLTR (R4). Rotate  to SVS TAWS and push to deselect.

6) Press MENU (R1) and DCLTR (R4). Rotate  to SVS BASIC and push to select for display.

7) If a G-force telltale that can be cleared is shown, RESET G (L2) appears for resetting.

5.18. Altimeter Menu

Press BARO (R2) to activate the altimeter menu. Rotate  to increment (CW) or decrement (CCW) the barometric setting and push to accept the new barometric setting. In addition, the following options are available in the altimeter menu:

1) QNH/QFE (L2): Toggles between QNH and QFE altimeter operation. When in QNH mode, QNE operation is automatically selected when above the transition altitude with a standard altimeter setting. The following definitions:
   a) QFE: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (e.g., airport or runway threshold).
   b) QNE: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.
   c) QNH: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

2) TRANS ALT (L3): Changes transition altitude in units of 500 feet. Transition altitude is used to generate barometric setting warnings and to determine QNE/QNH operation. If current transition altitude is not 18,000 feet, 18000’ (R4) sets the transition altitude as 18,000 feet.

3) MBAR/IN HG (L4): Sets barometric setting units (inHg or mbar).
4) **STD (R4):** Sets barometric setting to standard (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar).

![Diagram of Altimeter Menu]

**Figure 5-23: Altimeter Menu**

### 5.18.1. PFD Altimeter Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **BARO (R2)** to enter altimeter menu.

2) Rotate 1 to set proper QNH and push to enter.

3) Crosscheck proper QNH under altitude indication.

4) Press **BARO (R2)** again and **STD (R4)** to reset QNH to 1020. Push 1 to enter.
5.19. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu

Upon selecting the MFD faults menu, status of the following system parameters are displayed.

### Figure 5-24: MFD Fault Display Menu

1. GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to absence of power (GPS PWR).
2. GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to probable equipment failure (GPS EQPMNT).
3. GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to inadequate satellites to compute a position solution (GPS SATTLT).
4. GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to a position failure that cannot be excluded within the time to alert (GPS FDE).
5. GPS/SBAS loss of integrity and loss of navigation due to loss of integrity (GPS LOI).
6) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS horizontal protection level (GPS HPL) in nautical miles. This value may be used as the estimate of position uncertainty required in RNP airspace.

7) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS vertical protection level (GPS VPL) in meters.

8) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS horizontal figure of merit (GPS HFOM) in nautical miles. This value is an indication of the 95% confidence horizontal position accuracy.

9) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS vertical figure of merit (GPS VFOM) in meters. This value is an indication of the 95% confidence vertical position accuracy. (For Example, the MSL altitude used in the TAWS algorithms use geodetic height converted to MSL with the current EGM (Earth Gravity Model) database. For this to be considered valid for use as MSL altitude, the VFOM must be less than or equal to 106 feet.) Additionally, the tertiary source for vertical speed is GPS/SBAS vertical speed providing the VFOM is less than or equal to 106 feet. When AGL altitude is based on BARO, it is because the RADALT was in a failed state (if so equipped) and the VFOM exceeded 106 feet rendering the vertical component of GPS altitude invalid in the MSL altitude calculation.

10) An indication of whether the GPS/SBAS receiver has a valid almanac in memory (GPS ALMANAC).

11) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to no valid SBAS message received for 4 seconds or more (SBAS MSG).

12) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to insufficient number of SBAS HEALTHY satellites (SBAS HLTH).
   a) An Attitude or Range Fault Condition exists.
   b) A Control Fault Condition exists.
   c) A T/R Fault Condition exists.

13) If the WX-500 option is enabled, loss of communications with the WX-500 (WX-500).

14) If the traffic option is enabled, loss of communications with the traffic sensor (TRFC).

15) If the analog interface option is enabled, loss of communications with the analog interface (AIU).

16) If ADS-B datalink is enabled, an indication of ADS-B position validity (ADSB POSN), an indication of whether maintenance of the ADS-B
receiver is required (ADSB MAINT) and an indication of whether the conflict situational awareness algorithm is working (ADSB CSA).

17) If weather radar is enabled, an indication of weather radar power/communication status (“WXR PWR X” or “WXR PWR OK”). Weather radar power/communication status failed (WXR PWR X) reflects that any one of the following conditions are true:

a) Loss of weather radar communication (ARINC 453 label 055 or 171 not available or not accepted for more than 2 seconds).

b) Weather radar mode is OFF.

18) If weather radar is enabled, an indication of weather radar fault status (“WXR FAULT -,” “WXR FAULT X,” or “WXR FAULT OK”). When weather radar power/communication status is failed, weather radar fault status indicates determination of weather radar faults is not possible (WXR FAULT –). Weather radar fault status failed (WXR FAULT X) reflects that any one of the following conditions are true:

a) A cooling fault condition exists

b) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6 or Collins 800/840, a display or control bus fault condition exists.

c) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6, Collins 800/840 or Honeywell PRIMUS, a calibration or air data fault condition exists.

d) An attitude or range fault condition exists.

e) A control fault condition exists.

f) A T/R Fault Condition exists.

19) If weather radar is enabled, the weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 and an external radar control panel is installed, an indication of radar control panel status (“WXR RCP X” or “WXR RCP OK”). External radar control panel status failed (WXR RCP X) indicates either loss of communication or a failure status.

5.19.1. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press MENU (R1) and then within 10 seconds FAULTS (L1) to view the faults menu.
2) View status of GPS and equipment parameters.

5.20. MFD Fuel Totalizer Quantity Setting (SET FUEL) Menu

Figure 5-25: MFD SET FUEL

Figure 5-26: MFD Fuel Totalizer Quantity Menu

SET FUEL menu allows the pilot to:

1) Set the fuel totalizer quantity in increments of volume units.

   If either a fuel totalizer or fuel level sensing (with no unmonitored fuel) is configured in the aircraft limits, set emergency and minimum fuel bugs in increments of volume units.
2) Press **MAINS** (R3) to set the quantity to the “fuel tabs” fuel capacity. Press **FULL** (R4) to set the quantity to the total aircraft fuel capacity. Units of measure and fuel flow are shown in the quantity window when available. If fuel flow is available, current fuel flow is shown on the Nav Log top area.

3) If an aircraft fuel caution or aircraft fuel warning is configured in the limits, set **EMG FUEL.. (L3)** and **MIN FUEL.. (L4)** fuel bugs in increments of volume units.

![Figure 5-27: Fuel Totalizer Quantity Setting (SET FUEL) Menu](image)

**Figure 5-27: Fuel Totalizer Quantity Setting (SET FUEL) Menu**

5.21. **MFD Page (PAGE) Menu**

![Figure 5-28: MFD Page (PAGE)](image)

- **PAGE..**
  - **ND page**
  - **HSI page**
  - **FMS page**
  - **Strikes page**
  - **Traffic page**
  - **Datalink page**
  - **WX-RDR page**

- **MAP**
- **HSI**
- **NAV LOG**
- **STRIKES (a)**
- **TRAFFIC (b)**
- **DATALINK (c)**
- **WX-RDR (d)**

(a) Shown if optional WX-500 installed.
(b) Shown if optional traffic sensor installed.
(c) Shown if optional ADS-B installed.
(d) Shown if optional weather radar installed.
PAGE menu allows the pilot to select which MFD page to display:

1) **MAP**: ND page
2) **HSI**: HSI page
3) **NAV LOG**: FMS page
4) **STRIKES**: WX-500 Lightning Strikes page (See Strikes Appendix)
5) **TRAFFIC**: Traffic page (See Traffic Appendix)
6) **DATALINK**: Datalink page (See Datalink Appendix)
7) **WX-RDR**: Weather Radar page (See Weather Radar Appendix)

### 5.21.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **MENU (R1)** to open MFD menus.

2) Press **PAGE.. (R3)** rotate 1 to **MAP, HSI, NAV LOG, STRIKES, TRAFFIC, DATALINK, or WX-RDR**. Push to enter.

### 5.21.2. MFD NAV LOG Page (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **PAGE.. (R3)** rotate 1 to **NAV LOG** and push to enter.
2) Example of NAV LOG shown with full page. Rotate CW to view additional NAV log legs.

3) View of remainder of NAV LOG with (KPHX) suppressed waypoint at the end.

5.21.3. MFD HSI Page (Step-By-Step)

Press MENU (R1), PAGE (R3), rotate to HSI, and push to enter.
5.22. MFD HSI Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

Upon selecting the HSI declutter menu in the HSI page, a list appears to individually display:

1) ADF1 pointer (if ADF symbology if enabled);
2) ADF2 pointer (if dual ADF symbology if enabled);
3) VOR1 pointer (if VOR symbology if enabled); and
4) VOR2 pointer (if dual VOR symbology if enabled).

5.22.1. MFD HSI Declutter (DCLTR) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press MENU (R1) then DCLTR.. (R4) to enter Declutter menu.
2) It is not possible to declutter the FMS HSI needle.
3) Rotate ➊ to PTR ADF1, PTR ADF2, NAV1, or PTR NAV2 and push to place check mark, then press EXIT (R1) or rotate to DONE and push to enter.
### 5.23. MFD ND Page Format Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu when in the ND page, a list appears with the following options:

- **Auto**
  - LRG APT
  - IFR APT
  - VFR APT
  - VORS
  - NDBS
  - FIXES
  - TRM FIXES
  - USER WPTS
  - Done

- **Manual**
  - Show/Hide highlighted point information
  - Pan Off
  - Pan East
  - Pan North
  - Pan West
  - Pan South

- **Airspace**
  - Borders
  - Datalink NEXRAD, graphical METARS.

- **Glide**
  - Estimated time of arrival

- **HSI**
  - Glide range
  - High-altitude airways
  - HSI Overlay
  - Low-altitude airways
  - Current latitude and longitude

- **Traffic**
  - Strikes
  - Terrain
  - Traffic
  - Accept changes

- **DONE**

---

Figure 5-30: MFD ND Page Format Menu
1) **CENTER/ARC**: Toggles between centered and arced ND display format (if not panning).

2) **HDG UP/N UP**: Toggles between heading up and north-up ND display format (if not panning).

3) **PAN ON/PAN OFF**: Toggles ND page pan mode.

4) **SYMB DCLTR**: Activates a list to choose automatic or manual navigation symbol declutter. If the pilot chooses manual navigation symbol declutter, a list appears to individually select:

   a) large airports;
   b) IFR airports;
   c) VFR airports;
   d) VORs;
   e) NDBs;
   f) fixes;
   g) terminal fixes; and
   h) user waypoints

   ![Figure 5-31: MFD Symbol Declutter](image)

   Turning on VFR airports also turns on large and IFR airports. Turning on IFR airports also turns on large airports. Turning off large airports also turns off IFR and VFR airports. Turning off IFR airports turns off VFR airports.

5) **FNCT DCLTR**: Activates a list to individually toggle display of:

   a) airspace;              h) ADF #1 pointer;
   b) borders;               i) ADF #2 pointer;
   c) ETA;                   j) VOR1 pointer;
   d) glide range;           k) VOR2 pointer;
   e) high-altitude airways; l) strikes;
   f) low-altitude airways;  m) terrain; or
   g) current latitude and   n) traffic.
   longitude display
5.23.1. MFD Page Format (Step-By-Step)

5.23.1.1. Changing MFD ND Orientation

1) Press **MENU** (R1).

2) Press **FORMAT..** (R4).

3) If in arc mode, rotate 1 to **CENTER** and push to enter to center display.

4) If in center mode, rotate 1 to **ARC** and push to enter to change to arc mode.

5) If in HDG UP mode, rotate 1 to **N UP** and push to enter to change display to north-up orientation.

6) To enter pan mode, press **MENU** (R1) and then **FORMAT..** (R4). Rotate 1 to **PAN ON** and push to enter.

7) To turn off pan mode, either press **PN OFF** (L1) or **MENU** (R1) and then **FORMAT..** (R4). Rotate 1 to **PAN OFF** and press to enter.
5.23.1.2. Adding LAT/LON to MFD ND Page

1) Press **MENU** (R1).

2) Press **FORMAT..** (R4).

3) Rotate ① to **FNCT DCLTR..** Push to enter.

4) Rotate ① to **LAT/LON** and push then either press **EXIT (R1)** or rotate ① to **DONE** and push to enter.

Latitude/longitude display is removed when a traffic alert is present.

1) To turn off terrain, press **MENU (R1) and FORMAT (R4)**. Rotate ① to **TERRAIN** and push to uncheck.

2) To exit menu, press **EXIT (R1)** or rotate ① to **DONE** and push to enter. When the IDU is powered down and reinitialized, terrain remains off until restored.
Begin by reading the EFIS Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM) or Aircraft Flight Manual Supplement (AFMS).

Power up the EFIS. The system performs a built-in test routine. If all tests pass, the system displays a screen identifying the database coverage. Press any button or push/rotate encoder to acknowledge. The system begins a two-minute countdown while awaiting sensor initialization. For the purpose of flight planning, etc., press any button or push/rotate encoder to override this countdown.
The encoders at the bottom of the IDU bezel are numbered 1 and 2 from the right. Rotate 1 to adjust the heading bug setting.

Press BARO (R2).

Rotate 1 to proper setting and push to enter value or press EXIT (R1).

Press (R4) to enter a destination active waypoint.

Rotate 1 to the desired alpha or numerical character, push to confirm, and advance to the next position. Push to enter once, until all five spaces have been either entered or viewed.

Magenta star bearing to the waypoint and green diamond ground track symbols are displayed on the directional scale.

A direct route to the active waypoint is activated and appears as magenta tethered balloon on the PFI area.
Active waypoint information, including waypoint type and identifier; elevation or crossing altitude; and bearing and distance are displayed below the analog AGL indicator or mini map as configured.

Indicated airspeed is on the left, altitude is on the right, and heading is across the top. FMS/VLOC CDI is located on the bottom. VSI appears on the right side of the altitude tape. Time-critical caution is displayed in the primary field of view.

MFD

Analog navigation symbology on MFD HIS.

Manual Leg

A manual leg has been created within a procedure and waypoint sequencing is suspended.

To resume normal waypoint sequencing press RESUME (L2).
Now RESUME (L2) is no longer present and the system is no longer in SUSPEND mode.

Flight Plans (Stored Routes)

Activate Flight Plan on PFD or MFD

1) Press FPL (L1).
2) Rotate 1 to SELECT.. and push to enter.
3) Rotate 1 to select desired flight plan and push to activate.

Create Flight Plan on MFD

1) Press FPL (L1).
2) Rotate 1 to CREATE-EDIT.. and push to enter.
3) Select CREATE FLIGHT PLAN and push to enter.
4) Press ADD (R2) to create first waypoint using 1 to enter waypoints from beginning to end; or press NRST APT (L2), NRST VOR (L3), NRST NDB (L4), NRST FIX (R2), NRST USR (R3) or AIRWAY (R4) to select next waypoint, and push to enter.
5) Press SAVE (R4) to save flight plan.
6) Press EXIT (R1) to exit flight planner.

Waypoints

Create a User Waypoint on PFD or MFD

1) Press MENU (R1).
2) Press DESIG (L3).
Edit a User Waypoint MFD

1) Press FPL (L1).

2) Rotate 1 to CREATE-EDIT.. and push to enter.

3) Rotate 1 to EDIT USER WPT and push to enter.

4) Rotate 1 to highlight waypoint to edit and push to enter.

5) Edit waypoint. Press SAVE (R4) or press EXIT (R1) to exit flight planner.

Add Waypoint to an Active Route on PFD or MFD

1) Press ACTV (L2).

2) Rotate 1 to location on waypoint list where added waypoint is to be inserted above.

3) Press INSERT (R2).

4) Press NRST APT (L2), NRST VOR (L3), NRST NDB (L4), NRST FIX (R2), or NRST USR (R3), or AIRWAY (R4) and then
   a) Rotate 1 to make selection and push to enter, or
   b) Use 1 to enter waypoint identifier and push to enter.

5) Press SAVE (L1) to save new active flight plan as another stored flight plan.

Delete Waypoint from an Active Route on PFD or MFD

1) Press ACTV (L2).

2) Rotate 1 to waypoint to delete and press DELETE (R3) to prompt CONFIRM DEL WPT. If part of a published procedure, press DELETE (R3) to prompt CONFIRM DEL PROC.

3) Push 1 to CONFIRM DEL WPT or CONFIRM DEL.

Omnibearing Selector Function

Automatic OBS (FMS OBS Only) on PFD or MFD

1) Press OBS (L4).

2) Push OBS:AUTO to enter.
Manual OBS on PFD or MFD

1) Press OBS (L4).

2) To select desired HSI source, press NAV VLOC1 (L3) or NAV VLOC2 (L4).

3) If HSI source is NAV FMS, press OBS MANUAL (R4) then rotate \( \Theta \) to desired OBS value and push to enter, or press OBS SYNC (R3) and push \( \Theta \) to enter.

4) If HSI source is NAV VLOC1 or NAV VLOC2, rotate \( \Theta \) to desired course (OBS:XXX° (XXX°)) and push to enter.

Approaches/Track

Select a VFR Approach on PFD or MFD

(The active flight plan must contain an eligible airport for runway selection and VFR approach creation.)

1) Press ACTV (L2).

2) Rotate \( \Theta \) to desired airport or user waypoint and push to enter.

3) Rotate \( \Theta \) to VFR APPR.. and push to enter.

4) Rotate \( \Theta \) to desired runway and push to enter.

Change Runway during VFR Approach on PFD or MFD

1) Press ACTV (L2).

2) Rotate \( \Theta \) to highlight the following and push to enter:
   a) Destination airport
   b) VFR APPR..
   c) Desired runway

(This deletes the previous VFR approach and creates a new VFR approach to the selected runway.)

Select an IFR Approach on PFD or MFD

1) Press ACTV (L2).

2) Rotate \( \Theta \) to desired eligible airport and push to enter.

3) Rotate \( \Theta \) to IFR APPR.. and push to enter.
4) Rotate 1 to desired approach and push to enter.
5) Rotate 1 to desired transition and push to enter.
6) Rotate 1 to desired runway and push to enter.

**Change Runway on IFR Approach on PFD or MFD**

1) Press ACTV (L2).
2) Rotate 1 to destination airport and push to enter.
3) Select APPR: Rotate 1 to desired approach. Push to enter.
4) Select TRANS: Rotate 1 to desired transition. Push to enter.
5) Select RW: Rotate 1 to desired runway. Push to enter.

(This deletes the previous IFR approach and creates a new IFR approach to the selected runway.)

**XFILL SYNC Operation**

**XFILL Sync Operation on PFD**

(Crossfill is the normal default mode of operation.)

1) During crossfill inhibited operation, XFILL INHBT appears on the PFD in the lower left corner.
2) After the XFILL switch is pressed again, the pilot and co-pilot sides are not synchronized; XFILL ARM appears in lower left corner of both PFDs.
3) When the pilot and co-pilot sides are not synchronized, press MENU (R1) then XFILL SYNC (L1) to synchronize the pilot and co-pilot active flight plan parameters from the side where the button press occurred.
Section 7  IFR Procedures

7.1.  Active Flight Plan

Upon activation of the active flight plan menu, the application checks for an active waypoint. If there is no active waypoint, **NO ACTIVE WPT** is issued. Otherwise, a nav log of waypoints in the active flight plan is presented with the following:

1) Waypoint identifier and characterization (default, overfly [OF], or no radius [0R])

2) Symbol designating waypoint type and what type of procedure (if any) the waypoint is associated

3) VNAV altitudes and offsets associated with each waypoint

4) Information related to flight plan path between each waypoint

In the case of an approach with a final approach segment data block, the VNAV offset readout associated with the missed approach point is “GPI” to designate distance to the glidepath intercept point. When courses are presented as part of the path information, they are displayed referenced to magnetic north with the degree (°) symbol.

VNAV altitudes and offsets from the navigation database or have been manually entered are white, and those computed automatically are gray. The active waypoint is designated by an asterisk and is magenta but turns amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

A suppressed waypoint (designated by brackets) is an airport associated with an IFR or VFR approach procedure. After an approach procedure is activated, the associated airport is no longer part of the active flight plan for guidance purposes. However, the associated airport is still shown in the nav log for it to be highlighted for information or to activate other procedures to the airport. Since only one approach may be active at any given time, only one waypoint may be suppressed at any given time.

A skipped waypoint is a waypoint associated with a dynamic termination leg with a zero length. These are either:

1) An altitude termination leg when current aircraft altitude is above the termination altitude; or

2) System-created (i.e., not NavData® specified) intercept to a “Course to a Fix” leg where there is insufficient distance to calculate an intercept heading.
To add a waypoint to the end of the active flight plan, scroll through each waypoint of the flight plan to one position past the end. If not, the application makes the selected waypoint active. Otherwise, a list is presented.

Upon selection of a waypoint from the selection list, the EFIS checks whether the selected waypoint meets the criteria for waypoint activation, manual VNAV parameter entry, custom holding pattern entry, manual overfly characterization, VFR approach entry, IFR approach entry, STAR entry, or DP entry. If it does, a list is presented as follows:

1) **WAYPOINT**: If the selected waypoint is neither suppressed, skipped, nor a manual termination, make the selected waypoint the active waypoint.

2) **VNAV**: If the selected waypoint is neither suppressed, skipped, a manual termination, part of an IFR approach, nor part of a VFR approach, enter a manual VNAV altitude and offset for the selected waypoint. This level includes tiles to synchronize the VNAV altitude to current altitude and to remove the manual VNAV altitude and offset entry. VNAV altitudes are settable in increments of 100 feet, and offsets are settable in increments of 1NM.

3) **HOLD**: If the selected waypoint is neither suppressed, skipped, a manual termination, part of an IFR approach after the FAF/FAWP, part of a VFR approach, a holding waypoint, nor a DP anchor waypoint, enter a manual holding pattern at the selected waypoint.
   
   a) Define the inbound course to the holding fix settable in increments of 1° relative to magnetic or True North and leg length is settable in increments of 1 NM (1-25NM) or in tenths of a minute. (0.5-5.0MIN);
   
   b) a turn direction (left or right);

   c) a turn distance, settable in either distance (nautical miles) or time (minutes). When a time setting is used, the speed used to calculate distance is the holding speed.

4) **OFLY/AUTO**: If the selected waypoint is neither suppressed, skipped nor a manual termination, change the waypoint’s overfly characterization. The choices are:
   
   a) **AUTO**: Reset automatic overfly characterization by FMS.

   b) **OVERFLY**: Force the overfly characterization to be an overfly adjust-exit waypoint and force the inbound course to go directly to the waypoint regardless of the amount of course change required.
c) **NO RADIUS**: Force the turn radius at the waypoint to be zero. This forces the inbound course and outbound course to go directly to and from the waypoint regardless of the amount of course change required.

**NOTE:**

It is not possible to track a “NO RADIUS” path perfectly, but the FMS path guidance quickly recaptures the outbound course after resuming automatic waypoint sequencing. Designating a waypoint as a “NO RADIUS” waypoint affects the turn radius used to calculate procedure turn and holding pattern leg paths.

5) **VFR APP**: If selected waypoint is a user waypoint with an approach bearing, a VFR approach to the user waypoint based upon the approach bearing is created, and the user waypoint is suppressed. If the selected waypoint is a VFR airport or an IFR airport with surveyed runways, the pilot is presented with a list of runways. After selecting a runway, a VFR approach to the runway is created, and the airport waypoint is suppressed. Activating a VFR approach deletes any pre-existing IFR or VFR approaches. If a heading bug is not active; activating a VFR approach activates the heading bug on current aircraft heading and is used to define the course intercept angle.

6) **IFR APP**: If selected waypoint is an airport with an IFR approach, the pilot is presented with a list of available approaches (including, if applicable, the five-digit channel number, followed by a list of available transitions, if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways at the airport). After selection, the appropriate IFR approach is created, and the airport waypoint is suppressed. Activating an IFR approach deletes any pre-existing IFR or VFR approaches. If there is a pre-existing STAR to the airport, the IFR approach waypoints are inserted after the STAR waypoints. If a heading bug is not active and the activated transition is “Vectors to Final,” activating an IFR approach activates the heading bug on current aircraft heading for purposes of defining the course intercept angle.

7) **STAR**: If selected waypoint is an airport with a STAR, the pilot is presented with a list of available STARs, followed by a list of available transitions (if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways at the airport). After selection, the appropriate STAR is created. Activating a STAR automatically deletes any pre-existing STAR. If there is a pre-existing approach (IFR or VFR) to the airport, STAR waypoints are inserted prior to the approach waypoints.
8) **DP**: If selected waypoint is an airport with a DP, the pilot is presented with a list of DPs, followed by a list of available transitions (if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways and more than one runway authorized for the DP). After selection, the appropriate DP is created, and upon activation, deletes any pre-existing DPs.

### 7.2. IFR Procedures

Pilots operating in a radar environment are expected to associate departure headings or an RNAV departure advisory with vectors or the flight path to the planned route or flight. The EFIS employs two types of departure procedures, obstacle departure procedures (ODPs), which are printed either textually or graphically, and standard instrument departure procedures (SIDs), which are always printed graphically. All DPs, either textual or graphic may be designed using either conventional or RNAV criteria. RNAV procedures have RNAV printed in the title.

ODPs are not found in the navigation database, and therefore the climb angle found in the PFD BUGS menu should be set to comply with the steeper than normal climb gradient during the departure until established on the enroute structure. ODPs are recommended for obstruction clearance and may be flown without ATC clearance, unless an alternate departure procedure (SID or radar vector) has been specifically assigned by ATC.

Approach minima are never coded in NavData®. On some approaches, the altitude coded at the MAP for a non-precision approach coincides with an MDA (normally where the final approach course does not align with the runway), but more often the coded altitude is some height above the threshold.

### 7.3. Overview of Procedures and Instrument Approaches

This Genesys Aerosystems EFIS provides 3-D GPS precision and non-precision instrument approach guidance using a system integral TSO C146c BETA 3 GPS receiver with GPS and augmented GPS with SBAS (Satellite Based Augmentation System) commonly referred to as WAAS (Wide Area Augmentation System). In order to support full integration of RNAV procedures into the National Airspace System (NAS), a charting format for instrument approach procedures (IAPs) is designed to avoid confusion and duplication of instrument approach charts.

Use of this GPS receiver provides a level of certified service supporting RNAV (GPS) approaches to LNAV, LP, LNAV/VNAV, and LPV lines of minima within system coverage. Some locations close to the edge of the coverage may have lower availability of vertical guidance.
Approach with vertical guidance (APV) procedures are defined in ICAO Annex 6 and include approaches such as the LNAV/VNAV procedures presently being flown with barometric vertical navigation (BARO-VNAV). These approaches provide vertical guidance but do not meet the more stringent standards of a precision approach. With the WAAS BETA 3 GPS receiver and updatable navigation database in this system, these approaches may be flown using an electronic glidepath, which eliminates errors introduced by using barometric altimetry.

In addition to LNAV/VNAV procedures, APV takes advantage of the high accuracy guidance and increased integrity provided by GBS/SBAS. This SBAS (TEROS/ICAO) generated angular guidance allows use of the same TERPS approach criteria for ILS approaches. The resulting approach procedure minima, localizer performance with vertical guidance (LPV), have a decision altitude as low as 200 feet height above touchdown (EASA OPS LPV 250 ft.) with visibility minimums as low as ½ mile (providing the terrain and airport infrastructure and regulations support the lowest minima criteria).

Another non-precision GPS/SBAS approach, certified as an localizer performance (LP) approach where terrain or obstructions prohibit the certification of the LPV vertically guided approach, takes advantage of the angular lateral guidance and smaller position errors (provided by GPS/SBAS) to provide a lateral only procedure similar to an ILS localizer. LP procedures may provide lower minima than a LNAV procedure due to the narrower obstacle clearance surface. In the LP approach, vertical guidance is for information only and is based on SBAS or BARO information.

The Genesys Aerosystems EFIS guides the pilot through every step of the approach procedure with Highway in the Sky 3-D symbology. The system defines a desired flight path based upon the active flight plan. The current position of the aircraft is determined relative to the desired path in order to determine lateral deviation for display on the GPS/SBAS CDI and VDI. The IDU auto-sequences from one waypoint to the next in accordance with the flight plan along the flight path with the following exceptions:

1) Pilot has selected a manual GPS/SBAS OBS (SUSPEND shown).

2) Active waypoint is the missed approach waypoint, and missed approach procedure has not been armed (ARM) nor initiated (MISS) (SUSPEND shown).

3) Aircraft is in a published or manually created holding pattern, and pilot has not chosen to continue (CONT) out of the holding pattern (SUSPEND shown).
4) Active waypoint is the last waypoint of the active flight plan (no flag shown).

5) Leg following active waypoint is a manual termination leg, and the pilot has not chosen to resume (RESUME) to the waypoint following the manual termination (SUSPEND shown).

6) The aircraft is in a repeating SAR pattern (race track, sector search, or orbit) and the pilot has not chosen to continue out of the SAR pattern (SUSPEND shown).

Where automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended due to reasons 1, 2, or 4 above, the EFIS automatically switches from TO operation to FROM operation when appropriate. If not suspended, automatic waypoint sequencing occurs upon the following conditions:

1) Bearing to the transition point (turn bisector for the fly-by waypoint, active waypoint for fly-over waypoint) is more than 90° from the current course (transition from “TO” to “From” operation);

2) Aircraft location is within one turn diameter (based upon current true Airspeed and 15° angle of bank) of the transition point; and

3) Aircraft heading is within 90° of the current course (generally pointed in the correct direction).

The linear vertical scale limits of the VDI for LNAV/VNAV and LPV approaches are shown in Figure 7-1.

![Figure 7-1: Vertical Deviation Indicator Linear Deviation](image)

**7.3.1. Highway in the Sky (Skyway)**

When not decluttered, the PFD displays the active navigation route or manual OBS course 3-D manner with a series of skyway boxes, which overlay the flight plan route at a desired altitude and provide lateral and vertical guidance. Skyway boxes conform to the VNAV requirements of GPS/SBAS receiver requirements (TSO-C-146C). The top and bottom of
the boxes are parallel to the horizon on straight leg segments and dynamically tilt with respect to the horizon on turning leg segments based on leg-segment turn-radius and groundspeed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of HITS Lines</th>
<th>Fully Integrated Autopilot</th>
<th>Genesys/S-TEC DFCS (HDG Mode and/or NAV/APR mode)</th>
<th>Un-Integrated Autopilot or No Autopilot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dashed</td>
<td>Not coupled to skyway</td>
<td>Coupled to skyway. AP is either in HDG mode with LNAV heading/roll-steering sub-mode engaged or in NAV/APR mode with FMS1, or FMS2 as the selected navigation source.</td>
<td>Always Solid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid</td>
<td>Coupled to Skyway</td>
<td>Coupled to skyway. AP is either in HDG mode with LNAV heading/roll-steering sub-mode engaged or in NAV/APR mode with FMS1, or FMS2 as the selected navigation source.</td>
<td>Always Solid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the active route is in view, up to five boxes are shown with the dimensions being a constant 400 feet wide (±200 feet from the desired lateral path) by 320 feet tall (±160 feet from the desired vertical path) spaced horizontally 2000 feet. Skyway boxes are drawn using the hidden surface removal techniques of the terrain and obstruction rendering, so a skyway box behind terrain appears to be so. Skyway boxes disappear in basic mode and unusual attitude mode. In reversionary mode 1 (GPS failure), skyway boxes disappear after one minute to indicate degraded navigation performance.

Skyway box altitude is controlled by VNAV altitude, aircraft altitude, aircraft climb performance, and climb/descent angle setting. If no VNAV altitude is set, skyway boxes describe the desired lateral flight path of the aircraft at the aircraft's current altitude.

With a VNAV altitude set, the boxes provide both lateral and vertical guidance. Climb and descent angle settings are controlled individually with a resolution of 0.1°. VNAV is guided by VNAV waypoints determined by VNAV altitude and VNAV offset from flight plan waypoints. There are two sources for VNAV altitudes; the navigation database and manual input through the ACTV menu. VNAV altitudes for waypoints without a navigation database or manually input VNAV altitude are computed using “look-ahead” rules. When “look-ahead” finds a further VNAV altitude constraint above the previous VNAV altitude constraint (i.e., climb commanded), an automatic VNAV altitude is continuously calculated for the waypoint based...
upon an immediate climb to the altitude constraint at the higher of actual climb angle or the climb angle setting (dynamic climb angle). When “look-ahead” finds a further VNAV altitude constraint below the previous VNAV altitude constraint (i.e., descent commanded), an automatic VNAV altitude is calculated for the waypoint based upon a descent to reach the VNAV altitude constraint at the associated waypoint using the descent angle setting. If no further VNAV altitude constraints are found, the automatic VNAV altitude is set to the last valid VNAV altitude constraint.

When a VNAV climb is desired, the boxes are drawn at a vertical position the higher of: (a) the dynamic climb angle emanating from the aircraft's present position (aircraft-referenced); (b) the dynamic climb angle emanating from the next waypoint VNAV altitude (geo-referenced forward); or (c) the climb angle setting emanating from the previous waypoint VNAV altitude (geo-referenced backward). The geo-referenced backward calculation is only considered when the current leg is part of a procedure and is designed to provide pilot awareness, if a specified climb gradient is not being met. Once the boxes intercept the VNAV altitude, further boxes are drawn with a zero angle to show a level off followed by a level flight segment. Because five boxes are shown, the level-off depiction is an anticipatory cue for the pilot. Climb guidance is depicted in Figure 7-2, Figure 7-3, and Figure 7-4.

![Figure 7-2: Highway in the Sky (Aircraft Referenced)](image-url)
When a VNAV descent is desired, boxes are drawn with a zero angle until reaching a descent point. Further boxes are drawn downward at an angle corresponding to the descent angle setting. The descent point is defined by the intercept of a line emanating upward from the subsequent VNAV waypoint at the descent angle setting and a line representing level flight at the previous VNAV altitude. On the final approach segment of an IFR approach, descent angle and VNAV waypoint are defined in Table 7-2.

**Table 7-2: Final Segment of IFR Approach, Descent Angle and VNAV Waypoint**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>VNAV Waypoint</th>
<th>Descent Angle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IFR approach with valid final approach segment data block</td>
<td>Glidepath intercept point (GPIP) as defined in final approach segment data block</td>
<td>Descent angle as defined in final approach segment data block</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7-2: Final Segment of IFR Approach, Descent Angle and VNAV Waypoint

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>VNAV Waypoint</th>
<th>Descent Angle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No or invalid final approach segment data block</td>
<td>Missed approach point location</td>
<td>Straight line from FAF to MAP location and altitudes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No intermediate waypoints exist between FAF and MAP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No or invalid final approach segment data block</td>
<td>Missed approach point location</td>
<td>Steepest descent angle based upon straight lines from FAF and subsequent intermediate waypoints to MAP location and altitudes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate waypoints exist between FAF and MAP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On the final approach segment of a VFR approach procedure, the higher of the descent angle setting or 3° is used.

Because five boxes are shown, the descent point depiction is an anticipatory cue. Figure 7-5 depicts descent guidance and creates an easily understood, yet safe, VNAV paradigm to meet the VNAV requirements current guidance.

Figure 7-5: Highway in the Sky Final Approach Segments

Further, the paradigm is biased towards keeping the aircraft at the highest altitude possible for the longest period of time. The climb paradigm compensates for an aircraft's ability to climb more steeply than specified.
and warns of being below a desired climb gradient when the aircraft is unable to meet the specified climb angle. The descent paradigm encourages flying stabilized approaches.

### 7.3.2. Waypoint Sequencing

When automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended due to reasons 4 or 5 in § 7.3, the EFIS switches from “TO” to “FROM” operation when appropriate. If not suspended, automatic waypoint sequencing occurs in following conditions:

1. Bearing to the transition point (turn bisector for fly-by waypoint, active waypoint for fly-over waypoint) is more than 90° from the current course (i.e., transition from “TO” to “FROM” operation);
2. Aircraft location is within two turn diameters (based upon current true airspeed and 15° angle of bank) of the active waypoint location; and
3. Aircraft is within 90° of the current course (i.e., generally pointed in the correct direction).

The desired flight path is created from a sequence of straight, left turning, and right turning leg segments designed to provide smooth skyway, GPS/SBAS CDI, and lateral autopilot guidance. Each leg between waypoints is composed of up to nine segments. Otherwise radii for turning segments (other than DME arc or radius to a fix segments) are calculated with the parameter speed determined as follows:

1. If the waypoint is part of a DP and within 30NM of the departure runway, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.
2. If the waypoint is part of a STAR and within 30NM of the arrival runway, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.
3. If the waypoint is part of an IFR or VFR approach procedure, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.
4. If the waypoint is part of a holding pattern, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.
5. Within a SAR pattern, speed is the lower of holding speed or procedure speed.
6. Where a Fixed-Radius Transition (FRT) is defined by the navigation database for a waypoint, that turn radius is used for the turning segment. FRT is used in enroute flight in order to save the number of waypoints and to provide a smoother transition. The RF leg can only be used in a SID or in a STAR. It is the flight plan leg stored in the
navigation database, which is defined by constant radius turns around a given fix.

7) Otherwise, speed is the current true airspeed or procedure speed, whichever is higher.

In all cases, if NavData® derived speed limit is associated with the waypoint, speed is the lower of the NavData® derived speed limit or the speed determined above.

7.3.3. Fly-Over Waypoints

![Figure 7-6: Fly-Over Waypoints](image)

To create the desired flight path, each waypoint is designated as a fly-by or a fly-over waypoint. Waypoints are further subdivided into waypoinst with a defined entry heading and waypoints with a defined exit heading. Waypoint auto-sequencing for fly-by waypoints occurs at the bisector of the turn. Waypoint auto-sequencing for fly-over waypoints occurs over the waypoint.

These waypoints are type fly-over with defined entry heading:

1) Exit from holding pattern;
2) Exit from procedure turn;
3) Entry into holding pattern;
4) Missed approach point;
5) Phantom waypoint (created by inserting a waypoint into the active flight plan or performing Direct-To function within the active flight plan -- avoids S-turns);
6) Last waypoint;
7) Start waypoint (created by creating a new active flight plan with the Direct-To function – avoids S-turns);
8) Reference (takeoff runway end) waypoint of a DP;
9) Waypoint leading into discontinuity; and

10) Altitude, DME, or radial termination legs (ARINC-424 path types CA, FA, VA, CR, VR, CD, FD, and VD; see Table 7-3).

11) Waypoints marked as overfly in the navigation database.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Path Designator</th>
<th>Terminator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant DME arc</td>
<td>Altitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course to</td>
<td>Distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct Track</td>
<td>DME Distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course from a Fix to</td>
<td>Fix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holding Pattern</td>
<td>Next Leg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial</td>
<td>Manual Termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant Radius</td>
<td>Radial Termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track Between</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heading To</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: $\text{CF} =$ Course to Fix, and $\text{FM} =$ Course from a Fix to a Manual Termination, etc.

### 7.3.4. Fly-By Waypoints

These waypoints are type fly-over with defined exit heading:
1) Entry into procedure turn; and

2) Waypoint exiting a discontinuity with the exception of phantom waypoints or DP reference waypoints;

3) First waypoint with the exception of start waypoints or DP reference waypoints

4) Course to a fix legs that are not to the FAF/FAWP are Fly-By with defined entry heading. All other waypoints are fly-by with defined exit heading.

**NOTE:**

Entry adjustments should be expected anytime a turn exceeds 120°. Turns greater than 120° should not be used in conjunction with RNP routes. (RNP standards specifically exclude such turns from RNP requirements.)

Leg segments for paths are constructed by the EFIS as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Path Type</th>
<th>Waypoint</th>
<th># of Segments and Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Entry</td>
<td>Exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straight Leg, DME Arc or Radius to a Fix</td>
<td>Fly-By</td>
<td>Fly-By</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fly-By</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading</td>
<td>Fly-By</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fly-By</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading</td>
<td>Fly-By</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading</td>
<td>Fly-By</td>
<td>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit turn. 1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7-4: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by EFIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Path Type</th>
<th>Waypoint Entry Heading</th>
<th># of Segments and Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fly-Over Defined</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Entry</td>
<td>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit turn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit Heading</td>
<td>Exit Heading</td>
<td>Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fly-Over Defined</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Entry</td>
<td>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit Heading</td>
<td>Exit Heading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fly-Over Defined</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Entry</td>
<td>Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Heading</td>
<td>Fly-By</td>
<td>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fly-Over Defined</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Entry</td>
<td>Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit Heading</td>
<td>Exit Heading</td>
<td>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fly-Over Defined</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Entry</td>
<td>Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit Heading</td>
<td>Exit Heading</td>
<td>WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry turn to exit waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedure Turn</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Entry</td>
<td>WGS-84 geodesic path from entry waypoint on outbound heading for 30 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit Heading</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Entry</td>
<td>Turn to procedure turn heading (45°).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holding Pattern</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Entry</td>
<td>Outbound on procedure turn heading for 72 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Heading</td>
<td>Fly-Over Defined Entry</td>
<td>Turn to inbound heading (135°).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WGS-84 geodesic path to exit waypoint. Entry waypoint and exit waypoint are same point.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7-4: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by EFIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Path Type</th>
<th>Waypoint Entry</th>
<th>Waypoint Exit</th>
<th># of Segments and Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>entries, it is the heading required to get to entry of inbound turn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WGS-84 geodesic path to entry of inbound turn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inbound turn. Degree of turn varies depending upon entry procedure and heading.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WGS-84 geodesic path to holding fix for direct and teardrop entries. WGS-84 geodesic path to entry of turn to holding pattern heading for parallel entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Turn to holding pattern heading for parallel entries. This leg is not used for direct and teardrop entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Turn to holding pattern outbound leg (180°).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Holding pattern outbound leg (length based upon either time or distance as specified by navigation database).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Turn to holding pattern inbound leg (180°).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Holding pattern inbound leg (length based upon either time or distance as specified by navigation database).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 7.3.5. Direct-To

If the EFIS generates a WGS-84 geodesic path to a designated TO fix, the aircraft captures this path without “S-turning” or undue delay. Where the selected TO fix is in the active flight plan, the required transition is created as follows:

1) A phantom waypoint is created at the current aircraft location.

2) Leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated a discontinuity.

3) Phantom waypoint is designated a fly-over defined entry heading waypoint where entry heading is current aircraft track.
Where the selected TO fix is not in the active flight plan, the required transition is created as follows:

1) A new active flight plan is created from “Start” (current aircraft location) to the TO fix.

2) “Start” waypoint is designated a fly-over defined entry heading waypoint where entry heading is current aircraft track.

### 7.3.5.1. Direct-To Unnamed Waypoints Inside Procedures

The following identifiers are implemented for unnamed waypoints inside a published procedure and are found on the ND or inside the active flight plan.

1) **-ALT-** altitude terminations
2) **-DIR-** waypoints that begin a Direct-To leg
3) **-DME-** distance or DME terminations
4) **-INT-** intercept terminations
5) **-RAD-** radial terminations
6) **-MAN-** manual terminations

![Active Flight Plan](image1)
![MFD Navigation Display](image2)
![PFD Active Waypoint Information](image3)

**Figure 7-8: Unnamed Waypoints**

### 7.4. Discontinuities

When the EFIS is unable to construct a smooth flight path, as described above due to active flight plan waypoint spacing (i.e., spacing too close for turn radius), a discontinuity is placed between the waypoints. When a discontinuity exists, no path nor skyway is drawn between the waypoints. The pilot cannot activate the waypoint exiting the discontinuity, as it is not possible to provide path guidance to this waypoint. Attempts to activate the waypoint exiting the discontinuity activates the next waypoint or, if there is no next waypoint (i.e., end of active flight plan), activation of the waypoint leading into the discontinuity.
7.4.1. Manual Termination Legs

Manual termination legs (ARINC 424 path types FM and VM) are a special case and are handled as follows:

1) The manual termination leg is a discontinuity; The manual termination leg is rendered as a path on the database course/heading for 10NM beyond either: (a) the previous waypoint (manual leg not active); or (b) the nearest on-path point (manual leg active);

2) Rendering of the manual termination leg will not terminate with a waypoint symbol;

3) The manual termination leg will be followed by a discontinuity;

4) Waypoint sequencing is suspended on the manual termination leg;

5) Once the CDI transitions to FROM operation, RESUME (L2) appears;

6) When ready to end manual navigation and resume a path to the waypoint following the manual termination leg, press RESUME (L2) to create and activate a Direct-To path to the waypoint.

**NOTE:**

If the manual termination leg is not followed by another waypoint (other than a suppressed waypoint), RESUME (L2) does not appear, because there would be no waypoint-to-waypoint sequencing to resume.

7.5. Magnetic Course

The source of magnetic variation used for paths defined using magnetic course is in accordance with the following:

1) If the leg is part of a database terminal area procedure and the magnetic variation is specified by the State for that procedure, the magnetic variation to be used is the value specified.

2) If the leg is not part of a procedure and the active fix is a VOR, the magnetic variation to be used is the published station declination for the VOR.

3) If the leg is not part of a procedure and the terminating fix is not a VOR, the magnetic variation to be used is defined by the system using an internal model.
The EFIS has the capability of computing magnetic variation at any location within the region where flight operations may be conducted using magnetic north reference. The assigned magnetic variation is calculated with the NIMA GEOMAG algorithm and World Magnetic Model appropriate to the five-year cycle.

7.5.1. **AHRS Modes for Heading Source**

**AHRS Slaved—EFIS Magnetic North**: Standard mode of operation. Everything displayed relative to magnetic north drift free.

**AHRS Slaved—EFIS True North**: Everything displayed relative to true north with drift free heading. The preferred way to operate in areas where navigation is done relative to true north. (See Section 9 Appendix for limitations on Earth’s magnetic flux horizontal field.)

**AHRS Free/“DG”—EFIS Magnetic North**: Use when operating around significant magnetic disturbances in areas where navigation is done relative to magnetic north. Ensure the compass rose is slewed to a magnetic north value.

**AHRS Free/“DG”—EFIS True North**: Method of operation in high-latitude areas where navigation is accomplished relative to true north. Heading is not drift free and requires periodic correction. This mode may also be used when operating around significant magnetic disturbances in areas where navigation is done relative to true north. Ensure the compass rose is slewed to a true north value.

7.5.2. **GPS Altitude**

WGS-84 ellipsoid altitude received from the GPS/SBAS is converted to geodetic (MSL) altitude using the EGM 2008 geoidal database, which is revised on a twelve-year cycle.

7.5.3. **Dead Reckoning**

The EFIS has dead reckoning capability and is active whenever the GPS/SBAS sensor is not sending a valid position. The EFIS projects the last known GPS/SBAS position forward using TAS and heading, corrected for last known wind as it continues to navigate using this position and the active flight plan. The system provides the capability to determine bearing to an airport, based upon the dead reckoning position.

7.5.4. **Geodesic Path Computation Accuracy**

The cross-track path deviation error between the computed path used to determine cross-track deviations and the true WGS-84 geodesic is less
than 10% of the horizontal alert limit of the navigation mode applicable to the leg containing the path.

### 7.5.5. Parallel Offsets

The parallel offset is a route parallel to, but offset from, the original active route. The basis of the offset path is the original flight plan leg(s) and one or more offset reference points as computed by the EFIS. The computed offset reference points are located so they lie on the intersection of lines drawn parallel to the host route at the desired offset distance and the line that bisects the track change angle, except where the parallel offset ends. In this case, the offset reference point is located abeam of the original flight plan waypoint at the offset distance.

The parallel offset function does not propagate through route discontinuities, unreasonable path geometries as follows:

1. Legs that are parts of approach procedures (IFR and VFR); or
2. Legs with complex geometries or that begin or end with dynamically terminations. (ARINC 424 path types other than CF, DF, or TF or any leg where the starting waypoint is not a fixed position); or
3. Legs that begin at an aircraft starting position (reference waypoint in a DP or Start/Phantom waypoints created by the Direct-To function).

Parallel offset function does not propagate through the following:

1. Any waypoint at the beginning or end of a route discontinuity; or
2. Any waypoint at the beginning or end of a prohibited leg type; or
3. A waypoint with an unreasonable path geometry (defined as a turn greater than 120°).

When the parallel offset function begins or ends within a flight plan due to the above constraints, parallel offset entry or exit waypoints are inserted into the flight plan. Discontinuities precede parallel offset entry waypoints and follow parallel offset exit waypoints. This allows the pilot to navigate to and from the parallel offset as required.

The EFIS provides guidance to parallel tracks at a selected offset distance. When executing a parallel offset, the navigation mode and all performance requirements of the original route in the active flight plan are applicable to the offset route. The EFIS provides for entry of offset distance in increments of 1 NM, left or right of course, and is capable of offsets of at least 20 NM. Offset mode is indicated with an advisory flag, e.g., \texttt{PTK = L 20NM}. When in offset mode, the EFIS provides reference parameters (e.g., cross-track
deviation, distance-to-go, time-to-go) relative to the offset path and offset reference points.

Once a parallel offset is activated, the offset remains active for all flight plan route segments until removed automatically (transitioning through a parallel track exit waypoint), until the flight crew enters a “Direct-To” routing or activates a new flight plan route, or until (manual) cancellation.

**NOTE:**
If a parallel offset is entered in the active flight plan and then cancelled, that active flight plan is no longer eligible for configuring another parallel offset without deleting and reopening due to the creation of a discontinuity.

**Table 7-5: Parallel Offsets Symbols and Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="PTK-" /></td>
<td>Parallel offset has been created and has a designated ending waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="PTK-" /></td>
<td>Designated ending waypoint of parallel offset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7-5: Parallel Offsets Symbols and Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="PTK = R 3NM" /></td>
<td>Parallel track advisory indicating offset track 3 NM to the right of host route.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="PTK.. (L4)" /></td>
<td>PTK.. (L4) appears when active route is eligible for a parallel offset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="PTK ENDING" /></td>
<td>Approaching end of parallel offset waypoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="VNAV AT EDMN ALTITUDE: 4300' OFFSET: --NM" /></td>
<td>VNAV altitude is possible with offset of distance before or after waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="VNAV AT EDMN ALTITUDE: 6800' OFFSET: NA" /></td>
<td>VNAV altitude input is possible but not an offset of a distance before or after waypoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="INFO.." /></td>
<td>The absence of PTK (L4) indicates a parallel offset is not allowed for reasons stated above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="PTK KIWA KCHD KGYR KGEU" /></td>
<td>Indicates each waypoint is a part of the parallel offset.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.6. Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes

In the default GPS/SBAS mode, the EFIS has enroute, terminal, LNAV approach, LNAV/VNAV approach, LP approach, LPV approach, VFR approach, and departure navigation modes. Mode annunciation, alert limits (horizontal and vertical), and CDI FSD (horizontal and vertical) are determined by navigation mode.
The system switches to default navigation modes based upon region of operation as in Table 7-7.

### Table 7-7: Default Navigation Modes Based Upon Region of Operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Default Nav Mode</th>
<th>Definition of Region/Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Departure**    | Selected when active waypoint is first waypoint of a departure or missed approach procedure and active leg heading is aligned (±3°) with active runway heading. Also, set when active waypoint is MAWP but a missed approach has been manually activated.  
HAL 0.3NM  
FSD (Horizontal) 0.3 NM |
| **VTF approach (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP, or LPV)** | VTF IFR approach has been selected; and within 30NM of the active runway; and  
FAWP is active waypoint; and bearing to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); and desired track to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as mode entry criteria).  
HAL 0.3NM prior to FAWP, 556m (0.3NM after FAWP  
FSD (Horizontal) Angular/Linear  
VAL N/A prior to FAWP, 50m or reversion to barometric VNAV after FAWP |
| **LNAV approach** | MAWP or FAWP is active waypoint; and if FAWP is active waypoint: |
**Table 7-7: Default Navigation Modes Based Upon Region of Operation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Default Nav Mode</th>
<th>Definition of Region/Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bearing to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); and desired track to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria)*; and either segment leading into FAWP is not a holding pattern, or pilot has elected to continue out of holding. HAL 0.3NM prior to FAWP, 556m (0.3NM after FAWP) FSD (Horizontal) Angular/Linear VAL N/A prior to FAWP, 50m or reversion to barometric VNAV after FAWP FSD (Vertical) Angular/Linear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAWP or FAWP is active waypoint; and if FAWP is active waypoint: bearing to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); and desired track to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria)*; and either segment leading into FAWP is not a holding pattern, or pilot has elected to continue out of holding. HAL 0.3NM prior to FAWP FSD (Horizontal) Angular/Linear VAL N/A prior to FAWP, 50m or reversion to barometric VNAV after FAWP FSD (Vertical) Angular/Linear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFR approach has been selected; and within 30NM of the active runway; and MAWP or FAWP is active waypoint; and if FAWP is active waypoint: bearing to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); and desired track to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria)*; and either segment leading into FAWP is not a holding pattern, or pilot has elected to continue out of holding.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7-7: Default Navigation Modes Based Upon Region of Operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Default Nav Mode</th>
<th>Definition of Region/Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| VFR Approach     | - VFR Approach has been selected; and active runway is the active waypoint.  
                  - HAL 0.3NM  
                  - FSD (Horizontal) Angular/Linear  
                  - FSD (Vertical) Angular/Linear  
| Terminal         | - Not in departure mode; and active waypoint is part of a departure or active waypoint and previous waypoint are parts of an arrival or approach or within 30NM of the departure airport, arrival airport, or runway.  
                  - HAL 2NM  
                  - FSD (Horizontal) 2NM  
                  - FSD (Vertical) 150m  
| Enroute          | - Not in departure, approach, nor terminal modes.  
                  - HAL 2NM  
                  - FSD (Horizontal) 1NM  
                  - FSD (Vertical) 150m  

### 7.7. Required Navigation Performance

The EFIS supports required navigation performance as follows:

1) Manually entering RNP values; or

2) RNP values automatically retrieved from the navigation database that are associated airways or procedures (DPs, STARs or IAPs).
7.7.1. Manually Entered RNP Value

If a manually entered RNP value exists, it is annunciated along with the ANP. The navigation mode is RNP and the manually entered RNP value is used to determine CDI FSD, LON, and LOI alerting. Manual RNP overrides all other modes.

7.7.2. When in an Approach Region of Operation

When inside an approach region of operation, system operation conforms to the mode in the associated “Level of Service” navigation database record. The “Level of Service” record tracks the minima lines in the IAP published approach plate.

7.7.3. When outside the Approach Region of Operation

When outside the approach region of operation and neither a manually entered nor automatic RNP value exists, the EFIS defaults to GPS/SBAS operation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Navigation Mode</th>
<th>Annunciation</th>
<th>HAL$^1$</th>
<th>FSD(H)</th>
<th>VAL</th>
<th>FSD(V)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manual RNP</td>
<td>RNP: 0.10M</td>
<td>0.1 to ≥ 4.0NM</td>
<td>= HAL</td>
<td>N/A$^2$</td>
<td>500 ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RNP: 15.0M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic RNP</td>
<td>RNP: 0.10A</td>
<td>0.1 to ≥ 4.0NM</td>
<td>= HAL</td>
<td>N/A$^2$</td>
<td>500 ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RNP: 15.0A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^1$ HAL: Horizontal Alert Level

$^2$ N/A: Not Applicable
### Table 7-8: Default Navigation Modes Based Upon Region of Operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Navigation Mode</th>
<th>Annunciation</th>
<th>HAL (^1)</th>
<th>FSD(H)</th>
<th>VAL</th>
<th>FSD(V)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Automatic RNP on final approach segment</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.1 to ≥ 4.0NM</td>
<td>= HAL</td>
<td>N/A prior to FAWP, RNP-dependent or reversion to barometric VNAV after FAWP (^2)</td>
<td>150 ft.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) HAL is the manually set or automatically retrieved RNP value.

\(^2\) EFIS provides advisory vertical guidance. On all route segments other than the final approach segment, barometric altitude driven by an ADC (if applicable) is used as the control parameter. On the final approach segment, GPS-derived altitude is the preferred control parameter and is selected so long as the VPL is less than the VAL of 35m (RNP < 0.23NM) or 50m (RNP ≥ 0.23NM). In the event that VPL is greater than these values, the system selects barometric VNAV. Once GPS-derived altitude is selected for the final approach segment, there is no reversion to barometric VNAV.

### 7.8. GPS/SBAS CDI Scale and FSD Transitions

#### Table 7-9: Summary of Changes In Cross-Track FSD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>From Enroute</th>
<th>To Enroute</th>
<th>To Terminal</th>
<th>To Approach</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Change from ±2 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering terminal mode. When outside the approach region of operation, if a manually entered RNP value does not exist but an automatic RNP value retrieved from the navigation database does exist, then the automatically retrieved RNP value</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7-9: Summary of Changes in Cross-Track FSD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>From</th>
<th>To Enroute</th>
<th>To Terminal</th>
<th>To Approach</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Terminal</td>
<td>Change from ±1 NM FSD to ±2 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering enroute mode.</td>
<td>is annunciated along with the actual ANP is displayed. Navigation mode is RNP and automatically retrieved RNP value is used to determine CDI FSD LON and LOI alerting.</td>
<td>If VTF, switch immediately. Otherwise, change from ±1 NM FSD to approach FSD over distance of 2 NM; start transition at 2 NM from FAWP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approach</td>
<td>Change to ±1 NM.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Departure</td>
<td>If initial leg is aligned with runway, change from ±0.3 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD at turn initiation point of first fix in departure procedure.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.9. Approach Type Selection

The EFIS selects the approach type (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP, or LPV) when entering approach mode with the following order of precedence and prerequisites:

1) **LPV**:
   a) LPV Enable is enabled;
   b) ARINC-424 “Level of Service” indicates LPV minimums are published;
   c) Valid long-term, fast, and ionospheric SBAS corrections are available and being applied to at least 4 GPS satellites;
   d) Final approach segment data block exists and passes the Built-in-Test; and
   e) Horizontal and vertical alert limits from final approach segment data block are predicted to be supported.

2) **LP**: (Same precedence and prerequisites as LPV)

3) **LNAV/VNAV**:
   a) ARINC-424 “Level of Service” indicates LNAV/VNAV minimums are published;
   b) If a final approach segment data block exists, LPV Enable is enabled;

---

**Figure 7-10: GPS Mode (LNAV APPR)**

The EFIS selects the approach type (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP, or LPV) when entering approach mode with the following order of precedence and prerequisites:
c) If a final approach segment data block exists, it passes Built-in-Test; and

d) Horizontal alert limit of 556m (.3NM) is predicted to be supported.

**NOTE:**

Because the EFIS inherently supports barometric VNAV, it is not a prerequisite that the vertical alert limit be supportable, nor is it a prerequisite that valid long-term, fast, and ionospheric SBAS corrections to be available and applied to at least four GPS satellites. Rather, the vertical alert limit (50m) and SBAS correction tests are used to determine whether to present guidance based upon GPS altitude or barometric altitude.

4) **LNAV**: Default approach type selected when none of the above selections are made, and there are no prerequisites for selecting LNAV.

The EFIS continuously displays the approach type (mode indication) after selection. The EFIS does not degrade the approach type after selection unless the approach procedure is reselected or changed.

**NOTE:**

These are GPS/SBAS modes and still appear during a ground-based approach such as an ILS approach.

7.9.1. **Approach Path Definition as VTF IFR Approach**

In addition, the pilot may select a VTF IFR approach, indicating the pilot does not intend to fly the entire procedure. When a VTF IFR approach is selected, the EFIS creates an initial point (IP) waypoint on the extended final approach course to provide deviations relative to the extended final approach course. The IP is a fly-over defined exit heading waypoint, and the leg prior to the IP is designated as a discontinuity. Until the FAWP has been sequenced, the EFIS indicates a VTF IFR approach has been selected (VECTORS) to indicate guidance is not relative to a published approach path and TERPS or ICAO DO 8168 clearances are not assured.
7.9.2. VTF IFR Approach

In addition, the pilot may select a VTF IFR approach, indicating the pilot does not intend to fly the entire procedure. When a VTF IFR approach is selected, the EFIS creates an initial point (IP) waypoint on the extended final approach course to provide deviations relative to the extended final approach course. The IP is a fly-over defined exit heading waypoint, and the leg prior to the IP is designated a discontinuity. Until the FAWP is sequenced, the EFIS indicates a VTF IFR approach has been selected (VECTORS) to indicate guidance is not relative to a published approach path, and TERPS clearances are not assured.

7.9.3. VTF VFR Approach

The pilot may select a VFR approach to a runway or user waypoint with a defined approach bearing. When a VFR approach is selected, the EFIS creates an “IP” waypoint approximately 12 NM on the extended final approach course to provide deviations relative to the extended final approach course. The IP is designated a fly-over defined exit heading waypoint, and the leg prior to the IP is designated a discontinuity.

![Figure 7-11: VTF VFR Approach](image)

As depicted in Figure 7-11, during the VTF VFR approach, the aircraft proceeds towards the IP. Since the IP is designated as a discontinuity, proceeding direct is not possible. When attempting to proceed direct to the IP, only the active leg between the IP and RW07 is activated.

7.10. Missed Approach and Departure Path Definition

Once on the final approach segment, the pilot may initiate an immediate missed approach or arm the system to execute the missed approach at the MAWP. If armed before crossing the MAWP, the equipment arms the missed approach for automatic initiation at the MAWP. If a missed approach is not initiated prior to crossing the MAWP, the EFIS switches to FROM mode at the MAWP and continues on the same course.

If the pilot initiates the missed approach, the EFIS provides guidance relative to the procedure. If a missed approach is armed prior to crossing the MAWP, the desired path to and after the MAWP is defined by the procedure. If the first leg in the missed approach procedure is not a straight path aligned within 3° of the final approach course, the FSD changes to terminal mode FSD (±1 NM) when the missed approach is initiated.
Otherwise, the FSD changes to ±0.3 NM when the missed approach is initiated (departure mode) and changes to terminal mode FSD (±1 NM) at the turn initiation point of the first waypoint in the missed approach procedure.

![Figure 7-12: Missed Approach and Departure Path Created](image)

The pilot may select DP guidance and, if the first leg in the DP is not a straight path aligned within 3° of the runway heading, terminal mode FSD (±1NM) is used. Otherwise, the FSD is ±0.3 NM (departure mode) and changes to terminal mode FSD (±1 NM) at the turn initiation point of the first waypoint in the DP.

### 7.11. Loss of Navigation Monitoring

The EFIS continuously monitors for loss of navigation capability. In manual or automatic RNP mode prior to sequencing the FAWP, the LON caution is displayed with a 10-second time to alert the RNP value is less than 2NM and a 30-second time to alert otherwise. RNP is also a statement of navigation performance necessary for operation within a defined airspace. Use the faults menu to distinguish the cause of the LON caution. The caution returns to its normal state upon termination of the responsible condition.

#### 7.11.1. Automatic RNP Mode

In automatic RNP mode after sequencing the FAWP, the EFIS provides an indication when the navigation system is no longer adequate to conduct or continue through use of FIS and loss of terrain. The
FAULTS menu allows the pilot to distinguish the cause of the loss of navigation caution. Once this LON condition exists, it is latched until the equipment is no longer in an approach mode.

7.11.2. Enroute Mode

While in enroute and terminal modes, the LON caution is also displayed until there is a termination of the responsible condition.

7.11.3. LNAV Approach Mode

In LNAV approach mode, the EFIS LON condition exists when the system is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the approach. Prior to sequencing the FAWP, the LON condition returns to its normal state immediately upon termination of the responsible condition. After sequencing the FAWP, the LON condition is latched until the EFIS is no longer in the approach mode. Prior to sequencing the FAWP, the LON condition returns to its normal state immediately upon termination of the responsible condition.

7.11.4. LNAV/VNAV Approach Mode

In LNAV/VNAV approach mode, the EFIS LON or VERT LON conditions are an indication that the EFIS is no longer able to continue the approach. The flags are displayed with the exception that when the LNAV/VNAV approach mode is predicated upon barometric VNAV.

The FAULTS menu enables the pilot to distinguish the cause of the loss of navigation caution. Prior to sequencing the FAWP, the flags return to their normal state immediately upon termination of the responsible condition. After sequencing the FAWP, the flags are latched until the equipment is no longer in an approach mode.

7.11.5. LP/LPV Approach Mode

In LP or LPV approach mode, the EFIS LON or VERT LON conditions are an indication that the EFIS is no longer able to continue the approach.

The FAULTS menu enables the pilot to distinguish the cause of the loss of navigation caution. Prior to sequencing the FAWP, the flags return to their normal state immediately upon termination of the responsible condition. After sequencing the FAWP, the flags are latched until the equipment is no longer in an approach mode.

7.12. Loss of Integrity Caution Monitoring

The EFIS provides a caution, independent of any pilot action when the EFIS experiences a loss of integrity monitoring. Loss of integrity monitoring
occurs when $HPL_{FD}$ exceeds the applicable HAL for longer than the applicable time to alert and $HPL_{SBAS}$ exceeds the HAL for the current navigation mode for longer than two seconds.

### Table 7-10: Loss of Integrity Caution Monitoring

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase of Flight</th>
<th>HAL</th>
<th>Time to Alert</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RNP As manually set or automatically retrieved</td>
<td>10 seconds (RNP &lt; 2NM) 30 seconds (otherwise)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enroute 2NM</td>
<td>30 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal 1NM</td>
<td>10 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNAV Approach* 0.3NM</td>
<td>10 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNAV/VNAV Approach* 0.3NM</td>
<td>10 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LP or LPV Approach* 0.3NM</td>
<td>10 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Departure 0.3NM</td>
<td>10 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Requirements only apply prior to sequencing FAWP. Meeting LOI criteria after sequencing the FAWP is defined as a LON.

### NOTE:

This aircraft is equipped for the following individual levels of RNP but may not be capable due to limited satellite coverage. Manual RNP is selectable between 0.10NM and 15NM as follows:

1) 0.01NM increments between RNP 0.10 and RNP 0.3
2) 0.1NM increments between RNP 0.3 and RNP 2
3) 1NM increments between RNP 2 and RNP 15

### 7.13. Selection of an Instrument Procedure

When an instrument procedure is selected and active, the receiver notifies the pilot of the most accurate level of service supported by the combination of the GPS/SBAS signal, receiver, and selected approach using naming conventions on the minima lines of the selected approach procedure. Once the level of service has been given, the EFIS operates in this mode for the duration of the procedure, unless the level of service is unavailable. The EFIS cannot change back to a more accurate level of service until the next time an approach is activated.

The following are samples of step-by-step procedures:
1) Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR)  
2) ILS Instrument Approach  
3) ILS Instrument Approach with Manual Termination leg  
4) LOC Back Course Instrument Approach  
5) RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima  
6) NRST ILS Instrument Approach with Standard Instrument Departure (SID)  
7) VOR/DME Instrument Approach  
8) Instrument approach with primary and alternate missed approach procedures.

7.13.1. **Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR) (Step-By-Step)**

If the selected waypoint is an airport with a published STAR, this option is available from a selection list of available STARs, transitions, and runways. After selection, the appropriate STAR is created and displayed on the MAP page. Activating a STAR deletes any pre-existing STAR, and it is inserted prior to any approach waypoints if previously entered.

STARS normally terminate at a fix near the airport, so a radar vector or feeder route is used for transition to the approach phase of the arrival. If an Instrument approach is activated during the STAR, the approach waypoints are inserted after the STAR.

The following example includes the execution of a Standard Terminal Arrival Route procedure into Friedrichshafen Germany (EDNY) followed by an ILS RWY 24.
Figure 7-13: Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR)
1) Press **ACTV (L2)** arrival airport must be entered as a waypoint.

2) Push ① with desired airport (EDNY) highlighted.

3) Rotate ① to **STAR**.. and push to enter.

4) Rotate ① to desired STAR (KPT6P). Push to enter.

5) If no transition is offered, rotate ① to desired runway (RW24). Push to enter.

6) ATC clears direct MOKOP and ILS RWY 24. Press **ACTV (L2)** rotate ① to MOKOP and push to enter. (See § 7.13.2 for loading an ILS)

7) Push ① and rotate to **NAV LOG** and push to enter to view first portion and then rotate ① to view remainder of NAV LOG.
7.13.2. ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

All approach operations begin with the same basic steps. This example selects ILS or LOC RWY 24 at Memmingen Germany (EDJA).

Figure 7-14: ILS Instrument Approach (EDJA)
1) With destination airport entered as the waypoint, press ACTV (L2). Rotate 1 to desired airport and push to enter.

2) Rotate 1 and select IFR APPR... Push to enter.

3) Rotate 1 and select desired approach and push to enter.

4) Rotate 1 and desired transition and push to enter.

5) Rotate 1 and select desired runway and push to enter.

6) If instructed to hold at OGROB as published, rotate 1 to OGROB and push to enter. Rotate 1 to HOLD.. and push to enter and enter holding direction and leg length or time. Push to enter.

7) The holding pattern is created and is the next leg to be sequenced. ATC issues clearance for the ILS 24 Memmingen and to maintain 4000’.

8) Rotate 1 to create holding entry and direction/leg length and push to enter.
9) Established in the HOLD as directed at 4000’. When ATC issues clearance for the approach, press **CONT (L2)** to continue waypoint sequencing to the FAF. (PFD shown)

10) Established in holding at OGROB (MFD shown)

11) Passing the FAF, press **ARM (L2)** to arm the missed approach procedure and continue waypoint sequencing.

12) ON the MFD press **MENU (R1)** and **PAGE. (R3)** and push to enter. Rotate 0 to HSI and push to enter.
13) Over the middle marker and with zoom mode active, press **MENU (R1)** then **ZOOM (R3)** to emulate the outside view in the PFI area. High on the glideslope with landing gear extended.

14) During the missed approach, press **MENU (R1)** then **ZOOM OFF (R3)** to restore normal wide field of view in the PFI area.

15) Missed approach segment appears as magenta and white dashed lines. The next leg (-ALT-) has an altitude termination leg of 3000’ which has already been achieved, therefore this leg is now –SKIPPED–.
7.13.3. **ILS Approach with Manual Termination Leg in MAP (Step-By-Step)**

This example selects RAF Cranwell United Kingdom (EGYD) with -ALT- termination leg followed by an immediate manual termination leg requiring pilot action to resume automatic waypoint sequencing.

![Figure 7-15: ILS Approach (EGYD)](image-url)
1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate ❶ to the destination airport and push to enter.

2) Rotate ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to desired approach and push to enter.

4) Rotate ❶ to desired Transition and push to enter. (* = most logical from present position.)

5) Rotate ❶ to desired runway (colors the active runway light gray).

6) Press **OBS (L4), NAV:VLOC1.. (L3)** and rotate ❶ to FAC 264° and push to enter.

7) Passing the FAF, press **ARM (L2)** to arm the missed approach procedure and resume automatic waypoint sequencing.

8) Localizer minimums set as MDA 520° and landing gear down.
9) Over the middle marker on glideslope and on the localizer. “Minimum, minimums” aural alert is sounding and Minimums (520) is flashing.

10) Past the MAWP, auto nav source switches to FMS-1 and auto waypoint sequencing is suspended due to -ALT- leg climbing to 2680’ with green altitude predictor arc indicating climb performance will achieve leg requirement.

11) Past the –ALT– termination leg and ready for pilot action to press RESUME (L2) to resume normal automatic waypoint sequencing.
12) After **RESUME (L2)** is pressed, normal waypoint sequencing resumes, course to next active waypoint appears as a magenta line, and active waypoint information is updated.
7.13.4. LOC Back Course Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This example includes a LOC/DME Back Course approach at Santa Maria CA USA (KSMX) with attention drawn to OBS settings and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.

Figure 7-16: LOC Back Course Approach
1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate ❶ to airport active waypoint. Push to enter.

2) Rotate ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to **LBCA** and push to enter.

4) Rotate ❶ to transition (*indicates most logical from current position). Push to enter.

5) Rotate ❶ to desired runway. Push to enter.

6) Follow ATC clearance and determine where to proceed. To view NAV LOG, press **MENU (R1)**, press **PAGE.. (R3)**, rotate ❶ to **NAV LOG**, and push to enter.

7) Assume ATC issued clearance to fly heading 184° for radar vectors to KOAKS, **ACTV (L2)** and ❷ (R4) were pressed when KOAKS was highlighted.
8) To set minimum altitude, press **MENU (R1)**, **BUGS.. (R2)**, **MINS.. (R3)**, then rotate ı to **MIN ALT..** and push to enter. Rotate ı to 1100 and push to enter.

9) Assume ATC has issued a clearance to proceed direct KOAKS. Press **OBS (L4)** and rotate ı to approach course setting of 300° to avoid reverse sensing indications of CDI.

10) In this example, aircraft is right of course and the CDI is ½ scale to the left.

11) After passing the FAF (CAMCO), **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appear but in this case, there is no SUSPEND advisory due to the stepdown fix of PATER 2.2NM ahead.

12) Approaching PATER (fly-by waypoint symbol) stepdown fix with the missed approach procedure armed and speed transitioned to 140 KIAS. The green arc altitude predictor indicates arrival at minima over the runway.
13) Passing the MAWP, nav source automatically switches to the FMS and CDI changes cyan to magenta.

14) Entering HOLD at GLG and navigating on FMS1

15) CONT (L2) appears as a reminder to press when ready to leave the HOLD and continue to the destination KMIT.
7.13.5. RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima (Step-By-Step)

This example includes an RNAV (GPS) RWY 32 approach to Wichita, Kansas, USA (KICT) and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.

Figure 7-17: RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima
Section 7 IFR Procedures

1) To select airport from active flight plan, press ACTV (L2) and then rotate \( \textcircled{1} \) to desired airport \( \textcircled{1} \) and push to enter.

2) Rotate to IFR APPR.. and push to enter.

3) Rotate to desired approach and verify WAAS channel number \( \textcircled{2} \) matches instrument approach chart and push to enter.

4) Rotate \( \textcircled{1} \) to the desired transition and push to enter. (* = transition following likely avenue of actual arrival direction.)

5) Rotate \( \textcircled{1} \) to assigned landing runway. (Active runway colored light gray for identification purposes.)

6) Rotate \( \textcircled{1} \) to scale map to desired value and observe T/D within instrument approach procedure.

7) Active leg is magenta line, and next leg is white.
8) During this leg enroute to BADAC, the TOD was passed and descent begun based upon VNAV-B as shown below VDI.

9) On final approach course and approaching the FAF, **LPV APPR** appears along with the VDI.

10) Upon passing HOLUS, press **ARM (L2)** to continue auto waypoint sequencing. (This is the latest point on the approach to press ARM)

11) VDI displays vertical guidance for the LPV vertical profile based on GPS/SBAS.
12) Obstructions appear on PFI and ND areas.

13) Press **MENU (R1)** then **ZOOM (R3)** for wide- angle view of PFI area.

14) FPM lined up on the active runway on glidepath approaching minimums with CDI centered and on glidepath approaching minimums of 1580’ MSL.

15) Below minimums with FPM aligned with touchdown zone on runway. Minimums are amber (yellow) and flashing as the audible alert, “Minimums, Minimums,” sounds.

16) Past the MAWP, NAV source remains FMS1 and scale automatically changes to 0.3NM FSD.
17) Established in hold at CEPGA. Press CONT (L2) to continue waypoint sequencing to next leg in active flight plan.
7.13.6. NRST ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This method does not require the airport to be in the active flight plan. This example selects ILS RWY 24 at Memmingen Germany (EDJA) with the NRST ILS method of creation followed by the Kempton Three Alpha (KPT 3A) SID.

Figure 7-18: NRST ILS Instrument Approach
Figure 7-19: Standard Instrument Departure Procedure

Figure 7-20: Kempton Three Alpha (KPT 3A) SID
1) Press NRST (R3) then rotate 1 to ILS.. Push to enter.

2) Once confirmed, push 1 to activate the ILS.

Following actions occur:

a) Direct flight plan to the ILS airport is created.

b) A vectors-to-final ILS approach is activated.

c) Heading bug is activated to the current heading.

d) VLOC 1 and VLOC 2 OBS are set to the associated localizer course.

e) ILS frequency is automatically transmitted to NAV#1 in standby position.

f) EFIS changes to LOC1, and VDI indicates source of glideslope GS1.

3) Passing the FAF (OGROB), MISS (L1) and ARM (L2) appear. Press ARM (L2) to arm the missed approach procedure and continue automatic waypoint sequencing.

4) HITS indicates guidance to follow GPS overlay of the localizer and glideslope. However, the localizer source for CDI and glideslope receiver VDI are the primary sources for navigation guidance on this ILS approach.
Section 7 IFR Procedures

5) Inside 2.0 NM final with indicating no TAWS alerts are triggered and the default GPS mode of LNAV APPR is active.

6) To view the HSI page, press MENU (R1), PAGE.. (R3) and then rotate to HSI and push to enter.

7) Above DH over the middle marker and stabilized at 135 KIAS on the localizer centerline.

8) Glideslope is full scale deflection above glide path and go-around decision has been made.

9) During the missed approach, the navigation source automatically switches to FMS1 with 0.3NM FSD. FLTA is still inhibited and terminal mode is active while within the terminal area.
10) Kempton Three Alpha SID was loaded to the (EDJA) suppressed waypoint, and JA242 and JA244 displayed on the white track line. This requires management of the active flight plan to follow the SID in lieu of the missed approach path.

11) Press **ACTV (L2)** and then rotate 📍 to JA242, press 📬 (R4), and push to enter.

12) Now JA244 is the active waypoint with a magenta line going direct to active waypoint. With route of flight as follows:

   On track 237° ALG to 5.3 DME ALD. LT, on track 166° to intercept R299 KPT to KPT climb to FL 70.
7.13.7. VOR/DME Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This example loads the Lamar Muni Co. USA VOR/DME RWY 36 approach and is flown via the east arc followed by a missed approach. Blue numbers associate locations on chart and EFIS.

Figure 7-21: VOR/DME Instrument Approach
1) With destination airport highlighted as the waypoint, press ACTV (L2). Rotate ① to IFR APPR... Push to enter.

2) ① Rotate ① to select desired approach (example, VORDME36) and push to enter.

3) Rotate ① to desired transition of DO48T (* = most likely transition from this avenue of arrival). Push to enter.

4) Rotate ① to desired runway. Push to enter.

5) Rotate ① to proper MAP range to view procedure and select fix for compliance with ATC clearance ② (DO48T). Press (R4) and push ① to enter.

6) A magenta line leads from the - DIR- current position to ③ DO48T, which is now the active waypoint. 6000’ is the VNAV altitude, and aircraft is descending to the HITS boxes with green arc altitude predictor showing where this altitude will be reached along the route.
7) Established on the 20 DME ARC with NAV1 and NAV2 set on 116.9 MHz for LAA VOR and inbound FAC set at 350° on both VORs with DME indicating on both nav sources.

8) Altitude predictor green arc indicates no pilot action is necessary for vertical planning. CF36 will be crossed at the published altitude.

9) Established inbound on the final approach course to the FAF (FF36) crossing top of descent symbol ahead indicating when descent can be commenced to cross the FAF at 5700’. NAV Source is VOR1 and HITS source is GPS. The primary lateral source is the VOR and DME for this Instrument approach.

10) After passing the FAF **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appears to allow for executing the missed approach procedure immediately by pressing **MISS (L1)** or arming the Missed approach procedure upon crossing the MAWPT by pressing **ARM (L2)**.
11) Approaching the 6 stepdown fix 11VOR lower than 4498’ as shown in the waypoint information box.

12) Press MENU (R1) then ZOOM ON (R3). Established at 130 KIAS on short final with the runway in sight .6 NM ahead at the same angle as shown on the instrument approach chart.

13) After passing the MAWPT and the missed approach procedure was automatically sequenced, aircraft begins following the dashed magenta missed approach course lines on the MAP. NAV source automatically switched to FMS1 and 0.3NM FSD.

references to still being in the terminal area and TAWS terrain alerts are still inhibited.
7.13.8. ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate fix (Step-By-Step)

This example loads the Akron-Canton ILS or LOC RWY 1 approach with the missed approach flown to the alternate missed approach fix (KEATN).

During the instrument approach clearance, ATC advised that in the event of a missed approach, plan on flying the alternate missed approach instructions to ❶ KEATN intersection and hold as published. The ILS RWY 1 instrument approach is loaded and the active flight plan is opened and ❶ is scrolled to one position past (KCAK) and INSERT (R2) is pressed and entered KEATN with ❷ and pushed to enter.

1) ❶ Create KEATN waypoint in active flight plan and push ❷ to enter.
2) Rotate ❷ to HOLD.. and push to enter.
3) Create published holding pattern at KEATN and rotate/push ❷ through the process then push to enter. Observe KEATN is in
4) Upon executing the missed approach, press **ACTV (L2)** and rotate ❶ to KEATN then press (R4) and push ❶ to enter a direct routing to KEATN.

5) Verify the active flight plan has the holding pattern entered as published and is depicted on the MFD correctly.

6) Established in the holding pattern at KEATN. When cleared to continue to next waypoint on active flight plan, press **CONT (L2)** to resume waypoint sequencing.

7) If an instrument approach is necessary at the destination KMKE, the approach can be loaded without losing the holding pattern at KEATN since it was not part of the KCAK ILS 01 Instrument approach procedure.
8) When ATC provides a clearance for an instrument approach to KMKE, it can be added without losing the holding pattern at KEATN but the preceding ILS procedure is deleted automatically.

**NOTE:**

Navigation databases should be current for the duration of the flight. If the Aeronautical Information Regulation and Control (AIRAC) cycle is due to change during the flight, operators and pilots should establish procedures to ensure the accuracy of navigation data including suitability of navigation facilities used to define the routes and procedures for flight. Once acceptable means to compare aeronautical charts (new and old) to verify navigation fixes prior to departure, electronic data have traditionally been verified against paper products. If an amended chart is published for the procedure, do not use the database to conduct the operation.

There may be a slight difference between the navigation information portrayed on the chart and the primary navigation display heading. Differences of three degrees or less may result from equipment manufacturer’s application of magnetic variation and are operationally acceptable.

GPS receivers do not “fail down” to lower levels of service once the approach has been activated.

If only appears, use the LNAV minima if the rules under which the flight is operating allow changing the type of approach being flown after commencing the procedure. If the lateral integrity limit is exceeded on an LP approach, a missed approach is necessary, since the lateral alarm limit may not be reset while the approach is active.
Section 8  Terrain Awareness Warning System

8.1. TAWS Functions

The IDU provides TSO-C151b TAWS functionality. The following description is for a TAWS Class A, B, and C depending on aircraft configuration and external sensors switches. Warning functions provided by TAWS are as follows. See Section 2 System Overview for additional information on system warning, caution, and advisory alerts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aircraft Type</th>
<th>Airplane</th>
<th>Airplane</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TAWS Class</td>
<td>RG + F</td>
<td>RG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain Display</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLTA</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDA</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPWS Mode 1</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPWS Mode 2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPWS Mode 3</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPWS Mode 4</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPWS Mode 5</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500’ Call</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) **Terrain Display**: Terrain and obstacles on PFD and ND.

2) **Forward Looking Terrain Awareness (FLTA)**: Alerts to hazardous terrain or obstructions in front of the aircraft.

3) **Premature Descent Alert (PDA)**: Alerts when descending well below a normal approach glidepath on the final approach segment of an instrument approach procedure.

4) **Excessive Rate of Descent (GPWS Mode 1)**: Alerts when high rate of descent above terrain (i.e., descending into terrain).

5) **Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain (GPWS Mode 2)**: Alerts when hazardously high rate of change over rising terrain.

6) **Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach (GPWS Mode 3)**: Alerts when loss of altitude is detected immediately after takeoff or initiation of a missed approach.
7) **Flight into Terrain when not in Landing Configuration (GPWS Mode 4):** Alerts when descending into terrain without properly configuring the aircraft for landing.

8) **Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glideslope (GPWS Mode 5):** Alerts when deviating below glideslope on the ILS final approach segment.

9) **500 foot Wake-up Call:** Single audible callout when descending through 500 feet AGL.

8.2. **Terrain Display**

![Figure 8-1: PFD Terrain Display](image1)

![Figure 8-2: MFD Terrain Display](image2)
Display of terrain on the PFD and ND are described in Sections 3 Display Symbology and 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures where applicable.

8.3. **Forward Looking Terrain Alert Function**

![Figure 8-3: FLTA INHBT](image)

FLTA function uses the following to alert to hazardous terrain or obstructions within a search envelope in front of the aircraft:

1) Terrain database  
2) Obstruction database  
3) Airport and runway database  
4) Aircraft position  
5) Aircraft track  
6) Aircraft groundspeed  
7) Aircraft bank angle  
8) Aircraft altitude  
9) Aircraft vertical speed

8.3.1. **FLTA Modes**

FLTA mode is either slaved to the GPS/SBAS navigation mode or set automatically based upon default mode logic.

8.3.2. **GPS/SBAS Navigation Mode Slaving**

The EFIS performs TSO-C146c GPS/SBAS functions in addition to the TAWS functions. As a result, GPS/SBAS navigation mode is available as an input to the TAWS. The pilot may select an IFR procedure (approach, DP, or STAR), which automatically changes the GPS/SBAS navigation mode to enroute, terminal, departure, or IFR approach as appropriate. In addition, the pilot may select a VFR approach to any runway or user waypoint with a defined approach path. Selection of a VFR approach causes automatic GPS/SBAS navigation mode changes to enroute, terminal, or VFR approach as appropriate.

When slaved, the GPS/SBAS active runway threshold or user waypoint is the reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting. The advantage is the
8.3.3. Default FLTA Mode

If the default FLTA navigation mode is higher in precedence than the GPS/SBAS navigation mode, FLTA mode is slaved to the default FLTA navigation mode. These modes and order of precedence are:

1) **Departure Mode**: Enabled when in ground mode. Reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting and mode envelope definition is the last point at which the ground definition was satisfied (near the liftoff point). Departure mode ends upon climbing through 1500 feet above or traveling more than 6NM from the reference point.

   ![Figure 8-4: Default FLTA INHBT](image)

2) **Other Modes**: For other default FLTA modes, reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting and mode envelope is the nearest runway threshold or user waypoint with a defined approach bearing. TAWS continuously searches all runway thresholds at the nearest three airports to determine the nearest runway threshold. TAWS performs a search for the nearest three airports and nearest user waypoints with a defined approach bearing every 3NM of distance traveled. Modes are as follows:

   a) **Approach Mode**: When within 1900 feet and 5NM of the reference point.

   b) **Terminal Mode**: From 5NM to 15NM from the reference point when below an altitude that varies from 1900 feet (at 5NM) to 3500 feet (at 15NM) above the reference point.

   c) **Enroute Mode**: When not in any other mode.
8.3.4. FLTA Search Envelope

The FLTA search envelope is an area in front of and below the aircraft. If terrain or obstructions are found within the FLTA search envelope, a caution or warning is given. Dimensions of the search envelope depend upon TAWS type, FLTA mode, and aircraft track, groundspeed, bank angle, and vertical speed. Basic envelope parameters are as follows:

1) **TAWS Type**: Determines value of several parameters used to calculate the search envelope.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Envelope</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Level-Off Rule | Class A & B: 20% of vertical speed  
Class C: 10% of vertical speed  
Used for level-off leading. |
| Range | 60 seconds forward range search envelope.  
After calculations, GPS/SBAS HFOM is added to range. |
| Enroute Mode Level or Climbing Flight RTC | Class A & B: 700 feet  
Class C: 250 feet |
| Terminal Mode Level or Climbing Flight RTC | Class A & B: 350 feet  
Class C: 250 feet |
| Approach Mode Level or Climbing Flight RTC | 150 feet |
| Departure Mode Level or Climbing Flight RTC | 100 feet |
| Enroute Mode Descending RTC | Class A & B: 500 feet  
Class C: 200 feet |
| Terminal Mode Descending RTC | Class A & B: 300 feet  
Class C: 200 feet |
Table 8-2: FLTA Search Envelope

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Envelope</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approach Mode Descending RTC</td>
<td>100 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Departure Mode Descending RTC</td>
<td>100 feet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2) **Aircraft Track:** Terrain search envelope is aligned with aircraft track.

3) **Aircraft Groundspeed:** Used in conjunction with range parameter to determine the look-ahead distance and used with FLTA mode to determine search volume width as follows:

   a) **Enroute Mode:** Based on a 30° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft groundspeed. Maximum width is 0.5NM either side of track.

   b) **Terminal Mode:** Based on a 15° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft groundspeed. Maximum width is 0.5NM either side of track.

   c) **Approach Mode:** Based on a 10° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft groundspeed. Maximum width is 0.3NM either side of track.

   d) **Departure Mode:** Based on a 10° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft groundspeed. Maximum width is 0.3NM either side of track.

After calculating search volume width as described above, the GPS/SBAS HFOM is added to search volume width.
Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System

4) **Aircraft Bank Angle**: Used to expand the search volume in the direction of a turn and requires at least $10^\circ$ of bank. In addition, search volume expansion is delayed, so at $10^\circ$ of bank, the bank angle must be continuously held for 3.25 seconds. The amount of delay is reduced linearly with increased bank angle so at $30^\circ$ of bank there is no delay time. Delaying is intended to reduce nuisance-search volume expansions when experiencing bank angle excursions due to turbulence.

5) **Aircraft Vertical Speed**: Used to determine which RTC values should be used. At vertical speeds above -500 fpm, level and climbing flight RTC values are used. At vertical speeds less than or equal to -500 fpm, descending flight RTC values are used. In addition, vertical speed is used to increase the descending flight RTC value used by the system. The increase in descending flight RTC is based upon a three-second pilot reaction time is used and applied to the level-off rule parameters.
8.3.5. **FLTA Alerts and Automatic Popup**

When terrain or obstructions fall within the FLTA search envelope, an FLTA warning is generated. Terrain rendering is enabled when an FLTA warning is initiated or upgraded as follows:

1) On MFD, if TAWS Inhibit is not enabled.

![Figure 8-7: ND in Popup Mode](image)

In addition, when an FLTA warning is initiated or upgraded, an automatic popup mode is engaged and:

1) Switches to navigation display.
2) Switches to aircraft centered and heading up.
3) Panning disabled.
4) Scale set to:
   a) 10 NM (groundspeed > 200 knots);
   b) 5 NM (groundspeed <= 200 knots and groundspeed > 100 knots); or
   c) 2 NM (groundspeed <= 100 knots).

After the popup mode is engaged, the pilot may change any setting automatically changed by the popup mode. In addition, **RESET (L1)** appears for 20 seconds to reset the previous screen configuration with one button press. Popups only occur on IDU #2 with all TAWS classes configured and does not occur: TAWS inhibit is enabled.
8.4. Premature Descent Alert (PDA) Function

PDA function alerts when descending well below a normal approach glidepath on the final approach segment of an instrument approach procedure. PDA function uses the following:

1) GPS/SBAS navigation database
2) GPS/SBAS navigation mode
3) Aircraft position
4) Aircraft altitude

PDA function is armed when on the final approach segment of an IFR approach procedure and below the FAF crossing altitude. The alerting threshold for the PDA function is 0.5° less than the lower of:

1) a straight line from the FAF to approach runway threshold; or
2) 3°

When the aircraft descends below the threshold, a PDA warning is generated (Figure 8-8).

![Figure 8-8: PDA Alert Threshold](image-url)
8.5. **Excessive Rate of Descent (GPWS Mode 1)**

GPWS Mode 1 function uses aircraft vertical speed information and AGL altitude to alert when high rate of descent above terrain. GPWS Mode 1 has a caution and a warning threshold. When below the thresholds, a GPWS Mode 1 caution or warning is generated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sink Rate (fpm)</th>
<th>AGL Altitude (ft.)</th>
<th>Caution Threshold</th>
<th>Warning Threshold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 2360</td>
<td>125% × (Sink Rate – 1416)</td>
<td>SINK RATE</td>
<td>PULL UP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2360 to 4900</td>
<td>Lesser of:</td>
<td>SINK RATE</td>
<td>PULL UP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2450, or,</td>
<td>50% × (Sink Rate)</td>
<td>66% × (Caution Threshold)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Figure 8-9: Fixed Wing GPWS Mode 1](image)

8.6. **Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain (GPWS Mode 2)**

GPWS Mode 2 function is present in Class A TAWS and uses filtered AGL rate and AGL altitude to alert when hazardously high rate of change over rising terrain. AGL rate filtering is based upon a 10-second sampling time.

There are two Mode 2 envelopes: Mode 2A which is active when not in landing configuration, and Mode 2B which is active when in landing configuration. Envelope selection is determined as follows.
Table 8-4: GPWS Mode 2 Envelopes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Mode 2A</th>
<th>Mode 2B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Retractable gear with defined landing flaps position</td>
<td>Flaps NOT in landing configuration</td>
<td>Flaps in landing configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retractable gear</td>
<td>Landing gear UP</td>
<td>Landing gear DOWN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed gear with defined landing flaps position</td>
<td>Flaps NOT in landing configuration</td>
<td>Flaps in landing configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed gear</td>
<td>AGL Altitude &gt; 500 ft or Airspeed &gt; $V_{FE}$</td>
<td>AGL Altitude ≤ 500 ft or Airspeed ≤ $V_{FE}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When GPWS Mode 2 envelope is pierced, a GPWS Mode 2 caution or warning is generated.

Table 8-5: GPWS Mode 2A Envelopes (NOT in Landing Configuration)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AGL Rate (fpm)</th>
<th>AGL Altitude (ft.)</th>
<th>Caution Threshold</th>
<th>Warning Threshold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 3900</td>
<td></td>
<td>TERRAIN</td>
<td>PULL UP PULL UP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 3900</td>
<td></td>
<td>80% × (AGL Rate – 2000)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1520 + 15% of the lesser of:

- Airspeed (KIAS)
- AGL Rate (fpm)

| < 220 | 6000 |
| 220 to 300 | 6000 + 50 × (Airspeed – 220) |
| > 300 | 10,000 |

Or AGL Rate

Table 8-6: GPWS Mode 2B Envelopes (Landing Configuration)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AGL Altitude (ft.)</th>
<th>Caution Threshold</th>
<th>Warning Threshold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesser of: 800 or 80% × (AGL Rate – 2000)</td>
<td>TERRAIN TERRAIN</td>
<td>PULL UP PULL UP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

66% × (Caution Threshold)
8.7. Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach (GPWS Mode 3)

GPWS Mode 3 function uses aircraft vertical speed information and AGL altitude to alert when sink rate is detected immediately after takeoff or initiation of a missed approach. GPWS Mode 3 is armed by either being in ground mode or on the first leg of a missed approach procedure (as determined by the GPS/SBAS) with distance to the active runway threshold increasing. GPWS Mode 3 is disarmed upon climbing through 700 feet AGL traveling more than 6 NM from the last point at which the ground definition was satisfied (this is near the liftoff point), or transitioning to the second leg of a missed approach procedure. GPWS Mode 3 has a caution threshold based upon height above terrain and vertical speed. When below the caution threshold (AGL threshold = 1.4 x sink rate), a GPWS Mode 3 caution is generated.

Figure 8-11: GPWS Mode 3 Caution (Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach)
8.8. Flight into Terrain when not in Landing Configuration (GPWS Mode 4)

GPWS Mode 4 function is present in Class A TAWS and uses aircraft speed information and AGL altitude to alert when descending into terrain without properly configuring the aircraft for landing. There are two Mode 4 envelopes: Mode 4A which gives cautions when landing gear is in other than landing configuration, and Mode 4B which gives cautions when landing gear or flaps are in other than landing configuration. Applicability of Mode 4 envelopes to aircraft types are as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Mode 4A</th>
<th>Mode 4B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Retractable gear with defined landing flaps position</td>
<td>Landing gear up</td>
<td>Landing gear up or flaps not in landing configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retractable gear</td>
<td>Landing gear up</td>
<td>Landing gear up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed gear with defined landing flaps position</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>Flaps not in landing configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed gear</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mode 4 alerting criteria requires the Mode 4 envelope be entered from above, so changing aircraft configuration while within a Mode 4 envelope does not generate an alert. Mode 4 envelopes consists of low-speed and high-speed regions.
### Table 8-8: GPWS Mode 4 Alerting Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Caution Flag</th>
<th>Single Audible Alert</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4A</td>
<td>Low-Speed</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>“Too Low Gear”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High-Speed</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>“Too Low Terrain”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4B</td>
<td>Low-Speed</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>Landing gear up: “Too Low Gear”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Landing gear down: “Too Low Flaps”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High-Speed</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>“Too Low Terrain”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 8-9: GPWS Mode 4 Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Speed (KIAS)</th>
<th>AGL Altitude (ft.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4A</td>
<td>Low-Speed</td>
<td>&lt; 182.5</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High-Speed</td>
<td>≥ 182.5</td>
<td>Lesser of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>800 or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8 × (KIAS − 120)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4B</td>
<td>Low-Speed</td>
<td>&lt; 138.75</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High-Speed</td>
<td>≥ 138.75</td>
<td>Lesser of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>800 or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8 × (KIAS − 120)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Figure 8-13: Fixed Wing GPWS Mode 4

8.9. **Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glideslope (GPWS Mode 5)**

GPWS Mode 5 function uses ILS glideslope deviation information and AGL altitude to alert when excessive downward glideslope deviation is detected on the final approach segment of an ILS approach. GPWS Mode 5 is armed...
when a valid glideslope signal is being received, AND the aircraft is below 1000’ AGL.

GPWS Mode 5 has a caution and a warning threshold. When below a threshold, a GPWS Mode 5 warning is generated. The curve compares glideslope deviation to AGL altitude as follows. (Reference: RTCA/DO-161A Mode 5 for TAWS)

### Table 8-10: GPWS Mode 5 Envelopes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Caution Threshold</th>
<th>Warning Threshold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Greater of:</td>
<td>Greater of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 + 1.4% ×</td>
<td>2 + 1% ×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(150 – AGL Altitude)</td>
<td>(150 – AGL Altitude)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dots or 1.3 Dots</td>
<td>Dots or 2 Dots</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Figure 8-14: Fixed Wing GPWS Mode 5](image)

### Figure 8-14: Fixed Wing GPWS Mode 5

8.10. **500-Foot Wake-Up Call**

This function is present in all TAWS classes. The **500-foot** function includes an arming deadband of **500 feet** to prevent nuisance warnings during low altitude operations. Thus, the aircraft must climb above **1000 feet** AGL to arm the **500-foot** function and generate a **500-foot** annunciation.
8.11. External Sensors and Switches

TAWS requires a variety of inputs from external sensors and switches to perform its functions as follows:

1) **GPS/SBAS Receiver.** Source of aircraft position, geodetic height, horizontal figure of merit (HFOM), vertical figure of merit (VFOM), loss of integrity (LOI), and loss of navigation (LON). Connects directly to the EFIS IDU.

2) **Air Data Computer (ADC).** Source of barometric altitude, outside air temperature, and vertical speed. Connects directly to the IDU.

3) **ILS Receiver.** Glideslope receiver is the source of glideslope deviation.

4) **Radar Altimeter (RA).** Source for radar altitude.

5) **Gear Position Sensors.** As configured in the system limits, landing gear position discretes are the source.

6) **Flap Position Sensor.** As configured in the system limits, flap position discrete is the source.

7) **TAWS Inhibit Switch.** As configured in the system limits, used for manual inhibiting of TAWS alerting functions. Gives an indication of actuation (e.g., toggle/rocker or pushbutton with indicator light and [TAWS INHBT](#) in lower left corner of PFI area of PFD).

8) **Audio Mute Switch.** Momentarily activated to silence active audible alerts. It is connected directly to the IDU.

9) **Glideslope Deactivate Switch.** As configured in the system limits, momentarily activated to inhibit GPWS Mode 5 function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TAWS Class</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B or C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td>RG+F</td>
<td>RG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS/SBAS</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gear Position Sensor</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAWS Inhibit Switch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Cancel Switch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ILS</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radar Altimeter</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flap Position Sensor</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glideslope Deactivate Switch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Table 8-11: TAWS External Sensors and Switches
8.12. TAWS Basic Parameter Determination

Fundamental parameters used for TAWS functions are as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft position, groundspeed, and track</td>
<td>GPS/SBAS</td>
<td>HFOM must be less than or equal to the greater of 0.3 NM or the Horizontal alert limit (HAL) for the mode of flight.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| MSL Altitude                       | GPS/SBAS   | Geodetic Height converted to MSL with the current EGM database. To be considered valid for use as MSL altitude, VFOM must be less than or equal to 106 feet. Secondary source of MSL altitude is barometric altitude from an air data computer. Barometric altitude is based upon a barometric setting in the following order of preference: 1) If either the pilot or co-pilot system is operating in QNH mode, the QNH barometric setting is used (on-side barometric setting preferred); or 2) If GPS/SBAS geodetic height has been valid within the last 30 minutes, a barometric setting derived from the GPS/SBAS geodetic height is used. If neither of the above conditions are met, MSL altitude is marked as invalid. When a reporting station elevation is determined and outside air temperature is valid, a temperature correction is applied. TAWS uses the lower of the barometric altitude or the temperature-corrected altitude. In the case of QNH-mode barometric
Table 8-12: Airplane TAWS Basic Parameters Determination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>setting, reporting station elevation</td>
<td></td>
<td>is derived from waypoint or active runway elevations in the active flight plan using the following logic:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) If the aircraft is in <strong>TERMINAL</strong>, <strong>DEPARTURE</strong>, <strong>IFR APPROACH</strong>, or <strong>VFR APPROACH</strong> mode and an active runway exists, reporting station elevation is the elevation of the active runway threshold.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) Otherwise, if the aircraft is in <strong>TERMINAL</strong> mode, reporting station elevation is the elevation of the airport causing <strong>TERMINAL</strong> mode.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) In <strong>ENROUTE</strong> mode, no reporting station elevation is determined.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the case of GPS/SBAS geodetic height-based barometric setting, reporting station elevation is the GPS MSL altitude reported at the time the barometric setting was determined (see Section 3 Display Symbology).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain Data</td>
<td>Terrain Database</td>
<td>To be considered valid, the following must apply:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1) Aircraft position is valid;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) Aircraft position is within the boundaries of the terrain database; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3) Terrain database is not corrupt as determined by built-in test at system initialization and during runtime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstacle Data</td>
<td>Obstacle Database</td>
<td>To be considered valid, the following must apply:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 8-12: Airplane TAWS Basic Parameters Determination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AGL Altitude</td>
<td>Radar Altitude</td>
<td>1) Aircraft position is valid; 2) Aircraft position is within the boundaries of the obstacle database; and 3) Obstacle database is not corrupt as determined by built-in test at system initialization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical Speed</td>
<td>Instantaneous vertical speed</td>
<td>IVSI values come from barometric vertical speed from an ADC “quickened” with vertical acceleration from an AHRS. Secondary source for vertical speed is barometric vertical speed from an ADC. The tertiary source for vertical speed is GPS/SBAS vertical speed providing the VFOM is less than or equal to 106 feet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain Closure Rate</td>
<td>Smoothed first derivative of AGL Altitude</td>
<td>Due to multiple sources for altitude, there are multiple sources for terrain closure rate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Runway/Reference point location</td>
<td>EFIS navigation database</td>
<td>To be considered valid, the following must apply: 1) Aircraft position is valid; 2) Aircraft position is within the boundaries of the navigation database; and 3) Navigation database is not determined corrupt by built-in test at system initialization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 8.13. TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Normal Operation)

The following automatic inhibit functions occur during normal TAWS operation to prevent nuisance warnings:

1) FLTA function is automatically inhibited when in terminal, departure, IFR approach, or VFR approach modes and within 2NM and 1900’ of the reference point.
2) PDA function is automatically inhibited when within 2NM and 1900’ of the approach runway threshold.

3) GPWS Modes 1 through 4 are automatically inhibited when below 50 feet AGL (radar altimeter AGL altitude) or below 100 feet AGL (terrain database AGL altitude).

4) GPWS Mode 5 is inhibited below 200’ AGL. This form of automatic inhibit remains active until the aircraft climbs above 1000’ AGL and prevents nuisance alarms on missed approach when the glideslope receiver detects glideslope sidelobes.

### 8.13.1. TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Abnormal Operation)

The following automatic inhibit functions occur during the specified abnormal operations. System sensor failures, non-installation of optional sensors, database failures, and combinations thereof affect TAWS as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sensor</th>
<th>Parameters Lost</th>
<th>Terrain Displaced</th>
<th>FLTA</th>
<th>PDA</th>
<th>GPWS Mode</th>
<th>500’ Wake-Up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GPS/SBAS (H)</td>
<td>AC Position</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>1 2 3 4 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TD</td>
<td>Terrain Elev.</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ILS</td>
<td>Glide-slope Dev.</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSL</td>
<td>MSL Altitude</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8-13: TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions
### Table 8-13: TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sensor</th>
<th>Parameters Lost</th>
<th>Terrain Displaced</th>
<th>FLTA</th>
<th>PDA</th>
<th>GPWS Mode</th>
<th>500’ Wake-Up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GPS/SBAS (H) + RADLT</td>
<td>AC Position, AGL Altitude</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS/SBAS (V) + ADC + RADLT</td>
<td>MSL Altitude, VSI</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS/SBAS (V) + ADC + RADLT</td>
<td>MSL Altitude, VSI, AGL ALT</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS/SBAS (V) + ADC + RADLT</td>
<td>MSL Altitude, VSI, AGL ALT</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
<td>Inhibit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1) Combinations listed give the minimum combinations with the worst consequences. Many other combinations are possible, but their effects are subsumed within the combinations listed.

2) GPS/SBAS (H) = HFOM > max (0.3NM, HAL). Indication is loss of terrain display on PFD and ND.

3) GPS/SBAS (V) = VFOM > 106°.

4) GPS/SBAS = GPS/SBAS (H) + GPS/SBAS (V). Indication is loss of terrain display on PFD and ND.
5) TD = Terrain Data invalid. This is due to being beyond the database boundaries or database corruption.

6) ADC = Air Data Computer. Indication is ADC1 FAIL, ADC2 FAIL, or ADC1/2 FAIL flag, or red Xs indicating a single ADC failure.

7) RADALT = Radar Altimeter. Indication is lack of radar altimeter source indication on radar altimeter display.

8) ILS = ILS glideslope deviation. Indication is lack of glideslope needles.

9) MSL = MSL altitude invalid. Indication is PLT1 TAWS, PLT2 TAWS, PLT3 TAWS, or PLT4 TAWS in the absence of other failures.

8.13.2. TAWS Manual Inhibit Functions

The pilot may select the following manual inhibit functions:

1) Terrain display function may be inhibited using EFIS soft menu declutter control.

2) All TAWS alerting functions (including popup functionality) are inhibited with the external TAWS inhibit switch, which does not affect the terrain display function, including display of FLTA warning (red) and caution (amber [yellow]) flags on the ND.

3) GPWS Mode 5 is manually inhibited with the glideslope cancel switch when below 1000’ AGL. GPWS Mode 5 manual inhibit automatically resets by ascending above 1000’AGL.

8.14. TAWS Selections on PFD

PFD Declutter menu includes three option possibilities for TAWS:

1) SVS TAWS

2) SVS BASIC

3) None

The following figures show all possible scenarios including “None” where the aircraft pierces the TAWS FLTA terrain envelope, and SVS TAWS is enabled for the safest possible warning alert condition.
TAWS FLTA Caution Terrain: Amber (Yellow)
TAWS FLTA Caution Warning: Red
Figure 8-17: PFD SVS TAWS Option and Obstructions

Obstruction within TAWS FLTA Caution envelope with voice alert “Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction.” Obstruction symbols flash.

Figure 8-18: PFD Obstruction Caution
Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope with voice alert “Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction.” Obstruction symbols flash.

Figure 8-19: PFD Obstruction Warning
9.1. Appendix

This section contains a variety of useful information not found elsewhere in the document and includes operating tips, system specifications, feedback forms, and environmental requirements.

9.2. Operating Tips

With the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS installed and certified in all categories of certified aircraft, numerous tips and suggestions are available for obtaining the maximum performance and benefit from this system. Additional operating tips are available with future releases of this publication.

9.3. Domestic or International Flight Planning

Due to the differences in every aircraft avionics suite installation, the pilot to determine what equipment code is applicable for domestic or international flight plans. The aircraft operator must determine which certifications pertain to them. Visit the FAA website, www.faa.gov, for flight plan guidance for both domestic and international filers, as well as, information and documentation regarding FAA, ICAO, and Flight Services agreements and procedures.

9.4. Descent Planning

Instead of performing conventional time/speed/distance/descent-rate calculations, use the waypoint symbol for descent planning. Simply maintain the cruise altitude until the “X” at the bottom of the waypoint symbol is 2-3 degrees below the horizon (as indicated by the pitch scale) then begin a 2-3 degree descent. Maintain the correct descent angle by keeping the flight path marker positioned on the waypoint “X” symbol. Following the skyway boxes assures the VNAV descent angle is maintained.

9.5. Terrain Clearance

Use the flight path marker to evaluate climb performance for terrain clearance. If climbing at the best climb speed to clear terrain and the flight path marker is overlaying the terrain, the climb rate is insufficient. Either the course or climb rate must be altered to adequately clear the terrain. If the flight path marker is well clear of the terrain (overlaying blue sky), the climb is sufficient for the present time, and no further action is necessary until level off.
9.6. Departure Airport Information

On startup, all information for the departure airport is readily available. The altimeter is automatically set to the nearest IFR runway touchdown zone elevation (if Baro Autosetting on Startup is enabled in EFIS limits). Press NRST (R3) to reveal the nearest airports when highlighted where all important data such as elevation, frequencies, and runway lengths are displayed.

9.7. Unique Names for Flight Plans

Multiple routes between the same airport pairs are numbered automatically (KCEW-KDHN) [0], (KCEW-KDHN) [1], etc.). The work-around is to apply this easily remembered differentiation. If a route is routinely flown from one airport to another but different routing is necessary due to weather, hot MOA areas, etc., up to 10 different flight plans may be created for the same destination.

As an example for departing Sikes on a northern routing (KCEWN) or a southern routing (KCEWS), create two different user waypoints at the departure airport named KCEWN and KCEWS followed by different routing to clear whatever creates the necessity for specific routing, e.g. a MOA.

9.8. Altimeter Settings

Use caution when setting the altimeter and inadvertently changing the transition level. If this is reset to a lower than normal altitude, CHK BARO may appear due to the altimeter setting not on 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar.

9.9. Warnings, Cautions, and Advisories

Review Section 2 System Overview for the conditions precisely defining scenarios for various time-critical warning alerts, warning alerts, master visual and audio alerts, time-critical caution alerts and advisory alerts, as they appear including the conditions and time delay when applicable.

9.10. Magnetic vs. True North Modes of Operation

There are two modes for the AHRS:

1) Slaved mode (i.e., compass rose stabilized by Earth’s magnetic flux horizontal field) is the normal mode. It works well over most of the surface of the earth (i.e., areas with a horizontal field of 5000nT or above, which includes about 2/3\textsuperscript{rd}s of Canadian NDA). ADAHRS senses magnetic flux with a 3D magnetometer. Performance in small
horizontal fields is installation dependent as variable magnetic disturbances from the aircraft may begin to predominate.

2) Free or “DG” mode (i.e., compass rose not stabilized by the Earth’s magnetic flux horizontal field and subject to drift) is used in areas of magnetic disturbances (oilrigs, MRI machines, etc.) or in areas where the horizontal field is too weak. In Free/”DG” mode, heading no longer corrects towards Earth’s magnetic flux horizontal field, and the pilot may “slew” the heading solution.

![Figure 9-1: US/UK World Magnetic Model](image)

There are two modes for the EFIS:

1) Magnetic North mode: Heading from AHRS (whether slaved or Free/”DG”) is used as-is and is expected to reflect magnetic north. GPS track is converted from true north-referenced to magnetic north-referenced with a magnetic variation database. PFD scenes and compass rose symbols are aligned with magnetic north. Wind is displayed referenced to magnetic north.

2) True North mode: GPS track is used as-is and reflects true north. When AHRS is in slaved mode, heading from AHRS is converted from magnetic north-referenced to true north-referenced using a magnetic variation database. When AHRS is in Free/”DG” mode, heading from the AHRS is used as-is and is expected to reflect true north. PFD scenes and compass rose symbols are aligned with true north. Wind is displayed referenced to true north.
NOTE:

Designating magnetic north vs. true north mode is critical since it determines how the inputs are used, i.e., the relationship between GPS track and ADAHRS heading. Mixing things up in Free/“DG” mode (i.e., slewing the compass rose to match magnetic north when in true north mode and vice-versa) may result in large errors in wind calculations and GPS track/flight path marker displays.

9.11. Altitude Miscompare Threshold

The altitude miscompare threshold is based upon allowable altitude error. There are two components to allowable altitude error, instrument error and installed system error. Allowable instrument error is based upon the values of SAE AS8002A Table 1 as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Altitude</th>
<th>Allowed Error</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sea Level</td>
<td>25’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000’</td>
<td>25’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,000’</td>
<td>25’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,000’</td>
<td>25’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4,000’</td>
<td>25’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,000’</td>
<td>25’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8,000’</td>
<td>30’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11,000’</td>
<td>35’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14,000’</td>
<td>40’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17,000’</td>
<td>45’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20,000’</td>
<td>50’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30,000’</td>
<td>75’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40,000’</td>
<td>100’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50,000’</td>
<td>125’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Allowable installed system error is added on top of instrument error and these values are derived from the regulations as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regulation</th>
<th>Allowed Error</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14 CFR § 23.1325</td>
<td>At sea level, the greater of 30’ or 30% of the calibrated airspeed in knots. This increases proportionally to SAE AS8002A Table 1 at higher altitudes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 CFR § 25.1325</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
An allowable altitude error is computed for each compared value and added together to create the altitude miscompare threshold. This accommodates for the values deviating in different directions.

Worked example for a calibrated airspeed of 100 knots and comparing a first altitude of 3,490’ with a second altitude of 3,510’:

1) Calculate allowable instrument error based upon altitudes:
   Allowable Instrument Error #1 = 50’
   Allowable Instrument Error #2 = 50’

2) Calculate allowable installed system error based upon altitudes and calibrated airspeed:
   Allowable Installed System Error #1 = 30’
   Allowable Installed System Error #2 = 30’

3) Calculate altitude miscompare threshold based upon sum of above allowable errors:
   Altitude Miscompare Threshold = 160’

9.12. Airspeed Miscompare Threshold

Airspeed miscompare threshold is based upon allowable airspeed error. There are two components to allowable airspeed error, instrument error and installed system error. Allowable instrument error is based upon the values of SAE AS8002A Table 3 as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Calibrated Airspeed</th>
<th>Allowed Error</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50 knots</td>
<td>5 knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 knots</td>
<td>3 knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 knots</td>
<td>2 knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120 knots</td>
<td>2 knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 knots</td>
<td>2 knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 knots</td>
<td>2 knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250 knots</td>
<td>2.4 knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300 knots</td>
<td>2.8 knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350 knots</td>
<td>3.2 knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400 knots</td>
<td>3.6 knots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450 knots</td>
<td>4 knots</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Allowable installed system error is added on top of instrument. Error and these values are derived from the regulations as follows.
Table 9-4: Airspeed Regulatory Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regulation</th>
<th>Allowed Error</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14 CFR § 23.1323</td>
<td>Starting from (1.3 × (V_S))): Greater of 5 knots or 3%. Do not perform a comparison if either value is below (1.3 × (V_S)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 CFR § 25.1323</td>
<td>Starting from (1.23 × (VSR)): Greater of 5 knots or 3%. Do not perform a comparison if either value is below (1.23 × (V_{SR})). System uses (V_S) as a substitute for (V_{SR}).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An allowable airspeed error is computed for each compared value and added together to create the airspeed miscompare threshold and accommodates for the values deviating in different directions.

9.13. Jeppesen Sanderson NavData® Chart Compatibility

As GPS navigation, flight management systems, computer flight maps, and computer flight planning systems have gained acceptance, avionics companies and software developers have added more features. Even with the many systems available today, paper enroute, departure, arrival, and approach charts are still required and necessary for flight. Avionics systems, flight planning, computer mapping systems, and associated databases do not provide all of the navigation information needed to conduct a legal and safe flight. They are not a substitute for current aeronautical charts.

See www.Jeppesen.com for the latest information on coding instrument procedures, naming conventions, altitudes within the database, and aeronautical information compatibility.

9.14. ARINC 424 Path-Terminator Leg Types


9.15. Data Logging and Retrieval

The EFIS logs all data associated with a flight, including all flight instrument and navigation data, which may be downloaded for review after flight. Data from the last 5 flights or 20 hours are logged at a one-second interval.

Data logging files contain recordings of flight and engine parameters of up to five hours each from the previous five system operations. During system operation, flight and engine parameters are recorded every one second.
Each time the parameters are recorded, a Zulu time stamp followed by three lines of comma delimited ASCII text data are written where the first line contains flight parameters and, the second line contains engine parameters.

With IDU powered off, open USB door, and insert USB flash drive. Power up and select Download LOG Files to create a “log” directory on the USB flash drive and copy the data logging files into the directory.

**CAUTION:**

Always install a valid USB flash drive in the IDU prior to activating any ground maintenance function to avoid erroneous failure indications or corruption of the IDU.

### 9.15.1. Delete Log Files

1) If there are problems updating a navigation database or application software due to an excessively large log file, select “Delete Log Files” to delete all log files in the log directory.

Files named “LOG00.dat” thru “LOG04.DAT” and “MSGLOG.DAT” are deleted. This does not affect operations of the EFIS, as the EFIS generates new “LOG00.DAT” and “MSGLOG.DAT” files once a flight has started.

2) Press any button on the IDU or push ⊂ to return to the ground maintenance menu.

### 9.15.2. Logged Flags and Custom CAS Messages

Flags and custom CAS messages are logged in memory to a file named “caslog00.csv” (*.csv files may be opened in Microsoft Excel or similar spreadsheet software). In addition, data from the previous four flights are saved in files “caslog01.csv” through “caslog04.csv.” Upon system start, the existing “caslog00.csv” through “caslog03.csv” files are renamed “caslog01.csv” through “caslog04.csv,” and “caslog00.csv” is opened for active logging.

The first line of the log files contains column headings related to the flag’s text (for standard warning functions) or the “CAS Log File Text” parameter (for custom CAS messages). All standard warning functions are logged. Only custom CAS messages with valid “CAS Log File Text” parameters (i.e., not an empty string) are logged. Within the data fields of the log file, values are written as follows.
Table 9-5: Log File Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADVISORY</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUTION</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WARNING</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.16. Routes and Waypoints

9.16.1. VFR Flight Planning

The navigation database includes VFR waypoints, which consist of five digits beginning with “VP.” These may be found on VFR charts and should be loaded in the FMS prior to flight to ensure they are available in the database, and info checked for proper location.

Figure 9-2: VFR Waypoint

9.16.2. Download Routes and User Waypoints

1) Select Download Routes and User Waypoints from the GMF to download all routes and user waypoints stored in the IDU to the USB flash drive. This option is useful for fleet operations where multiple aircraft fly the same routes.

2) Routes are stored on USB flash drive as NAME1-NAME2.RTE where NAME1 is the 1- to 5-character designation of the origin waypoint and NAME2 is the 1 to 5-character designation of the destination waypoint. User waypoints are stored on the USB flash drive as “USER.DAT.”

9.16.3. Upload Routes and User Waypoints

To copy all routes and user waypoints from a USB flash drive to the IDU, select Upload Routes and User Waypoints from GMF. Use this option in conjunction with the “Download Routes and User Waypoints” option to upload the same routes and user waypoints in multiple aircraft.
9.16.4. Delete Routes and User Waypoints

When corrupted routes cause the IDU to continually reboot, select “Delete Routes” on the Ground Maintenance page to remove all routes and the user waypoint file (USER.DAT) from the IDU.

9.16.5. EFIS Training Tool (ETT)

See the Installation and User Guide distributed with the ETT install files for directions to install and use the EFIS Training Tool.

Use the ETT to create routes and user waypoints to save and upload into the aircraft mounted IDUs. When uploading a saved flight plan (route) into an aircraft mounted IDU, the following rules apply:

3) Either upload flight plan (route) into each IDU to ensure flight plan (route) is saved in the route directory (all other displays); Or

4) Upload flight plan (route) into one display while in the ground mode. When in flight mode, activate that flight plan, and on any other display, view active flight plan and press **SAVE (L1)** to save flight plan in the route directory. This action will save the new uploaded flight plan (route) in all other displays.

**NOTE:**

In a two-sided system, crossfill must be enabled to save flight plan to all other displays on each side of the system.

The ETT has a bezel with simulated buttons and encoders responsive to mouse and keyboard messages. Bezel graphics are derived from actual bezel design data, and the ETT presents an active display with 1:1 pixel correspondence to an actual IDU display. The audio output capability for the ETT matches the audio functionality in the actual IDU. This training tool simulates the functionalities of the IDU, which begins flight in Reno, Nevada at approximately 8000’ MSL. If different ETT startup conditions are required, they may be edited.

Flight plans may be created (on the PFD or MFD), stored, and activated in the same manner as on the EFIS displays installed in the aircraft. This allows for moving the start point to anywhere in the world where loaded NavData® is present for practicing published procedures. As with the demonstrator program, the aircraft begins flying at approximately 8000’ MSL (unless the simulate.ini program is loaded) intercepting the first leg at a 45° angle.
9.17. USB Flash Drive Memory Limitations

When powering up the IDU with a USB flash drive inserted and “Error: No updater files found on USB drive” displays, the USB flash drive is likely not acceptable for loading or transferring data.

1) Ensure the USB flash drive with required files is properly connected.
2) Try again after reboot.
3) Press any button to continue.
4) Try a different USB flash drive.

NOTE:

USB flash drive must be formatted as FAT16 or FAT32.
If the flash drive is not recognized, try another source.

9.18. Certification Basis

The following TSOs are considered applicable to the IDU-680 (depending upon the features of the installed software).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Document Number</th>
<th>Document Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARINC 429-16</td>
<td>Mark 33 Digital Information Transfer System (DITS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARINC 735A-1</td>
<td>Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIA-232D</td>
<td>Interface between Data Terminal Equipment and Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIA-422A</td>
<td>Electrical Characteristics of Balanced Voltage Digital Interface Circuits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAA AC 23.1311-1B</td>
<td>Installation of Electronic Display in Part 23 Airplanes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTCA/DO-155</td>
<td>Minimum Performance Standards - Airborne Low-Range Radio Altimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTCA/DO-229D</td>
<td>Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Global Positioning System/Wide Area Augmentation System Airborne Equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAE AS396B</td>
<td>Bank and Pitch Instruments (Indicating Stabilized Type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Number</td>
<td>Document Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAE AS8002A</td>
<td>Air Data Computer - Minimum Performance Standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO-C4c</td>
<td>Bank and Pitch Instruments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO-C87</td>
<td>Airborne Low-Range Radio Altimeter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO-C106</td>
<td>Air Data Computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO-C151b</td>
<td>Terrain Awareness and Warning System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO-C113</td>
<td>Airborne Multipurpose Electronic Displays SAE AS8034</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO-C52b</td>
<td>Flight Director Equipment SAE AS8008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSO-C146a</td>
<td>Stand-Alone airborne navigation equipment using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Airplane Aerodynamics and Performance, Lan and Roskam, 1981.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9.19. Environmental Requirements

While the IDU-680 meets the following RTCA/DO-160F requirements, Genesys Aerosystems claims the following:

1) The coldest storage temperature is -55°C.

2) Coldest condition in which the units can be powered up is -40°C. It will take at least 4 minutes to warm up with the internal heater circuit operating.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sec.</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Cat.</th>
<th>Test Category Description</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>Temperature and Altitude</td>
<td>F2</td>
<td>Equipment intended for installation in non-pressurized and non-controlled temperature location in an aircraft that is operated at altitudes up to 55,000 ft. (16,800 m) MSL. Operating Low Temp: -55 deg C Operating High temp: +70 deg C Ground Survival Low Temp: -55 deg C Ground Survival High Temp: +85 deg C Altitude: +55,000 feet</td>
<td>+75°C for Short-Time Operating High Temp. Cat. V (30 minutes) for loss of cooling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec.</td>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>Cat.</td>
<td>Test Category Description</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>Temperature Variation</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Equipment in a non-temperature-controlled or partially temperature controlled internal section of the aircraft.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>Humidity</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Equipment intended for installation in civil aircraft, non-civil transport aircraft and other classes, installed under conditions in which a more severe humidity environment than standard conditions may be encountered.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>Operational Shocks &amp; Crash Safety</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Equipment generally installed in fixed-wing aircraft or helicopters and tested for standard operational shock and crash safety.</td>
<td>Aircraft Type 5, Test Type R for Crash Safety Sustained Test</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 8.0  | Vibration                         | H + R + U | H – Demonstrates performance at high-level, short duration transient vibration levels  
R - (Fixed-Wing) Demonstrates performance at higher, robust vibration levels and after long term vibration exposure.  
U - (Helicopter w/Unknown Frequencies) Demonstrates performance at higher vibration levels and after long term vibration exposure for fuselage and instrument panel equipment when the specific rotor frequencies are unknown. | Cat. H, curve R  
Cat. R, curves B, B1  
Cat. U, curve G |
<p>| 9.0  | Explosive Atmosphere             | X    | Not Applicable                                                                            |       |
| 10.0 | Waterproofness                    | W    | Equipment is installed in locations where it may be subjected to falling water, such as condensation | Drip proof test |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sec.</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Cat.</th>
<th>Test Category Description</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>Fluids Susceptibility</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>Sand and Dust Susceptibility</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Equipment is installed in locations subject to blowing sand and dust.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>Fungus Resistance</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Demonstrate whether equipment material is adversely affected by fungi growth.</td>
<td>By Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>Salt Fog</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Equipment is subjected to a corrosive atmosphere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>Magnetic Effect</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>Magnetic deflection distance less than 0.3m.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>Power Input</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>Equipment intended for use on aircraft DC electrical systems where the DC supply has a battery whose capacity is small compared with the capacity of the DC generators.</td>
<td>200 ms power interruption capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.0</td>
<td>Voltage Spike</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Equipment intended primarily for installation where a high degree of protection against damage by voltage spikes is required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.0</td>
<td>Audio Frequency Conducted Susceptibility- Power Inputs</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>Equipment intended for use on aircraft DC electrical systems where the DC supply may not have a battery of significant capacity floating on the dc bus at all times.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.0</td>
<td>Induced Signal Susceptibility</td>
<td>ZC</td>
<td>Equipment intended primarily for operation in systems where interference-free operation is required on aircraft whose primary power is constant frequency or DC.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>Radio Frequency Susceptibility (Radiated and Conducted)</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Equipment and interconnecting wiring installed in severe electromagnetic environments and to show</td>
<td>Radiated: K Minimum level at all frequencies to be 100V/m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec.</td>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>Cat.</td>
<td>Test Category Description</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>compliance with the interim HIRF rules.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.0</td>
<td>Emission of Radio Frequency Energy</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Equipment in areas where apertures are EM significant but not in direct view of aircraft antennas, such as passenger cabin or cockpit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.0</td>
<td>Lightning Induced Transient Susceptibility</td>
<td>A3J3 3</td>
<td>Equipment interconnected with wiring installed within any airframe or airframe section when structural resistance is also a significant source of induced transients, (i.e., carbon fiber composite structures). Level 3 designates equipment and interconnecting wiring installed in a moderately exposed environment.</td>
<td>Level 4 for MSU and OAT Probe pins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.0</td>
<td>Lightning Direct Effects</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>Icing</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>Electrostatic Discharge (ESD)</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Electronic equipment that is installed, repaired, or operated in an aerospace environment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.0</td>
<td>Fire, Flammability</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Non-metallic equipment, component parts, sub-assemblies installed in pressurized or non-pressurized zones and non-fire zones with largest dimension greater than 50 mm.</td>
<td>By Analysis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Traffic

T 1. Traffic Symbology

Figure T-1: Traffic Symbology

T 1.1. Traffic Display Definitions

1) Resolution Advisory (RA): Traffic with a dangerous closest point of approach and generates climb or descent commands as defined by internal TCAS-II sensor logic.
2) Traffic Advisory (TA): Traffic with a dangerous closest point of approach as defined by internal traffic sensor logic.

3) Proximate Advisory (PA): Traffic within 6 NM and ±1200 feet from ownship that is not a RA or TA.

4) Other Traffic (OT): Traffic beyond 6 NM or ±1200 feet from ownship that is not a RA or TA.

### T 1.2. Traffic Rendering Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type Traffic</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OT and PA Traffic</td>
<td>Beyond 6 NM</td>
<td>Not displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCAS-I, TCAS-II, TAS or TIS-A Sensor</td>
<td>Within 200’ of ground</td>
<td>Not displayed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table T-2: Traffic Symbology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type Traffic</th>
<th>Symbology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TCAS-I, TCAS-II, and TIS-A</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Other Traffic" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>If aircraft VSI is less than -500 fpm, traffic within +2,700 and -9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If aircraft VSI is more than +500 fpm, traffic within -2,700 and +9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Otherwise, traffic within -2,700 and +2,700 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABOVE</td>
<td>Traffic within -2,700 and +9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BELOW</td>
<td>Traffic within +2,700 and -9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table T-3: Pilot Selected OT and PA Traffic Altitude-Filter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL</td>
<td>Traffic within -2,700 and +2,700 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>All received traffic displayed, no altitude filtering.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### T 1.3. Traffic Thumbnail

When selected from declutter options, the traffic thumbnail is displayed in the lower right corner of the PFI area of the PFD above the active waypoint identifier and has clock face markings fixed at the 6 NM scale.

**Figure T-2: Traffic Thumbnail**

The traffic thumbnail is automatically enabled while there is an active traffic warning (TA or RA) and the aircraft is above 500’ AGL. During a traffic warning, the traffic thumbnail scale automatically adjusts in multiple multiples of 2 NM (2 NM, 4NM, or 6NM) to optimally display the traffic. While the traffic thumbnail is mutually exclusive with the MINI MAP, ANLG AGL, and ANLG G so it too disappears in the unusual attitude mode.

#### T 2. TCAS-II Traffic RA indicator

When TCAS-II is enabled, the background of the VSI functions as an RA display with green and red colored regions for resolution advisory guidance.

**Figure T-3: TCAS-II RA Indication**
T 3. Dedicated Traffic Page

When selected, a traffic page is available based roughly on the appearance of a TCAS display and has the following elements.

T 3.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu

TRAFFIC: Shows the Traffic page.

T 3.2. Traffic Display Format

The traffic display uses a centered display format with the ownship symbol (Table T-2) centered in the traffic page with data displayed out to an equal distance in all directions. When the AHRS is in DG Mode, “DG” appears to the right of the ownship symbol.

![Traffic Display Format](image)

Figure T-4: Traffic Display Format

T 3.3. Traffic Page Screen Range

Screen ranges are available (all distances represent the distance from the ownship symbol to the compass rose): 5NM, 10NM, and 20NM. A TCAS range ring is centered upon the ownship symbol to help judge range to displayed symbols with a 3NM radius in 5NM and 10NM ranges, has a radius of half the range in 20NM, 50NM, and 100NM ranges, and is presented on the TCAS range ring (e.g., 3NM, 10NM, 25NM, or 50NM).

T 3.4. Compass Rose Symbols

The compass rose is aligned with either magnetic north or true north depending upon the status of the true north discrete input. A digital heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol.
appears on the compass rose boundary circle. Compass rose symbols are as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology. A green dashed lubber line connects the center of the aircraft symbol and the track pointer.

![Normal Mode](image1) ![True North Mode](image2)

Figure T-5: Traffic Page Compass Rose Symbols

If a target altitude is set and not captured, an altitude capture predictor arc is displayed on the lubber line at a point corresponding with predicted climb or descent distance (based upon current VSI). A top of descent symbol is shown at the point where a VNAV descent is predicted to commence. The track pointer, lubber line, altitude capture predictor arc, and top of descent symbol are not displayed when groundspeed is less than 30 knots. A pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacting with the heading pointer appears on the compass rose. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer is displayed on the heading scale at a point corresponding with the active waypoint and turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

**T 3.5. Clock and Options**

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of traffic page.

![Zulu Time](image3) ![Local Offset Time](image4)

Figure T-6: Clock and Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zulu Time or Local Offset</td>
<td>hh:mm:ssZ hh:mm:ssL</td>
<td>Synchronized with GPS/SBAS constellation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic Status</td>
<td>Enabled or Disabled</td>
<td>If traffic is disabled, overlying red “X”. When enabled, traffic altitude filtering is as follows (see Table T-3). AUTO = TRFC AUTO ABOVE = TRFC ABV BELOW = TRFC BLW NORMAL = TRFC NORM ALL = TRFC ALL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table T-4: Clock and Options
### T 3.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

As defined in Section 3 Display Symbology.

![Figure T-7: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions](DEST-KMKE
DIS 1270NM
ETE 6:47:37
RNG 2575NM
END 13:47)

### T 3.7. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and automatic GPS/ SBAS OBS setting, the flight plan path, when selected, is shown in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path depiction meets all GPS/SBAS path definition requirements and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map). Active flight plan path fly-over waypoints symbols are distinct from fly-by waypoints and consist of the waypoint symbol within a circle. When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray dashed lines.

When there is an active waypoint and manual GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

The active flight plan path’s active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta and turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The traffic page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

When traffic source is ADS-B, traffic vectors and aircraft identification data are shown. The traffic vector is a line connecting the traffic’s current position with the predicted position based on its current track and groundspeed. The prediction time, in minutes, is pilot-selectable. Aircraft identification (e.g. aircraft registration number or scheduled airline flight number) is text located near the traffic symbol in the same color as the traffic symbol.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADS-B Traffic Vector</td>
<td>Length of traffic vector annunciated as VECT##</td>
<td>(traffic vector length in minutes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table T-5: ADS-B and TIS-B Traffic Symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Traffic Type</th>
<th>Other Traffic</th>
<th>Proximate Advisory</th>
<th>Traffic Advisory (Flashing)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High-Integrity Traffic with Track Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-Integrity Traffic without Track Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degraded Position Traffic with Track Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degraded Position Traffic without Track Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

T 4. OASIS Traffic Page Overlays

Up to eight symbology OASIS traffic overlays are possible to appear on top of all other traffic symbology but below CAS warnings.

T 5. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) (L1) Menu

If traffic enabled, loss of communications with traffic sensor (TRFC) is annunciated with TRAFFIC with an overlying red “X.”

T 6. MFD Traffic Format (FORMAT..) (R4) Menu

Figure T-8: MFD Traffic Format (FORMAT) Menu
Upon selecting the MFD format menu, **FORMAT (R8)**, a list appears with the following options:

1) **ROUTE ON/ROUTE OFF**: Toggles active flight plan route.

2) **IDENT OFF/IDENT ON**: When EFIS is configured for TIS-B, toggles traffic identifier/squawk information.

3) **ALT FILTER**: Sets traffic altitude filter to **AUTO**, **ABOVE**, **BELOW**, **NORMAL**, or **ALL**.

4) **TCAD TEST**: Activates test function when Ryan/Avidyne TCAD.

5) **TREND VECTOR**: When TCAS flag is TIS-B, sets traffic trend vector length in minutes. **OFF (R4)** turns off traffic trend vector.

**T 7. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) (R4) Menu**

Upon activating the PFD declutter menu, an option list of declutter items is shown.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declutter Options</th>
<th>Configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFD Traffic Thumbnail</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perspective Traffic Depiction</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**T 8. Menu Synchronization**

Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-by-Step Procedures for additional information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Traffic Filter Setting</strong></td>
<td><em>The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PFD Traffic Thumbnail Show Flag</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PFD Traffic Show Flag</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table T-7: Menu Synchronization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD Traffic Page Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)

RBP 1. Remote BUGs Panel

1) Increase/decrease HDG bug – Push to synchronize to current heading

2) Increase/decrease target altitude – Push to synchronize to current altitude

3) Moves through "Set" options – press both arrows simultaneously to place into brightness dimming mode

4) Main display – Indicates course, bug, angle, height, and minimums to be set with multifunction encoder

5) Moves through "Set" options – Press both arrows simultaneously to place into brightness dimming mode

6) Multifunction encoder – Increase/decrease value indicated in main display

7) LNAV – Switches autopilot roll steering between LNAV and HDG sub-modes

8) VNAV – Switches autopilot pitch steering between VNAV and target altitude sub-modes

9) Option display – Toggles function value in main display

10) Option button – Toggles function displayed in option display (also exits brightness dimming mode)

Figure RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel

The Remote Bugs Panel (RBP) promotes ease of operation while minimizing pilot workload complexity by providing dedicated controls for frequently used bugs and controls for setting IDU parameters as defined in Table RBP-1.
The heading (HDG) and altitude (ALT) encoders behave similarly as the encoders on the IDU. (See Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures for HDG and ALT encoder description)

During initialization, the RBP begins with “GENEYSYS RBP” on the main and option display screens. To access the internal light sensor control for brightness, press the two arrow buttons simultaneously and rotate the multifunction encoder to make adjustments. Press the Option button to exit the brightness control program and return the RBP to normal operation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button/Encoder</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Rotate</th>
<th>Push</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HDG Encoder</td>
<td>Heading Bug</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td>Synchronize to current heading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT Encoder</td>
<td>Altitude Bug</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td>Synchronize to current altitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifunction Encoder</td>
<td>GPS Course</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td>Synchronize to current bearing to active waypoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifunction Encoder</td>
<td>VOR 1 Course</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td>Synchronize to current bearing to the station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifunction Encoder</td>
<td>VOR 2 Course</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td>Synchronize to current bearing to the station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifunction Encoder</td>
<td>Airspeed Bug</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td>Synchronize to current airspeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifunction Encoder</td>
<td>Vertical Speed Bug</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td>Synchronize to current VSI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifunction Encoder</td>
<td>Climb Angle Set</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td>Set to 3°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifunction Encoder</td>
<td>Descent Angle Set</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifunction Encoder</td>
<td>Decision Height Bug</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td>Set to 200’ AGL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifunction Encoder</td>
<td>Minimum Altitude Bug</td>
<td>Increase or decrease</td>
<td>Synchronize to current altitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option “---“ Button</td>
<td>GPS Course</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Change OBS mode (manual or automatic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option “---“ Button</td>
<td>VOR 1 Course</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>No function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Button/Encoder</td>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Rotate</td>
<td>Push</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option “---” Button</td>
<td>VOR 2 Course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option “---” Button</td>
<td>Airspeed Bug</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Toggle on or off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option “---” Button</td>
<td>Vertical Speed Bug</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Toggle on or off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option “---” Button</td>
<td>Climb Angle Setting</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>No function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option “---” Button</td>
<td>Descent Angle Setting</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>No function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option “---” Button</td>
<td>Decision Height Bug</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Toggle on or off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option “---” Button</td>
<td>Minimum Altitude Bug</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Toggle on or off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrow Buttons</td>
<td>Function Scroll</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Move through “Set” options. Press both arrow buttons simultaneously to place into dimming mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VNAV Button</td>
<td>VNAV</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Switch autopilot pitch steering and commanded VSI between VNAV sub-mode and target altitude sub-mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNAV Button</td>
<td>LNAV</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Switch autopilot roll steering between LNAV sub-mode and heading sub-mode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
WX-500 Lightning Strikes

S 1. WX-500 Data

When selected, the ND displays cell mode or strike mode lightning strikes in correct relationship to the ownship symbol with the following limits.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time or Distance Limit</th>
<th>View</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display scale less than 25 NM</td>
<td>Strikes not shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 3 minutes old</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strikes less than 20 seconds old</td>
<td>Lightning symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strikes between 20 seconds and 2 minutes old</td>
<td>Large cross symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strikes between 2 and 3 minutes old</td>
<td>Small cross symbol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The pilot may select either an arced or centered display format.

**Arced:** Ownship displaced toward the bottom of the screen. Strike data are displayed in a larger scale while displaying all data within range ahead of the aircraft.

**Centered:** Ownship symbol is in the center of the ND with navigation data is displayed out to an equal distance in all directions.

The strikes page has Strikefinder markings aligned with either magnetic north or true north depending upon the status of the true north discrete input. When the AHRS is in DG mode, “DG” appears to the right of the ownship symbol.
S 2. Dedicated Strikes Page

S 2.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu

STRIKES: Shows the strikes page.

S 2.1.1. MFD STRIKES Page (Step-By-Step)

1) Push ① or ② and scroll to STRIKES and push to enter.

2) Example shows MFD with STRIKES in bottom area.

S 2.2. Page Screen Range

The following screen ranges may be selected with all distances representing the distance from the ownship symbol to the Strikefinder markings: 12.5 NM, 25 NM, 50 NM, 100 NM, and 200 NM. The range ring is centered upon the ownship symbol to help judge range to displayed symbols. It has half the radius of the Strikefinder markings displayed indicating the range corresponding to the radius of the range ring such as (1.5 NM, 25 NM, 50 NM, and 10 NM.) The range ring is completely visible in arced display format for the pilot to ascertain the current strikes page setting.

S 2.3. Air Data and Groundspeed

Figure S-2: Air Data and Groundspeed in Upper Left Corner
S 2.4. Clock and Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the page:

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time**: As specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

2) **WX-500 Status**: When selected, displays cell mode lightning strikes in correct relationship to the ownship symbol with the limits in Table S-2.

### Table S-2: WX-500 Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strikes Page</th>
<th>Traffic Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Condition</strong></td>
<td><strong>Annunciation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Normal, Cell Mode</td>
<td>CELL MODE annunciates mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RATE ### depicts strike rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Normal, Strike Mode</td>
<td>STRK MODE annunciates mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RATE ### depicts strike rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Failed with “Show Full Sensor Status Flag” enabled in EFIS Limits</td>
<td>STRIKES overlaid with red “X”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System in Test Mode</td>
<td>STRK TST shown Strike symbols removed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A new strike rate value is calculated every five seconds during normal operation, based upon strikes within the selected display range. The number of fresh strikes (less than 20 seconds old) is used to generate a strike rate representing strikes per minute. Strike rate increases are displayed immediately upon calculation, while decreases in strike rate are damped. Activating the strike clear function resets the strike rate to zero.
S 2.5. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown on the strikes page in correct relationship to the ownship symbol.

When there is an active waypoint and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is manual, the course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint. The pointer matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

Figure S-4: Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

The active flight plan path’s active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The strikes page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

S 2.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

As defined in Section 3 Display Symbology.

Figure S-5: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

S 3. MFD Faults Display (FAULTS) Menu

If WX-500 is enabled, loss of communications with the WX-500 is indicated with an “X” in place of “OK.”

S 4. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

CLR STRKS (L2) or WX LGND (L2): On ND or strikes page with WX-500 enabled, CLR STRKS activates the strike clear option.
S 5. MFD Strikes Format (FORMAT) Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu, FORMAT (R4) when in the strikes page, the following option list appears:

1) CENTER/ARC: Toggles centered and arced display format.
2) ROUTE ON/ROUTE OFF: Toggles the active flight plan route.
3) STRK MODE/CELL MODE: Toggles strike and cell mode.
4) STRK TEST: Activates the WX-500 test function.

S 6. OASIS Strikes Screen Overlays

Up to eight symbology OASIS Strikes overlays are possible to appear on top of all other strikes symbology but below CAS warnings.

S 7. Menu Synchronization

Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-by-Step Procedures for additional information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table S-3: Menu Synchronization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD Strike (WX-500) Page Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
D 1. Datalink Symbology

Figure D-1: Datalink Symbology with G METAR On

Figure D-2: Datalink Symbology with NEXRAD On
Table D-1: ADS-B Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NEXRAD Data</td>
<td>Available if included in user subscription.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graphical METAR Data</td>
<td>Available if textual METAR data is included in user subscription. Derived from textual METAR data using EFIS algorithm.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NEXRAD data is displayed on the ND in correct relationship as colored regions of precipitation using the convention.

Table D-2: Datalink NEXRAD Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gray Shading</td>
<td>Areas beyond the limits of radar coverage or areas with missing data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magenta</td>
<td>Rain &gt;= 50dBZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Rain &gt;= 45dBZ and &lt; 50dBZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Red</td>
<td>Rain &gt;= 40dBZ and &lt; 45dBZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Rain &gt;= 30dBZ and &lt; 40dBZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Rain &gt;= 20dBZ and &lt; 30dBZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyan</td>
<td>Snow &gt;= 20dBZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Cyan</td>
<td>Snow &gt;= 5dBZ and &lt; 20dBZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magenta</td>
<td>Mixed Precipitation &gt;= 20dBZ (Area is distinguishable from rain &gt;= 50dBZ by graphical context)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Magenta</td>
<td>Mixed Precipitation &gt;= 5dBZ and &lt; 20dBZ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Graphical METARs are displayed in correct relationship to the ownship symbol as a large color-filled circle as follows. If the airport has an available datalinked METAR, the circular part of the airport symbol is colored-fill with the following coloring convention.

Table D-3: Graphical METAR Symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sky Blue</td>
<td>Visual Flight Rules (VFR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Marginal Visual Flight Rules (MVFR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amber (Yellow)</td>
<td>Instrument Flight Rules (IFR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Low Instrument Flight Rules (LIFR)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table D-3: Graphical METAR Symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Magenta</td>
<td>Less than Category 1 Approach Minimums</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black</td>
<td>No Data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table D-4: Graphical METARS (G METARS) Screen Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screen Range</th>
<th>Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50 NM</td>
<td>All G METARS with Airport Symbol and ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 NM</td>
<td>All G METARS with Airport Symbol only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 NM</td>
<td>All G METARS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400 NM</td>
<td>VFR G METARS are decluttered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800NM and 1,600 NM</td>
<td>VFR and MVFR G METARS are decluttered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Graphical METARs are also displayed in the menu system “nearest airport,” “nearest weather,” and “info” functions.

![Figure D-3: NRST Airport INFO](image)

Graphical weather conditions data are displayed in the menu system “info” function as large colored squares per the following convention.

### Table D-5: Datalink Graphical METAR Precipitation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sky blue</td>
<td>No significant precipitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>Snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Hazardous weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right half gray</td>
<td>Obscuration to visibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small black square centered in large square</td>
<td>High wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black</td>
<td>No data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following may be displayed on the datalink page:

1) **Convective SIGMET**: Magenta line segments showing the area boundary in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. Pilot may view the text of individual convective SIGMETs. When viewing text, the associated symbol flashes.

2) **Icing AIRMET and SIGMET**: Cyan line segments showing the area boundary in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. Pilot may view the text of individual icing AIRMETs and SIGMETs. When viewing text, the associated symbol flashes.

3) **IFR AIRMET and SIGMET**: Red line segments showing the area boundary in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. Pilot may view the text of individual IFR AIRMETs and SIGMETs. When viewing text, the associated symbol flashes.

4) **Turbulence AIRMET and SIGMET**: Amber (yellow) line segments showing the area boundary in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. Pilot may view the text of individual turbulence AIRMETs and SIGMETs. When viewing text, the associated turbulence AIRMET or SIGMET symbol flashes.

Textual METAR and TAF data are displayed when appropriate in the menu system “info” function. Time of observation and forecast are contained within the text.

![Figure D-4: METAR and TAF Report for KPHX](image)

**D 2. Dedicated Datalink Page**

**D 2.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu**

**DATALINK**: Shows the Datalink page.
D 2.2. Ownship Symbol

When not panning with AHRS in the DG mode, “DG” appears right of the ownship symbol. The datalink page is always displayed in a north-up orientation with a boundary circle in place of the compass rose. If not in pan mode, the ownship symbol is aligned with the aircraft heading.

Figure D-5: Datalink Symbology Ownship Symbol

D 2.3. Datalink Page Legend

Figure D-6: ADS-B Datalink Legend

D 2.4. Air Data and Groundspeed

Air data and groundspeed are displayed in the upper left corner of the datalink page as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

D 2.5. Clock and Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the page:

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time**: As in Section 3 Display Symbology.

2) **Datalink Weather Status**: When status of NEXRAD, and graphical METARs.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Status Annunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Never completely downlinked</td>
<td>No Annunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downlinked within last 5 minutes and selected for display (*if installed,</td>
<td>“NXRD ##” in green. ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown. “GMTR ##” in green. ## is age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weather radar deselected from display). “Show Full Sensor Status Flag”</td>
<td>is age in minutes. “NXRD ##” overlaid with green “X” NEXRAD not shown. “GMTR ##” overlaid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enabled.</td>
<td>with green “X” G METARS not shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downlinked within last 5 minutes and deselected from display (*if installed,</td>
<td>“NXRD ##” in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown. “GMTR ##” in amber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weather radar selected for display). “Show Full Sensor Status Flag” enabled.</td>
<td>(yellow). ## is age in minutes. “NXRD ##” overlaid with green “X” NEXRAD not shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Show Full Sensor Status Flag” enabled.</td>
<td>“GMTR ##” overlaid with green “X” G METARS not shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not downlinked within last 5 minutes but downlinked within last 10 minutes and</td>
<td>“NXRD ##” in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown. “GMTR ##” in amber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>selected for display (*if installed, weather radar deselected from display).</td>
<td>(yellow). ## is age in minutes. “NXRD ##” overlaid with green “X” NEXRAD not shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Show Full Sensor Status Flag” enabled.</td>
<td>“GMTR ##” overlaid with green “X” G METARS not shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not downlinked within last 10 minutes but downlinked within last 75 minutes and</td>
<td>“NXRD ##” in red. ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown. “GMTR ##” in red. ## is age in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>selected for display (*if installed, weather radar deselected from display).</td>
<td>minutes. G METARS shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not downlinked within last 10 minutes but downlinked within last 75 minutes and</td>
<td>“NXRD ##” in red. ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown. “GMTR ##” in red. ## is age in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deselected from display (*if installed, weather radar deselected from display).</td>
<td>minutes. G METARS shown.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table D-6: Datalink NEXRAD Status
## Table D-6: Datalink NEXRAD Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Status Annunciation</th>
<th>Graphical METAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>NEXRAD</em> installed, weather radar selected for display). “Show Full Sensor Status Flag” enabled.</td>
<td>“NXRD ##” overlaid with green “X” NEXRAD not shown.</td>
<td>“GMTR ##” overlaid with green “X” G METARS not shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not downlinked within last 75 minutes (timed-out). “Show Full Sensor Status Flag” enabled.</td>
<td>“NXRD XX” in red “NXRD XX” overlaid with red “X” NEXRAD not shown.</td>
<td>“GMTR XX” in red “GMTR XX” overlaid with red “X” G METARS not shown.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### D 2.6. Datalink Page Screen Orientation

![Figure D-8: Datalink Page Screen Range](image)

When selected, the following screen ranges (all distances represent distance from the ownship symbol to the boundary circle) are available. Radius of the range ring is presented on the inner range ring with the outer ring representing double the value of the inner ring.
Table D-7: Datalink Page Screen Ranges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ownship to Boundary Circle</th>
<th>Radius Range Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50 NM</td>
<td>25 NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 NM</td>
<td>50 NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 NM</td>
<td>100 NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400 NM</td>
<td>200 NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800 NM</td>
<td>400 NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1600 NM</td>
<td>800 NM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D 2.7. Boundary Circle Symbols

A white triangular heading pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the boundary circle with a green diamond-shaped track pointer aligned with the aircraft’s track across the earth. A green dashed lubber line connects the center of the aircraft symbol and the track pointer.

If a target or VNAV altitude is set and not captured, an altitude capture predictor arc is displayed on the lubber line at a point corresponding with predicted climb or descent distance (based upon current VSI). The track pointer, lubber line, and altitude capture predictor arc are not displayed when groundspeed is less than 60 knots. A pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacting with the heading pointer appears on the boundary circle. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer displayed on the boundary circle at a point corresponds with the active waypoint. The waypoint pointer turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution. Boundary circle symbols are not drawn when in pan mode.

D 2.8. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and automatic GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the flight plan path, when selected, is shown in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path depiction meets all GPS/SBAS path definition requirements and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map). Active flight plan path fly-over waypoints symbols are distinct from fly-by waypoints and consist of the waypoint symbol within a circle.
When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray dashed lines.

When there is an active waypoint and manual GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

The active flight plan path’s active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The datalink page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

**D 2.9. Borders**

National and United States state borders are drawn in white in correct relationship to the ownship symbol.

**D 2.10. Pan Mode**

Use the pan mode to change the location of the center of the page away from current location and view weather conditions along the route of flight and at the intended destination or alternate destination. When pan mode is active, rotate 🔄 to pan north, south, east, and west. When pan mode is active, a line is drawn from the map center to the aircraft's current position, and bearing and distance to the map center is always displayed above the ownship symbol when the aircraft is more than 0.5 NM away. If referenced to magnetic north, (as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology) when panning, the nearest displayed graphical METAR symbol within the inner range ring is highlighted with a flashing circle. When such a point is highlighted, dedicated buttons are present to allow the pilot to view and hide the waypoint information (including datalink weather information) associated with that point.

**D 3. Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-Up Function Descriptions**

See Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-by-Step Procedures for top-level menu option descriptions. Soft menu tiles appear adjacent to buttons under the specified conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table D-8: Tile Legend and Action in Order of Precedence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table D-8: Tile Legend and Action in Order of Precedence

| L2 | When Datalink page with: (a) pan mode enabled; (b) information for the nearest highlighted waypoint is shown; and (c) airport weather information is present in the information block; WX appears. Press to display textual METAR and TAF data for the airport. |
| L3 | When Datalink page with pan mode enabled, NORTH appears. Press to shift center of page in the specified direction. |
| L4 | When Datalink page with pan mode enabled, SOUTH appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |
| R2 | When ND page or Datalink page with pan mode enabled, INFO or HIDE appears. Press to toggle information for nearest highlighted waypoint. |
| R3 | When Datalink page with pan mode enabled, EAST appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |
| R4 | When Datalink page with pan mode enabled, WEST appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. |

### D 4. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

WX LGND (ACTV) (L2): Activates datalink weather legend.

### D 5. MFD Datalink Format (FORMAT) Menu

![Figure D-10: MFD Datalink Format (FORMAT) Menu](image-url)
Upon selecting the MFD format menu **FORMAT.. (R4)** on Datalink page, a list appears with the following options:

1) **ROUTE ON/ROUTE OFF**: Toggles active flight plan route.

2) **PAN ON/PAN OFF**: Toggles pan mode.

3) **DCLTR**: Only available when Datalink weather products are available for display. Allows the pilot to select individual Datalink weather products for display.

**D 5.1. MFD DATALINK Page (Step-By-Step)**

1) Press **MENU (R1)**, press **PAGE (R3)** and rotate 1 to **DATALINK** and push to enter.

2) Example shows MFD with **DATALINK**.

3) Press **MENU (R1)** and then **FORMAT.. (R4)** to format Datalink page.

4) Rotate 1 to **PAN ON** or **DCLTR**. Push to enter.
5) In pan mode, press **NORTH (L3)**, **SOUTH (L4)**, **EAST (R3)**, or **WEST (R4)** to move aircraft in desired direction.

---

**D 6. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options**

**NRST APT (L2): WX LGND** and **EXPND WX** are available to show a weather symbol legend and highlighted result METAR and TAF text respectively.

**Identifier Entry Box:** Highlighted result information may include datalinked weather information when available.

**D 7. Information (INFO) Menu**

When airport weather information is presented in the information block, **WX LGND (L2)** displays an airport graphical METAR legend, and **EXPND WX (L3)** displays textual METAR and TAF data for the airport.

**D 8. MFD Fault Display Menu**

![Figure D-11: FAULTS Menu with ADS-B Status](image)

Upon selecting the MFD faults menu with ADS-B datalink enabled, an indication of ADS-B position validity (ADSB POSN), indication of whether ADS-B receiver maintenance is required (ADSB MAINT), and indication the conflict situational awareness algorithm is working (ADSB CSA) appear.
D 9. Menu Synchronization

Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-by-Step Procedures for additional information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD Datalink Page Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Weather Radar

WX 1. Weather Radar

This Weather Radar appendix is primarily for the Honeywell RDR-2100 installed with no external control panel. The EFIS controls the WX RDR from the EFIS PFD bottom display or MFD with WX RDR displayed in the top area or bottom area. Since there is only one RDR-2100 installed in the aircraft, only one display area at a time can show the WX RDR menu.

WARNING:

Maintain prescribed safe distance when standing in front of operating antenna. (Reference FAA Advisory Circular #20-68)

Never expose eyes or any part of the body to an unterminated wave guide.
Weather radar automatically declutters when weather radar returns are selected for display on the ND map page in correct relationship to the ownship symbol unless inhibited during active FLTA alerts. When weather radar is selected, Datalink NEXRAD is automatically deselected. Table WX-1 defines all inhibited factors with display.

### Table WX-1: Weather Radar Inhibited Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>During Active FLTA alerts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ND Moving Map Pan Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When North Up orientation is selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When RDR-2100 is in vertical profile mode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table WX-1: Weather Radar Inhibited Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When screen range is too small to effectively show the weather returns (defined as when the length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of the weather radar scan line is longer than 512 pixels given current weather radar scale setting,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>screen range, and screen mode)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WX 2. Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions

**WX RDR.. (L2):** If a Weather Radar page is displayed on the MFD, activates the Weather Radar menu for controlling Honeywell RDR-2000/2100.

**Encoder:** On an MFD (IDU #2, #3 or #4) showing the Weather Radar page, rotate Encoder to change the display RNG (direction of rotation is dependent upon EFIS limits settings.)

**DCLTR.. (R4):** DCLTR activates Weather Radar Declutter menu option.

WX 3. PFD Weather Radar Page Format (FORMAT) Menu

Upon selecting WX RDR menu in the WX RDR page when weather radar type is RDR-2100 without external RCP installed, the following list appears.

1) **WX RDR (L2):** Opens CTRL (L2) menu.
2) **Off (R2):** Turns Weather Radar off.
3) **Standby (R3):** Toggles WX RDR to STBY mode, press ON WX (L4) to turn on WX RDR.
4) **Test (R4):** Toggles radar into TEST mode, press ON WX (L4) to return to normal operation.
5) **ON WX (L4):** Toggles WX ON, WXA, or GMAP.
6) **Vertical Profile (L3):** Toggles vertical profile ON/OFF. (When VP is OFF, horizontal profile is ON.)

WX 3.1. Ownship Symbol

The ownship symbol appears in horizontal and profile depictions on the weather radar page.
Horizontal Depiction

Airplane with $M_{MO}$

Airplane without $M_{MO}$

Figure WX-3: Ownship Symbol

Profile Depiction

Figure WX-4: PFD WX RDR Format (FORMAT) Menu

*Applicable only to Honeywell RDR-2100
NOTE:

The weather radar modes are mutually exclusive and therefore selecting one turns off the other modes with the exception of vertical profile, which appears in the selection box only when the selected weather radar mode is not OFF or STBY.

1) **ON WX (L4):** Turns on Weather Radar
2) **CTRL (L2):** Activates a list to control live parameters as follows:
3) **OPTIONS.. (L2):**
   a) **ACLTR ON (L2):** Toggles anti-clutter option between on and off.
   b) **SCTR ON/OFF (L3):** Toggles sector scan option between on and off.
   c) **ARL ON/OFF (R2):** Toggles automatic range limit option between on and off.
   d) **STAB ON/OFF (R3):** Toggles Stabilization mode on or off.
   e) **ROLL TRM.. (L3):** Changes roll trim in increments of 0.125° between +3.875° and -4.000°.
   f) **GAIN.. (R3):** Change radar gain in increments of 0.5 dB between 0-31.5 dB.
   g) **TRACK.. :** Rotate CW to increase and CCW to decrease changes in track in increments of 1° in the following limits settings.
      i) Scan width 80° (+/- 40°)
      ii) Scan width 90° (+/- 45°)
      iii) Scan width 100° (+/- 50°)
      iv) Scan width 120° (+/- 60°)
4) **TILT.. :** Toggles tilt mode between auto tilt (RDR-2100 only) and manual tilt. Also toggles auto-step-scan option between on and off. When in manual tilt mode, changes tilt angle in increments of 0.25°.
   a) **ASTEP ON (R2):** Toggles Auto Step Scan on or off. Begin by adjusting tilt to +15° or -15°
   b) **AUTO (R3):** Toggles AUTO and MANUAL
5) **RNG 鲣**: See § WX 2.

6) **DCLTR**: **ROUTE** toggles active flight plan route.

![](image1)

**Figure WX-5: WX RDR Declutter (DCLTR) Menu**

### WX 3.2. Weather Radar Page Format

In a horizontal depiction, the weather radar page uses an arced format with the ownship symbol centered in the bottom of the display with the weather area depicted as an arc ahead of the ownship symbol.

![](image2)

**Figure WX-6: Radar Image in Arc Format**
In a profile depiction, the weather radar page uses an arced format with the ownship symbol centered on the left side of the display and the weather area depicted as an arc to the right of the ownship symbol.

To select profile depiction, use the weather radar control panel connected to the IDU. The IDU ensures at least one weather radar-enabled display is showing the weather radar page prior to entering into profile depiction and disables profile depiction if the pilot sets the display for no weather radar page on any weather radar-enabled page. The purpose is to maximize the availability of weather radar information on the ND. The ND only shows a horizontal depiction and disables profile depiction if the weather radar mode is set to off or standby via radar control panel.
**WX 3.3. Weather Radar Page Screen Range**

Weather radar page screen range is pilot-selectable with either (RDR-2000 and RDR-2100 weather radar types) or a control panel directly attached to the weather radar receiver-transmitter. Weather radar page screen range is displayed as a series of equidistant dashed arcs centered upon the ownship symbol to help judge range to the displayed weather radar returns. All distances represent the distance from the ownship symbol to the outer dashed arc: 5NM, 10NM, 20NM, 40NM, 80NM, 160NM, 240NM, and 320NM.

For most screen ranges, there are four equidistant dashed arcs. Each arc is labeled with distance in nautical miles at its right-most point (horizontal depiction) or bottom-most point (profile depiction). In profile depiction, there are also three horizontal altitude lines drawn relative to the aircraft’s altitude to help judge the vertical distance to the displayed weather radar returns. The center line is level with the ownship symbol to represent the aircraft’s altitude. The other two lines are equally spaced above and below the center line to represent altitude differences above and below the aircraft. The number of feet above and below the aircraft varies with the selected range to compensate for the radar scan width at the different ranges.

**WX 3.4. Track Line**

When the weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 and the horizontal depiction is shown, a dashed track line emanates from the ownship symbol to the outer dashed arc. The value of the track line in whole degrees left or right of aircraft heading is displayed adjacent to the outer end of the track line.
WX 3.5. Active Flight Plan Path/ Manual Course/ Runways

The active flight plan path (when selected), waypoints, and manual course appear, when the weather radar page is showing horizontal depiction. The weather radar page displays airport runways, when the weather radar page is showing horizontal depiction.

In horizontal depiction, the active flight plan path (when selected), waypoints, manual course appear and airport runways appear.
Figure WX-12: Radar Active Flight Plan

Figure WX-13: Radar Active Flight Plan

WX 3.6. Weather Radar Return Data

Weather radar return data are displayed in correct relationship to the
ownship symbol as colored regions according to the value of the ARINC
453 3-bit range bins.
### Figure WX-14: Radar Return Data

![Radar Return Data](image)

#### Table WX-2: Weather Radar Return Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARINC 453 3-Bit Range Bin</th>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000b</td>
<td>BLACK</td>
<td>No returns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>001b</td>
<td>GREEN</td>
<td>Low-level weather or low-level ground returns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010b</td>
<td>YELLOW</td>
<td>Mid-level weather or mid-level ground returns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011b</td>
<td>RED</td>
<td>Third-level weather returns. Color is black when in MAP mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100b</td>
<td>MAGENTA</td>
<td>Fourth-level weather or third-level ground returns. With RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 weather radar type, color alternates between magenta and black at 1Hz when internal sub-mode is WXA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101b</td>
<td>CYAN</td>
<td>Automatic range limit returns. Indicates areas of unreliable returns due to radar power absorption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110b</td>
<td>LIGHT GRAY</td>
<td>Moderate turbulence returns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111b</td>
<td>WHITE</td>
<td>Severe turbulence returns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following weather radar-specific warnings appear in a conspicuous area adjacent to weather radar return data so they do not conflict with the weather radar return data. Only one warning appears at any given time, with the following order of precedence:
1) **WX ALRT**: Weather alert condition is active.

2) **TURB ALRT**: Turbulence alert condition is active.

3) **STAB LIMIT**: Aircraft attitude has moved to a point where the weather radar antenna can no longer be effectively stabilized.

4) **ANT FAULT**: Weather radar antenna is temporarily dislodged by turbulence.

**WX 3.7. Air Data and Groundspeed**

Air data and groundspeed are displayed in upper left corner of the weather radar page as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

**WX 3.8. Clock/Options**

![Figure WX-15: Radar Clock/Options](image)

The following are displayed in the upper right corner:

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time**: As in Section 3 Display Symbology;

2) **Weather Radar Mode Annunciation**: As in Table WX-3 and Table WX-4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Annunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>WXR:OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby</td>
<td>WXR:STBY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather only</td>
<td>WXR:WX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather alert</td>
<td>WXR:WXA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground map</td>
<td>WXR:GMAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>WXR:TEST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not defined</td>
<td>WXR:----</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table WX-3: RDR 2100 Applicability**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annunciation</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overlaid with Red X</td>
<td>Weather radar mode is off or not defined. Cooling fault condition exists. Attitude or range fault condition exists. T/R fault condition exists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAB OFF (Stabilization)</td>
<td>Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”; Mode not standby or forced standby; and Weather radar indicates stabilization is off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGT ALERT (Target Alert)</td>
<td>Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”; Mode not standby or forced standby; Weather radar presenting horizontal depiction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“TLT:UXX.X” or “TLT:AUTO” (TILT)</td>
<td>U = Up or Down (either U or D, but not both, may appear – use “U” for 0°); XX.X represents absolute value of the tilt angle in degrees truncated to the nearest tenth; “TLT:AUTO” used where weather radar reports a value of -16°, representing automatic tilt. Weather radar tilt annunciation only appears when all following conditions are true: 1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”; 2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and 3) Radar not in vertical profile depiction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRK:LXX (TRACK)</td>
<td>L = Left or Right (either L or R, but not both, may appear – use “R” for 0°); and XX represents absolute value of the track angle in degrees. Weather radar track annunciation only appears when all following conditions are true: 1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”; 2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and 3) Radar in vertical profile depiction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“GN:SXXDB,” “GN:CAL,” or “GN:MAX” (GAIN)</td>
<td>S = Sign (either “+” or “-,” but not both, may appear – use “+” for 0°); and XXDB represents the manual gain setting in decibels. “GN:CAL” represents the calibrated condition “GN:MAX” represents maximum manual gain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table WX-4: RDR 2100 Mode Annunciation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annunciation</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weather radar manual gain annunciation only appears when all following weather radar mode conditions are true:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) Mode is ground map.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WX 3.9. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

Displayed as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

NOTE:

When using EFIS menu system for RDR-2XXX control, the weather radar mode received from the offside system is used to update onside weather radar mode as follows. This is to ensure weather radar power on/off is synchronized between both sides.

When offside mode is commanded to STBY, TEST, or ON and if onside mode is OFF, then the onside mode is set to STBY.

When offside mode is commanded to OFF, then the onside mode is also set to OFF.

WX 4. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu

Upon selecting the MFD faults menu, the status of the following system parameters are displayed if weather radar is enabled:

1) If WX-500 enabled, loss of communications with WX-500.

2) Indicates weather radar power/communication status (WXR PWR X or WXR PWR OK). Status failed (WXR PWR X) reflects any one of the following conditions is true:
   a) Loss of weather radar communication.
   b) Weather radar mode is OFF.

3) Indicates weather radar fault status (WXR FAULT –, WXR FAULT X, or WXR FAULT OK). Status failed (WXR FAULT –) indicates it is not
possible to determine weather radar faults. Status failed (WXR FAULT X) reflects any of the following conditions is true:

a) A cooling fault condition exists.

b) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6 or Collins 800/840, a display or control bus fault condition exists.

c) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6, Collins 800/840, or Honeywell PRIMUS, a calibration or air data fault condition exists.

d) An attitude or range fault condition exists.

e) A control fault condition exists.

f) A T/R fault condition exists.

4) If weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100, indicates radar control panel status (WXR RCP X or WXR RCP OK). Status failed (WXR RCP X) indicates loss of communication or a failure status using same test as invalid data SSM for output labels 270, 271, 273, or 275.

WX 5. Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-Up Function Descriptions

Soft menu tiles appear adjacent to buttons under specified conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table WX-5: Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Note 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WX 6. Menu Synchronization

Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-by-Step Procedures for additional information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table WX-6: Menu Synchronization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Menu Parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WX RDR Control Menu parameters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table WX-6: Menu Synchronization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Parameter</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WX RDR Control Menu parameters</td>
<td>Synchronized onside when Honeywell RDR-2XXX is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rate of Turn Indication flag</td>
<td>Onside due to range being controlled by the weather radar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather Radar Scale</td>
<td>Onside because range is controlled by the weather radar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD Selected Page</td>
<td>This parameter is transmitted to all other IDUs to support weather radar vertical profile mode selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFD Map Page Settings</td>
<td>Map scale is transmitted onside to support weather radar range selection.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### WX 7. Managing RDR-2100 Weather Radar Menus (PFD) (Step-By-Step)

1) On MFD, press **MENU (R1)**, **PAGE (R1)**.

2) Rotate ⬇️ to WX-RDR and push to enter.

3) Press **MENU (R1)**.
4) Press WX RDR.. (L2).

5) Press OFF (R2) to enable OFF mode. (This option is not shown when in OFF mode.)

6) Press STBY (R3) to enable standby mode. (This option not shown when in standby mode.)

7) Press TEST (R4) to enable test mode. (This option not shown when in test mode.)

8) While in STBY mode, press ON WX (L4) to return Radar to ON mode.

9) Current mode status is displayed in upper right corner of radar display.

10) Press MENU (R1), WX RDR.. (L2), and then VP ON (L3) to toggle between horizontal and vertical modes.

11) Press VP OFF (L3) to toggle back to horizontal profile.
12) Press **ON WX A** (L4) to enable Weather-Alert sub-mode.

13) Weather-Alert sub-mode annunciated in upper right corner.

14) Press **MENU (R1), WX RDR.. (L2), ON GMAP (L4)** to enable Ground Map sub-mode.

15) Ground Map sub-mode annunciated in upper right corner.

16) Press **MENU (R1), WX RDR.. (L2)**, and then **ON WX (L4)** to resume normal weather radar mode of operation.

17) Radar mode of operation annunciated in upper right corner.

18) Rotate 🔄 to alter range of weather radar from 5.00 NM to 320.00 NM. Rotation direction dependent upon EFIS limits setting.
19) Range rings are located on the right side of the arc.

20) Press MENU (R1), WX RDR.. (L2), and then CTRL.. (L2) to enter radar control menu. (Not shown when in OFF or STBY mode.)

21) Press OPTIONS.. (L2) and then ACLTR ON (L2) to toggle anti-clutter option ON and OFF.

22) Press SCTR ON (L3) to toggle Sector Scan option ON and OFF.

23) Press MENU (R1), WX RDR.. (L2), CTRL.. (L2), ROLL TRIM (L3) and then rotate \( \Omega \) to desired roll trim angle (increments of 0.125°) and push to enter.

24) Press MENU (R1), WX RDR.. (L2), CTRL.. (L2), and then TILT.. (R4)

25) Rotate \( \Omega \) to set tilt angle between ±15°. Set angle is annunciated above \( \Omega \) and in upper right corner.

26) When in TILT AUTO mode, annunciation is above \( \Omega \).
27) Press **ASTEP ON (R2)** or **ASTEP OFF (R2)** to toggle antenna tilt to sequentially step in 4° increments. (Auto step scan is entered initially by adjusting the tilt to +15° or -15°.)

28) Press **BACK (L1)** or **Exit (R1)** to exit out of TILT sub-mode.

29) Press **MENU (R1), WX RDR.. (L2), CTRL.. (L2), and then TRACK.. (L4).**

30) Rotate ♂ and rotate or begin by rotating to set new TRACK angle in 1° increments between limits set in EFIS limits. Read new TRACK in two places.

31) Press **MENU (R1), WX RDR.. (L2), CTRL.. (L2), and then GAIN (R3)** to open GAIN menu.

32) Rotate ♂ to change gain in 1 dB increments. Push to set selected gain value.
Round Dials

RD 1. PFD Primary Flight Instrumentation

This following details round dial display symbology used on the IDU-450 PFD and MFD (in reversionary PFD mode). The round dials option is only available with pure digital ADC configured. Not all combinations of possible views are represented. See Section 3 Display Symbology for further information on the following display symbology.

RD 1.1. Pitch Scale

![Pitch Scale](image)

Figure RD-1: Pitch Scale

The white pitch scale and horizon rotates about the large aircraft symbol reference marks according to the aircraft’s roll angle. The pitch scale has 5° with major increments and pitch scale labels every 10°. Pointer bars at the ends of each major increment indicate the direction to the horizon. Pitch scale increments automatically declutter to present the fewest possible increments needed.

RD 1.2. Flight Director Symbology

A pilot-selectable flight director is available through the menu system or integrated autopilot/flight director avionics. When selected, one of the above symbology examples appear when valid steering commands are received.
Figure RD-2: Flight Director

RD 1.3. Marker Beacon Indicators

When enabled and valid marker beacon indicators with appropriate coloring and markings are displayed in the lower central portion of the PFD. During a built-in-test, more than one marker beacon can be active. Marker beacons acquired from NAV VLOC1 or VLOC2. Marker beacons are disabled when the NAV source is FMS.

Figure RD-3: Marker Beacon Indicators

RD 1.4. Unusual Attitude Mode

Unusual attitude mode is enabled when the pitch attitude exceeds +30° or -30° or bank angle exceeds 65° left or right. Once enabled, unusual attitude mode remains engaged until pitch attitude returns to within 5° of the horizon and bank attitude returns to within 10° of the horizon.
RD 1.5. Bank Angle Scale

The bank angle scale and roll pointer are centered upon the waterline. Either a roll pointer or sky pointer can be selected during EFIS limits configuration.

RD 1.6. Pitch Limit Indicator

When enabled in either category of airplane, a yellow pitch limit indicator appears at 20 KIAS above stall speed. Stall speed is defined as the following:

1) Part 23 airplanes, the higher of the aircraft’s 1-G $V_{S1}$ or $V_{S1}$ corrected for G-loading; or
2) Part 25 airplanes, if pilot-input $V_{\text{REF}}$ is valid, the higher of the aircraft’s 1-G $V_{SO}$ or $V_{SO}$ corrected for G-loading where $V_{SO}$ is calculated by dividing the pilot-input $V_{\text{REF}}$ by 1.23.

![Figure RD-6: Pitch Limit Indicator](image)

The pitch limit indicator merges with the large aircraft reference symbol at stall speed and continues moving downward as indicated airspeed further decreases.

**RD 1.7. AGL Indication**

![Figure RD-7: AGL Indicator](image)

AGL altitude is displayed as in Figure RD-7 at the bottom of the display or above the CDI. The source for AGL indication is the source being used for the TAWS, which is designated as follows:

$R = $ Radar Altitude
G = GPS/SBAS geodetic height less database found elevation.

B = Barometric altitude less database ground elevation.

AGL altitude is not displayed when it is greater than the radar altimeter maximum valid altitude as set in the EFIS limits and is not displayed when it is invalid. This area also includes a decision height set with the PFD bugs menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Resolution</th>
<th>Color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;300’</td>
<td>10’</td>
<td>White</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;100’ &gt;300’</td>
<td>5’</td>
<td>White</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;100’</td>
<td>1’</td>
<td>White but turns amber (yellow) and flashes at and below DH.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decision Height</td>
<td>10’</td>
<td>White but turns amber (yellow) and flashes at and below DH.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table RD-1: AGL Altitude Values

RD 1.8. Landing Gear Indication

When configured as retractable gear in the EFIS limits, the landing gear is shown as three small “tires” below the large aircraft reference marks. This symbology is driven by discrete inputs.

RD 1.9. Airspeed Display

The airspeed display digitally displays indicated airspeed in knots, miles per hour, or kilometers per hour as set in the EFIS limits. The display is scaled to show the entire operating range of the aircraft. CW movement
corresponds to increasing speed. When an ADC sensor fails, the display appears as shown in Figure RD-18.

![Figure RD-9: Airspeed Display](image)

**Figure RD-9: Airspeed Display**

- **Without Airspeed Bugs**
- **IAS Bug Set to 170 and Indicating 170 KIAS**
- **IAS Bug Set to 170 and Indicating 150 KIAS**

**Figure RD-10: Airspeed Display Limits and BUGs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Airspeed Bug</th>
<th>Limits</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Airspeed Bug" /></td>
<td>The higher of 1.2 x (V_s) or 60KIAS at the low end, and red-line airspeed ((V_{NE}), (V_{MO}), or (M_{MO}))</td>
<td><strong>Can be used as a visual reference. Mutually exclusive with VSI bug.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table RD-2: Airspeed BUGs**

**When integrated with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input as a control parameter for climbs and descents. When vertically integrated with an autopilot, the airspeed bug is filled-white when in airspeed climb or descent mode. Otherwise, the airspeed bug is hollow-white. When not vertically integrated, the airspeed bug is filled-white at all times.**
RD 1.9.1 Airspeed Readout

When enabled the Mach indicator is displayed above the airspeed readout with a resolution of .01 Mach.

Figure RD-11: Airspeed Readout with Mach Number

If in air mode, a red low-speed awareness area from the bottom of the dial to $V_{SO}$.

If in ground mode, a gray area from the bottom of the dial to $V_{SO}$. The airspeed readout is gray but otherwise white in this area.

If a valid $V_{FE}$ exists, a white flap-operating area from $V_{SO}$ to $V_{FE}$. The airspeed is white in this area.

A gray safe-operating area from $V_{FE}$ to $V_{MO}/M_{MO}$ and the airspeed readout is green in this area.

For aircraft with $V_{NE}$:

1) A green safe-operating area from $V_{S1}$ to $V_{NO}/M_{NO}$. The airspeed readout is green in this area.

2) A yellow caution area from $V_{NO}/M_{NO}$ to $V_{NE}/M_{MO}$. The airspeed is yellow in this area.

3) A red radial line at $V_{NE}/M_{MO}$. The airspeed readout is red at or above the radial line.

For aircraft with $V_{MO}$:

1) A grey safe-operating area from $V_{FE}$ (if existing) to $V_{SO}$ to $V_{MO}/M_{MO}$. The airspeed is green in this area.

2) A red radial line at $V_{MO}/M_{MO}$. The airspeed readout is red at or above this radial line.

The airspeed dial for Part 23 airplanes have additional airspeed markings as follows:

1) For reciprocating multiengine-powered aircraft 6,000 pounds or less, a red radial line at $V_{MC}$. 
2) For reciprocating multiengine-powered aircraft 6,000 pounds or less, a blue radial line at $V_{YSE}$.

The airspeed dial for part 25 airplanes have additional airspeed markings as follows:

1) If in air mode with a pilot-input $V_{REF}$ value:
   a) A red low-speed awareness area from the bottom of the dial to $G$-compensated $1.1 \times V_{SO}$. The airspeed is readout is red in this area.
   b) A yellow low-speed awareness area from $G$-compensated $1.1 \times V_{SO}$ to $G$-compensated $1.2 \times V_{SO}$. The airspeed is yellow in this area.
   c) If a valid $V_{FE}$ exists, a white flap-operating area from $G$-compensated $1.2 \times V_{SO}$ to $V_{FE}$ and a gray normal-operating area from $V_{FE}$ to the lower of $V_{MO}$ or $M_{MO}$. The airspeed is white in the flap-operating area and green in the normal-operating area.
   d) If a valid $V_{FE}$ does not exist, a gray normal-operating area from the bottom of the dial to the lower of $V_{MO}$ or $M_{MO}$. The airspeed readout is green in this area.

2) If in ground mode or without a pilot-input $V_{REF}$ value.
   a) If a valid $V_{FE}$ exists, a white flap-operating area from the bottom of the dial to $V_{FE}$ and a gray normal-operating area from $V_{FE}$ to the lower of $V_{MO}$ or $M_{MO}$. The airspeed readout is gray at 0 but otherwise white in the flap-operating area and green in the normal-operating area.
   b) If a valid $V_{FE}$ does not exist, a gray normal-operating area from the bottom of the dial to the lower of $V_{MO}$ or $M_{MO}$. The airspeed readout is gray at 0 otherwise white below 60 and green at or above 60 in this area.

3) A red radial line at the lower of $V_{MO}$ or $M_{MO}$. The airspeed readout is red at or above the red radial line.

**RD 1.9.2 Takeoff and Landing Speed Bugs**

In airplanes Part 23 or 25 airspeed scale, $V_1$, $V_R$, $V_2$, $V_{ENR}$, $V_{REF}$, and $V_{APP}$ can also be shown on the airspeed dial when set. The $V_1$, $V_R$, and $V_2$ symbols automatically declutter when above 2000 feet AGL.
RD 1.10. Altimeter

The altimeter setting digitally displays the altimeter setting in either inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) according to the pilot-selected units.

Figure RD-13: Altimeter Setting

Figure RD-14: Altimeter QNH
The mode is annunciated as QFE operations. Otherwise, no mode is annunciated.

Figure RD-15: Altimeter QFE

QFE: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (i.e., airport or runway threshold).

QNE: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.

QNH: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

RD 1.11. Altitude Display

The altitude readout digitally displays barometric altitude to the nearest ten feet as adjusted by an altimeter setting and shows a 1000-foot range with labels and graduations every 100 feet. Clockwise rotation of the pointer corresponds to increasing altitude. All graduations are removed when below sea level.

Figure RD-16: Altitude Display

Figure RD-17: Altitude Display (When Below Sea Level)
RD 1.11.1  Loss of ADC Sensor Indication

Figure RD-18: Airspeed and Altitude with Loss of ADC

RD 1.11.2  Altitude Sub-Mode

Altitude sub-mode user-selectable triangular target altitude bug shown here at 4,400’. The bug is limited to -1,000’ up to 50,000’ and is removed when more than 500’ away from current altitude.

Figure RD-19: Target Altitude Bug

The target altitude bug can be used as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the Genesys/S-Tec DFCS or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input, as a climb control parameter for climbs or descents, the bug characteristics indicate the following modes:

1)  Filled-white when in altitude hold mode.
2)  Hollow-white when in a climb or descent mode.
3)  Filled-white during altitude hold capture.

When not vertically integrated with the Genesys/S-Tec DFCS, the target altitude bug is filled-white at all times.
When in VNAV sub-mode, the VNAV altitude bug appears when within 500’ from the current altitude. In this example, the VNAV altitude is 5,100’.

Figure RD-20: VNAV Sub-Mode

The VNAV bug can be used as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the Genesys/S-Tec DFCS or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input as a control parameter for climbs or descents. The following bug characteristics indicate the following modes:

1) Filled-magenta when in altitude hold mode.
2) Hollow-magenta when in a climb or descent mode.
3) Filled-magenta during altitude hold capture.

When not vertically integrated with the Genesys/S-Tec DFCS, the VNAV bug is filled-white at all times.

RD 1.11.3 Metric Altitude

Metric altitude values may be selected from within the declutter menu with a resolution of 1 meter.

Figure RD-21: Metric Altitude

RD 1.12. Vertical Speed Indicator

The VSI located below the altitude display with a readout and dial pointer and scale of ±6,000 feet per minute. The integral scale graduations are ±500, ±1,000, ±3,000 and ±6,000 feet per minute for airplanes with VMO or airspeed scale type FAR part 25, or in applications where TCAS-II is enabled. Otherwise, the scale is ±3,000 with graduations of ±500, ±1,000, ±3,000. CW (upward) rotation of the pointer corresponds to increasing vertical speed while CCW corresponds to decreasing speed digitally displaying vertical speed rounded to the nearest 100 feet per minute.
When TCAS-II is enabled, the background of the VSI functions as an RA display with green and red colored regions to provide RA maneuver guidance.

**Figure RD-23: Vertical Speed Indicator RA Display**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type Traffic Installed</th>
<th>Scale Limit</th>
<th>Scale Graduations and Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With TCAS-II</td>
<td>±6,000 fpm</td>
<td>±500, ±1,000, ±2,000, ±4,000, and ±6,000 fpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Background of the VSI functions as an RA display with green and red regions to provide RA maneuver guidance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without TCAS-II</td>
<td>±3,000 fpm</td>
<td>±500, ±1,000, ±2,000, and ±3,000 fpm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The vertical speed bug is mutually exclusive with the IAS bug and can be used either as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the Genesys S-TEC DFCS or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input as a control parameter for climbs or descents. When vertically integrated, the vertical speed bug is filled-white when in VSI climb or descent mode. Otherwise, the vertical speed bug is hollow-white as shown above on the left. When not vertically integrated with an autopilot, the vertical bug is filled-white at all times.
VSI bug set to +1,000 fpm with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS enabled
VSI bug set to +1,000 fpm without Genesys/S-TEC DFCS enabled

**Figure RD-24: VSI Bugs**

**RD 1.13. Heading Display**

The heading display appears in a blacked-out area on the bottom to emulate a “Basic-T”. The heading display automatically declutters when a compass rose is shown in the bottom area.

**Figure RD-25: Heading Display**

When AHRS is in DG mode, heading indicator appears.

**Figure RD-26: Heading Indicator when AHRS in DG Mode**

**RD 1.14. Heading Failure Mode**

In addition, the equipment has a heading failure mode. With heading failed, the PFD heading scale and MFD compass rose align with track (if available) or are removed and replaced with a red-X.
In this failure mode, the PFD heading scale includes “GPS TRK” around the track marker to clearly delineate the failure mode.

Figure RD-27: GPS TRK

Figure RD-28: Heading Indicator with Heading Failure and Good GPS

Figure RD-29: Heading Indicator with Heading Failure with GPS Failure

RD 1.15. G-Force Indicator

The G-Force indicator located below the VSI has a readout dial and pointer. The scale accommodates any G-Force limits with a minimum of +6/-4G. The dial is centered on 1G including labeled indices at even values and displays G-Force to the nearest tenth G. Clockwise (upward) rotation of the pointer corresponds to increasing G-Force while counter clockwise rotation corresponds to decreasing G-Force.

Figure RD-30: G-Force Indicator

The G-Force indicator includes positive and negative G telltales. The positive G telltale appears whenever positive G-Force exceeds 2.5G. The negative G telltale appears whenever negative G-force is less than 0G. Either G telltale is resettable by the pilot so long as the associated G limit has not been exceeded. If a G limit has been exceeded, the associated telltale can only be cleared by maintenance action. The G telltales automatically reset upon software initialization as long as the associated G limit has not been exceeded.
RD 1.16. Turn Rate Indicator

The turn rate indicator is displayed below the airspeed display. This standard “turn needle” displays marks representing a standard rate turn. The full scale for the turn needle is beyond the standard rate turn mark. This allows the pilot to fly a standard rate turn. The “balance ball” is driven from accelerometers within the AHRS.

RD 1.17. Timer Indication

A countdown or count-up timer can be displayed above the large aircraft reference marks when selected through the menu as described in Section 3 Display Symbology.
RD 1.18. Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI)

Figure RD-34: Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI)

The vertical deviation indicator (VDI) on the right side displays vertical deviation for the selected vertical navigation source for displaying descent profile but disappears in unusual attitude mode.

1) **LPV Mode and LPV1 or LPV2**: When descending on final approach segment in LPV mode. GPS altitude used to generate VDI; pilot may follow guidance to LPV minima regardless of temperature.

2) **LNAV Mode and VNAV1-G or VNAV2-G**: When descending on final approach segment in LP, LNAV/VNAV, and LNAV or RNP modes when using GPS VNAV. GPS altitude used to generate VDI; pilot may follow guidance to LNAV minima regardless of temperature.

3) **LNAV Mode and VNV1-B or VNV2-B**: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode. Using barometric altitude to generate the VDI, pilot may follow guidance to LNAV minima as long as the specified temperature is within limits.

4) **GS1 or GS2**: Glideslope receiver #1 or #2 as indicated. Pilot follows guidance to published barometric DH.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source (Below VDI)</th>
<th>Behavior/Condition</th>
<th>Pointer Color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FMS</td>
<td>Conforms to the VDI display</td>
<td>Magenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glideslope</td>
<td>Source must be valid when a valid glideslope is received.</td>
<td>Magenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPV or VNAV mode</td>
<td>Source is valid if: On VNAV descent segments when approaching top of descent point to provide descent anticipation as long as the following are true: 1) On VNAV descent segments; or</td>
<td>Magenta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table RD-4: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source (Below VDI)</th>
<th>Behavior/Condition</th>
<th>Pointer Color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) If the vertical deviations on VNAV level segments option is enabled, on VNAV level segments; or 3) If the vertical deviations on VNAV level segments option is disabled, when approaching the Top of Descent point to provide descent anticipation; Providing: 1) Aircraft is within 2NM or twice the full scale deflection for the mode of flight (whichever is greater) of the lateral navigation route; and 2) Aircraft is in TO operation relative to the active VNAV waypoint (i.e., taking into account VNAV offsets); and 3) If on the final approach segment, aircraft is within a 35° lateral wedge of the azimuth reference point (either GARP or MAWPT + 10,000 ft.).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPV,VNV-G</td>
<td>During GPS LON or GPS VLON</td>
<td>Pointer and Text Color Amber (Yellow)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure RD-35: VDI Color during GPS/SBAS LON or VLON**
RD 1.19. Course Deviation Indicator

The order of precedence of type accuracy used by the system from highest to lowest is as follows:

1) Manual RNP: The pilot may override the automatic accuracy types by setting a manual RNP value.

2) Automatic RNP: These are based upon RNP values, which are coded in the navigation database. The EFIS looks at the leg coding on all legs other than those on the final approach segment. On the final approach segment, the EFIS looks at the “Level of Service” record for those approaches, which have RNP transition legs, and then goes to LP or LPV minima for the final approach.

3) Default TSO-C146C operation: As specified as per Table RD-5 for enroute, terminal, and various approach modes according to the Level of Service record.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDI Pointer and Condition</th>
<th>Color or Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full Scale Deflection</td>
<td>Flash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slaved to GPS/SBAS</td>
<td>Scale is appropriate FSD value for mode of flight:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Enroute</strong>: ±2NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>From Enroute to Terminal</strong>: Change from ±2 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering terminal mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>From Terminal to Enroute</strong>: Change from ±1 NM FSD to ±2 NM FSD over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table RD-5: CDI Behavior and Color

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDI Pointer and Condition</th>
<th>Color or Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering enroute mode.</td>
<td><strong>From Terminal to Approach</strong>: If VTF, switch immediately. Otherwise, change from ±1 NM FSD to approach FSD over distance of 2 NM; start transition at 2 NM from FAWP. <strong>From Approach to Terminal</strong>: Change to ±1 NM. <strong>From Departure to Terminal</strong>: If initial leg is aligned with runway, change from ±0.3 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD at the turn initiation point of the first fix in the departure procedure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CDI images below represent installations with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS integrated autopilot or without an autopilot enabled.

- **Nav source FMS1 GPS/SBAS (with GPS LON) amber (yellow) OBS manual mode with a “FROM” indication.**

- **Nav source FMS1 GPS/SBAS (with GPS LON) amber (yellow) OBS automatic mode with a “TO” indication.**

- **Normal conditions Magenta**

- **In sources other than FMS Angular scale annunciation**

- **Nav source is localizer (course error exceeds 105°). Reverse sensing with distance to approach threshold**

- **Lateral deviations in failed state Red “X” displayed over CDI**

- **Nav source FMS1 in auto waypoint sequencing mode**

- **Nav source FMS1 in manual OBS mode with a “TO’ indication. Waypoint sequencing is suspended.**

- **Nav source Fms1 in manual OBS mode with a “FROM” indication. Waypoint sequencing is suspended.**
Table RD-5: CDI Behavior and Color

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDI Pointer and Condition</th>
<th>Color or Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nav source FMS1 in automatic OBS mode with true north mode. Only applicable for CDI in this GPS/SBAS navigation source.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nav source VLOC1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nav source VLOC2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nav source VOR1 with “TO” indication. Currently on a bearing 289°/14.6NM to the VOR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nav source VOR1 with a “FROM” indication on a bearing of 344° to the VOR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nav source VOR2 with “TO” indication on a bearing of 145°/46.3NM to the VOR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When laterally integrated with an autopilot, either fully integrated Genesys/S-TEC DFCS or partially integrated through use of the NAV/APR mode discrete input with either the NAV, LOC, APPR or BC modes engaged, the selected navigation source is annunciated green to indicate that the autopilot is laterally coupled to the selected navigation source. Otherwise, the selected navigation source is annunciated white.

Table RD-6: CDI Lateral Mode Indication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDI Pointer and Condition*</th>
<th>Color or Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heading bug sub-mode guidance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNAV sub-mode guidance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure Sub-Mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Installations with an analog autopilot enabled.
RD 1.20. Vertical Deviation Indicator (EFIS Coupled)

When vertically integrated with Genesys S/TEC DFCS enabled through glideslope mode discrete input with glideslope mode engaged, the selected vertical navigation source is green indicating the AP is vertically coupled. Otherwise, the source is white.

Figure RD-37: EFIS Coupled Vertically with Glideslope Mode

When not decluttered, the PFD displays the active navigation route or manual OBS course and VDI path in conventional analog navigation symbology. See Section 7 IFR Procedures for details.

RD 1.21. Active Waypoint and Waypoint Identifier

Figure RD-38: Active Waypoint
See Section 3 Display Symbology for more information.

**RD 2. GPS Failure**

GPS degrades or fails because of loss of satellite information or GPS equipment failure. When SBAS provides the integrity, the IDU provides a loss of integrity (LOI) caution within two seconds if the current horizontal protection level (HPL) exceeds the horizontal alert level (HAL).

![LOI caution appears when there is no integrity monitoring and disappears when it is restored.](image)

**Figure RD-39: Loss of Integrity (LOI)**

Further GPS degradation causes the EFIS to lose GPS updating of aircraft position, groundspeed, and ground track, and the ability to calculate the wind information.

1) **LOI** (Loss of Integrity) displayed with no time delay.

2) HPL > HAL for the phase of flight currently in. Position is still presented based upon a GPS navigation solution.

3) **LOI** (Loss of Navigation) displayed with no time delay of the onset of the following:
   
a) The absence of power;

b) Equipment malfunction or failure;

c) The presence of a condition lasting five seconds or more where there are an inadequate number of satellites to compute position solution;

d) Fault detects a position failure that cannot be excluded within time-to-alert when integrity is provided by FDE;

e) HPL > HAL on the final approach segment. Genesys Aerosystems EFIS does not transition to DR navigation at this stage. A GPS navigation solution is still presented; and

f) Where HPL > HAL on the final approach segment, this position may still be satisfactory for GPS navigation. For example, an HPL of 0.31NM exists, which means as soon as a transition to terminal mode occurs, all alerts disappear. This is significantly important during a wind change if the system had been in a DR mode.
NOTE:
At any time, view HFOM on the FAULTS page to see the system-reported accuracy.

4) Loss of Vertical Navigation

Figure RD-40: Loss of Vertical Navigation (VLON)

RD 3. PFD Failure Mode 0

Figure RD-41: PFD Failure Mode 0 GPS, ADC and AHRS Normal
RD 3.1. PFD Failure Mode 1

Figure RD-42: PFD Failure Mode 1 GPS/SBAS Failed, ADC and AHRS Normal

RD 3.2. PFD Failure Mode 2

Figure RD-43: PFD Failure Mode 2 ADC Failed, GPS/SBAS and AHRS Normal
Search and Rescue (SAR) Patterns

SAR 1. Search and Rescue (SAR) Patterns

When enabled by EFIS system limits, the pilot can create one SAR pattern at an eligible flight plan waypoint and only one waypoint within the active flight plan. The current position of the aircraft is determined relative to that desired path for lateral deviation for display on the GPS/SBAS CDI. In most cases, the IDU auto-sequences from one waypoint to the next similar to all other flight plan sequencing along the flight path.

The SAR option is available for any waypoint except the following:

1) Suppressed waypoint
2) Skipped waypoint
3) Manual termination waypoint
4) Waypoint that is part of an IFR or VFR approach
5) Holding pattern waypoint
6) SAR pattern exit waypoint
7) Waypoint that begins a departure procedure
8) Parallel offset entry or exit waypoint
9) Dynamic termination waypoint (altitude termination, DME termination, radial termination or intercept termination)

SAR patterns can be created in the **RUN DEMONSTRATOR/TRAINING PROGRAM** Ground Maintenance Page or the EFIS Training Tool. After the SAR pattern is created and saved, that flight plan can be uploaded to any IDU or all IDUs in an aircraft for later use.

The desired flight path is created from a sequence of straight, left, and right turning leg segments to provide smooth skyway, GPS/SBS CDI, and lateral autopilot guidance. SAR patterns are drawn at the lowest of holding or procedure speed.

**SAR 1.1. SAR Pattern Step-by-Step Procedures**

To select a SAR pattern, follow these step-by-step procedures. Refer to subsequent sections for additional details and examples for the individual patterns.
1) Press **ACTV (L2)** and rotate ⬇️ to desired eligible waypoint to begin SAR pattern creation process and push to enter.

2) Press **ACTV (L2)** and then rotate ⬇️ to **SAR PTRN..** and push to enter.

3) Rotate ⬇️ to one of the five SAR pattern options and push to enter.
   *Pattern includes the option to select individual legs within the SAR pattern for navigation guidance.
   
   a) Expanding Square*
   b) Rising Ladder*
   c) Orbit
   d) Race Track
   e) Sector Search*

4) Rotate ⬇️ through each step, create the desired parameters (e.g., direction, track, leg length, leg spacing, and number of legs), and push to enter.

   See following sub-sections for more details for parameters of each pattern.
5) After SAR pattern is created, it appears on the MAP, MINI MAP, and active flight plan.

6) To select a SAR pattern individual legs rotate \( \odot \) to SAR pattern EXIT WPT as it appears in magenta and push to enter.

7) Rotate \( \odot \) to **SAR SGMNT..** and push to enter.

8) Rotate \( \odot \) to desired leg for navigation guidance.
9) Control the aircraft to new magenta line for maneuvering to begin following navigation guidance.

See § SAR 2, SAR 3, and 0 for examples of selected segments.

10) To delete existing SAR pattern, Press ACTV (L2). Rotate ❶ to SAR pattern and press DELETE (R3).

11) Push ❶ to confirm.

SAR 2. Expanding Square Pattern

Figure SAR-1: Expanding Square Pattern

Figure SAR-2: Expanding Square Pattern Parameters
### Table SAR-1: Expanding Square Pattern Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Increments (Range)/Direction</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Turn</td>
<td>Left or Right</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Track</td>
<td>Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments</td>
<td>Magnetic or True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg Spacing</td>
<td>0.25NM (0.25 to 10NM)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Legs</td>
<td>1 to 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Direction of Turn](image1.png)

**Figure SAR-3: Expanding Square Pattern-Turn and Leg**

![Leg Spacing](image2.png)

**Figure SAR-4: Expanding Square Pattern-Individual Leg Selected**
SAR 3. Rising Ladder Pattern

Figure SAR-5: Rising Ladder Pattern

Table SAR-2: Rising Ladder Pattern Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Increments (Range)/Direction</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Turn</td>
<td>Left or Right</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Track</td>
<td>Outbound from previous</td>
<td>Magnetic or True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>waypoint in 1° increments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg Length</td>
<td>0.5 NM (1NM to 100NM)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg Spacing</td>
<td>0.25NM (0.25 to 25NM)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Legs</td>
<td>1 to 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure SAR-6: Rising Ladder Pattern Parameters

Figure SAR-7: Rising Ladder Pattern-Turn, Leg, and Track
SAR 4. Orbit Pattern

The SAR exit waypoint is a duplicate of the previous waypoint. This SAR pattern is unique in that the navigation path never goes through the waypoint. The path is a circle around the waypoint intercepted along tangents. With no other menus displayed on the PFD, CONT (L2) appears to allow for continuing out of the orbit and normal sequencing in the active flight plan.
SAR 5. Race Track Pattern

Figure SAR-11: Orbit Pattern-Turn and Radius

Figure SAR-12: Race Track Pattern
With no other menus displayed, CONT (L2) appears for continuing out of the racetrack and normal sequencing in the active flight plan.

**Figure SAR-13: Race Track Pattern CONT (L2)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Increments (Range)/Direction</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Turn</td>
<td>Left or Right</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Track</td>
<td>Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments</td>
<td>Magnetic or True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg Length</td>
<td>0.5 NM (1NM to 100NM)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg Spacing</td>
<td>0.25NM (0.25 to 10NM)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure SAR-14: Race Track Pattern Parameters**

**Figure SAR-15: Race Track Pattern-Turn, Leg, and Track**
SAR 6. Sector Search Pattern

![Figure SAR-16: Sector Search Pattern](image)

![Figure SAR-17: Sector Search Pattern Parameters](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Increments (Range)/Direction</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Turn</td>
<td>Left or Right</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Track</td>
<td>Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments</td>
<td>Magnetic or True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg Length</td>
<td>0.5 NM (1NM to 100NM)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure SAR-18: Race Track Pattern-Turn and Track

INIT TURN: LEFT

INIT TRACK: 348°

Figure SAR-19: Sector Search Pattern-Individual Leg Selected
INDEX

500-Foot Wake-Up Call ................................................................. 3-3, 5-57, 8-2, 8-5, 8-15
ADAHRS ......................................................................................... 2-1, 2-17, 2-22, 3-57
ADF ........................................................................................................ 2-1, 2-13, 3-57, 5-12, 5-66 to 68
ADS-B (ADSB) .......................................................... 2-1, 2-2, 2-12, 2-15, 2-30 to 31, 5-60, T-6 to 7, D-2, D-5, D-12
AGL Indication ................................................................. 3-8 to 9, RD-4
Air Data .................................................................................. 2-1, 2-35, 3-44, 3-61, 4-8, 5-61, 8-16 to 17, 8-22, S-2, D-5, WX-12, WX-15
Aircraft
In the Air .......................................................... 2-21, 2-47, 5-44 to 45, 5-62, WX-1
On the Ground ........................................ 2-18, 2-33, 2-39, 2-48 to 49, 3-26, 3-37, 3-51, 5-44 to 45, 5-54
Referenced .......................................................................................... 7-8
Airport .................................................................................. 2-32, 3-4, 3-25, 3-37 to 38, 3-52, 5-8, 5-28, 5-33, 5-42 to 45, 5-57, 6-6 to 7, 7-1 to 5, 7-19, 7-25, 7-35 to 39, 7-43, 7-47, 7-51, 7-55 to 57, 7-61, 8-18, T-6, S-4, D-2 to 3, D-9 to 12, WX-9, WX-15, RD-10
Airspace .................................................................................. 3-47, 4-4, 5-40, 5-60, 5-68, 7-32
Depiction .................................................................................. 3-46 to 47
Airspeed
Bug ............................................................................. 3-7 to 8, 3-11 to 12, 5-4, 5-50, 5-53, RBP-2 to 3, RD-6
Display .................................................................................. 3-11, 3-15, RD-5 to 6, RD-16
True .................................................................................. 2-6, 2-9, 2-12, 3-45, 4-3 to 5, 7-11 to 12
Airway(s) .................................................................................. 2-46, 3-46 to 47, 3-63, 5-28, 5-68, 7-25
AIU ........................................................................................................ 5-60
Altimeter
Menu .................................................................................. 5-7, 5-57 to 58
Setting .................................................................................. 2-39, 3-3 to 4, 5-13, 5-57, RD-9 to 10
Altitude
Bug Menu (ASEL) ................................................................. 2-1
Capture Predictor ........................................................................ 3-53, T-5, D-8
Display .................................................................................. 3-3 to 5, T-2 to 3, RD-10 to 12
Minimum .................................................................................. 2-43, 3-6 to 7, 5-4, 5-50, 7-48, RBP-2 to 3
Miscompare Threshold ....................................................................... 1-3
Sub-Mode................................................................. 3-4 to 6, 5-8, RD-11
Target.............................................................. 2-1, 3-4 to 6, 3-37, T-5, RBP-1 to 3, RD-11
Amber (Yellow)........................................... 2-24 to 25, 2-43, 3-7, 3-10, 3-13 to 15, 3-25, 3-31, 3-35 to 38, 3-45, 3-48, 3-55, 3-58 to 60, 3-63, 7-1, 7-53, 8-23, T-5 to 6, S-4, D-2, D-6 to 9, RD-5, RD-18 to 20
Analog AGL Indicator (ANLG AGL).................. 3-9 to 10, 5-55 to 56, 6-3, T-3
Analog Navigation Symbology.......................... 3-48 to 51, 3-59, 6-3, T-3
Approach ......................................................... 2-1 to 7, 2-34, 3-31, 3-41, 5-20, 6-6 to 7, 7-4 to 10, 7-23 to 35, 7-38, 7-42, 7-46, 7-50, 7-55, 7-60, 7-64, 8-1, 8-4 to 6, 8-12, D-3, RD-20
APPR ................................................................. 2-1, 6-7, 7-29, 7-58, RD-21
APV ............................................................................. 2-1, 7-5
ARM .............................................................. 2-41, 5-8, 7-5, 7-40, 7-43, 7-48, 7-52, 7-57, 7-62
Atmospheric Perspective................................. 3-2, 3-22 to 24
BACK ............................................................................. 5-2, 5-17, 5-22, 5-37, WX-20
Bank Scale (BANK SCL) ..................................... 3-28, 5-47, 5-55 to 56
BARO ......................................................... 2-2, 2-13, 2-19, 3-3, 5-7 to 8, 5-57 to 60, 6-2, 7-5
BARO-VNAV ................................................................. 7-5
Basic Mode ..................................................... 3-1, 3-21 to 22, 3-26 to 28, 5-5, 5-55, 7-7
Blue.............................................................. 2-24, 3-22 to 24, 3-47, 3-51, 3-60, 7-46, 7-50, 7-60, D-2 to 3, RD-8
Borders ............................................................ 2-24, 3-49 to 50, 5-68, D-9
Boundary Circle ................................................ 3-43, 3-57, T-5, D-5 to 8
Brown ............................................................. 2-24, 3-3, 3-22 to 24, 3-51
BUGS ........................................................... 2-49, 5-10, 5-50 to 52, 7-4, 7-48
Button/Menu/Encoder Functions ..................... 1-3, 3-54, 5-1, 5-6, 8-3, T-8, RBP-2, S-5, D-9, D-13, WX-15
CENTER/ARC ...................................................... 5-68, S-5
Compass Rose ............................................. 3-43, 3-57 to 58, 4-3 to 5, 7-19, 9-3, T-4 to 5, D-5, RD-14
CONFIRM DEL ..................................................... 5-19, 6-5
CONT ............................................................ 2-2, 2-42, 5-8, 7-5, 7-40, 7-49, 7-54, 7-65, SAR-7 to 9
Course Deviation Indicator (CDI)...................... 2-2, 2-23, 3-8 to 10, 3-22, 3-30 to 33, 3-47, 3-55, 3-58 to 61, 4-2, 4-5, 5-38, 6-3, 7-5, 7-11, 7-18, 7-22, 7-26 to 28, 7-48 to 49, 7-53, 7-57, T-6, S-4, D-8 to 9, RD-4, RD-19 to 21, SAR-1
Scale ............................................................... 3-59, 7-27
CRS SYNC .......................................................... 5-36, 5-42
Cyan............................................................. 2-23, 3-38, 3-48, 3-57 to 61, 7-49, D-2 to 4, WX-11
Database

Jeppesen ................................................................. 1-3, 2-45, 2-48, 3-24

NavData® ............................................................... 2-45 to 47, 3-37, 5-6, 7-1, 7-4, 7-12

Navigation .................................. 2-23, 2-41, 2-45 to 49, 3-31, 3-38 to 39, 3-63, 7-1,
........................................ 7-4 to 7, 7-11 to 13, 7-16, 7-25 to 27, 8-9, 8-19, RD-19

Obstruction ......................................................... 2-22, 2-45 to 49

Terrain ................................................................. 2-33, 2-48, 8-18 to 20

Update ........................................................................ 1-2, 2-48

Datalink .................................................. 1-3, 2-3, 2-12, 2-17, 3-40, 3-48, 3-62, 5-1 to 3, 5-7, 5-12, 5-64,
........................................................................................ D-1 to 13, WX-2

Page (DATALINK) .................................................... 5-64, D-4, D-11

DCLTR .................................................. 2-2, 3-44, 5-11 to 12, 5-55 to 57, 5-66 to 70, T-8, D-11,
...................................................................................... WX-3, WX-6

DCND ........................................................................ 2-2, 5-53 to 54

Dead Reckoning (DR) ........................................... 2-3, 2-41 to 43, 4-7 to 8, 7-19

Decision Height (DEC HT) ...... 2-3, 2-43, 3-9 to 10, 5-4 to 5, 5-50, 5-53,
.............................................................. RBP-2 to 3, RD-5

DELETE .................................................. 5-19, 5-22, 5-30, 6-5, SAR-4, SAR-11

Demonstrator .................................................................. 2-48 to 49

Density Altitude ......................................................... 3-45, 4-3 to 5

Departure .................................. 1-3, 2-3, 2-7 to 9, 2-34, 3-31, 3-63, 7-4, 7-11, 7-22 to 25,
........................................ 7-28, 7-31 to 35, 7-56, 7-66, 8-3 to 6, 8-19, RD-20, SAR-1

DESIG ................................................................. 2-3, 5-10 to 11, 5-14, 6-4

DG Mode ................................................................... 3-17, T-4, RD-14

Direct.... 2-3, 3-52 to 53, 5-7 to 8, 5-33, 5-44 to 45, 7-12 to 13, 7-16 to 21,
.................................................. 7-57

Direct-To .......................................................... 3-52, 5-8, 7-12, 7-16 to 21

Discontinuity .................................................. 3-64, 5-31, 5-44, 7-13 to 21, 7-30 to 31

DME ....2-2 to 3, 2-10, 2-13, 2-24, 2-39, 3-47 to 48, 3-53, 3-60, 7-11 to 14,
........................................ 7-17, 7-35, 7-46, 7-59 to 62, SAR-1

DONE .................................................. 5-50, 5-56, 5-66, 5-70

Download .................................................................. 9-8

DP .................................................. 2-3, 3-38, 3-63, 7-2 to 4, 7-11 to 14, 7-20, 7-32, 8-3

EFIS Training Tool (ETT) ........................................... 1-3, 2-3, 2-49, SAR-1

EICAS ........................................................................ 3-40, 5-13
Enroute .................. 2-3, 2-34, 2-46, 3-31, 3-37, 3-46, 3-63, 5-23, 7-4, 7-11, 7-22 to 28, 7-33 to 34, 7-52, 8-3 to 6, RD-19
Enter Identifier ............................................................................. 5-21, 5-30
Estimated Time Enroute (ETE) .................................................. 2-3, 3-45, 3-64 to 65
Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) ............................................. 2-3, 3-45, 3-65, 5-6, 5-25, 5-68
EXIT .................. 2-22, 5-2, 5-16 to 19, 5-22 to 25, 5-37, 5-40, 5-50, 5-54 to 56, 5-66, 5-70, 6-2 to 5, SAR-3
EXPAND CAS ............................................................................. 2-45, 5-11 to 12
FAF .................. 2-3, 3-63, 5-7 to 8, 7-2, 7-10, 7-14, 7-40, 7-43, 7-48, 7-52, 7-57, 7-62, 8-9
FAULTS .. 4-7, 5-11, 5-23, 5-59 to 61, 7-33, T-7, S-4, D-12, WX-14, RD-24
FAWP .................. 2-3, 2-42, 2-46, 3-31, 4-8, 7-2, 7-14, 7-23 to 34, RD-20
Field of View (FOV) .................................................. 2-4, 2-25, 3-22, 3-24, 3-27, 3-51, 3-56, 5-11
Field Path Marker (FPM) .......... 2-4, 3-2, 3-18 to 22, 3-25 to 27, 4-2, 5-53, 7-53, 9-1, 9-4
Flight Path Marker (FPM) .......... 2-4, 3-2, 3-18 to 22, 3-25 to 27, 4-2, 5-53, 7-53, 9-1, 9-4
FLTA .................. 2-4, 2-27 to 29, 2-33, 2-37 to 38, 2-42, 3-24, 3-51, 5-3, 5-7, 7-58, 8-1 to 8, 8-19 to 25, WX-2
FMS .................. 1-1, 2-4, 2-15 to 17, 2-40, 3-28, 3-31, 3-34, 3-58 to 60, 3-64, 5-4, 5-8, 5-37 to 39, 5-64 to 66, 6-3 to 6, 7-2 to 3, 7-44, 7-49, RD-2, RD-17, RD-20
FORMAT .................. 5-11 to 12, 5-67 to 70, T-7 to 8, S-5, D-10 to 11, WX-3 to 4

Index-4
Fuel Remaining ................................................................. 3-45, 3-62, 3-65
Geodesic Path ................................................................. 7-15 to 16, 7-19
Geo-Referenced ............................................................... 7-9
Glideslope .. 2-5, 2-13, 2-22 to 23, 2-27 to 31, 2-34, 2-37, 2-40, 3-34 to 36, 
. 3-59, 7-41, 7-44, 7-57 to 58, 8-2, 8-14 to 16, 8-20 to 22, RD-17, RD-22
GPS ........... 2-4, 2-13, 2-20 to 23, 2-34, 2-37 to 43, 3-9, 3-17, 3-31 to 38,
. 3-43 to 45, 3-50, 3-54 to 55, 3-58, 3-63, 4-1, 4-4 to 16, 5-23 to 25, 5-38,
.. 5-59 to 62, 7-1, 7-4 to 7, 7-11, 7-19, 7-22 to 23, 7-26 to 30, 7-34 to 35,
.......... 7-50 to 52, 7-57 to 58, 7-62, 7-66, 8-3 to 6, 8-9, 8-12, 8-16 to 21,
......................... T-5 to 6, RBP-2, S-4, D-8 to 9, RD-5, RD-15 to 25, SAR-1
ALMANAC ............................................................................. 5-60
Altitude ................................................................................. 7-19
EQPMNT ................................................................................. 5-59
FDE ....................................................................................... 5-59
HFOM ...................................................................................... 5-60
HPL ......................................................................................... 5-60
LOI ........................................................................................ 5-59
LON ............. 3-31, 3-35 to 37, 3-45, 3-55, 3-58, 3-63, 7-1, T-5 to 6, S-4,
. ............................................................................. D-8 to 9, RD-18 to 20
PWR ...................................................................................... 5-59
SATLT ...................................................................................... 5-59
TRK ......................................................................................... 4-5, RD-15
VFOM ..................................................................................... 5-60
VPL ......................................................................................... 5-60
GPS/SBAS ....... 2-22, 2-34, 2-37 to 43, 3-9, 3-31 to 34, 3-38, 3-43, 3-50,
. 3-54 to 55, 3-58, 4-1, 4-4, 4-10 to 16, 5-23 to 25, 5-59 to 60, 7-5 to 6,
. 7-11, 7-19, 7-22 to 23, 7-26 to 27, 7-30, 7-34, 7-52, 8-3 to 6, 8-9, 8-12,
.... 8-16 to 21, T-5 to 6, S-4, D-8 to 9, RD-5, RD-18 to 21, RD-25, SAR-1
Navigation Mode ............................................................... 7-22 to 23, 8-3
GPWS Modes ....... 2-27 to 29, 2-37, 2-40, 8-1 to 2, 8-10 to 16, 8-20 to 22
Gray ..... 2-23 to 24, 3-3, 3-13 to 15, 3-39, 3-56, 3-63, 7-1, 7-43, 7-51, T-6,
. ............................................................................. D-2 to 3, D-9, WX-11, RD-7 to 8
Green .. 2-24, 3-5 to 15, 3-36 to 38, 3-47 to 48, 3-53, 3-57 to 61, 6-2, 7-44,
. ..... 7-48, 7-61 to 62, T-3 to 5, S-3, D-2 to 3, D-6 to 8, WX-11, RD-7 to 8,
. ............................................................................. RD-13, RD-21 to 22
Groundspeed .... 2-22 to 23, 2-32 to 34, 3-17, 3-44 to 45, 3-54, 3-61 to 64,
. 4-3, 4-6 to 8, 7-7, 8-3 to 8, 8-17, T-5 to 6, S-2, D-5, D-8, WX-12, RD-23
Heading
Display ........................................................................................................... 3-16, RD-14
Heading Up (HDG UP) .................................................................................. 3-43, 4-4, 5-68 to 69, 8-8
North Up (N UP) .......................................................................................... 5-68 to 69, WX-2
Pointer ......................................................................................................... 3-16, 3-51, T-5, D-8
Heading Bug ................................................................................................. 3-16, 3-33, 5-4, 5-7 to 8, 5-40 to 42, 6-2, 7-3, T-5, RBP-2, D-8
Sub-Mode .................................................................................................... 5-7, RD-21
Hidden Surface Removal Techniques .......................................................... 3-22, 3-37 to 38, 7-7
Highway in the Sky (HITS) ......................................................................... 1-1, 2-5, 3-2, 3-22, 3-36, 4-2 to 4, 7-5 to 10, 7-57, 7-61 to 62
Skyway (SKYWAY). 2-18, 2-24, 3-36, 3-55, 5-5, 5-31, 5-44, 5-55 to 56, 7-6 to 7, 7-11, 7-17, 9-1, T-6, S-4, D-8 to 9, SAR-1
HOLD .................................. 3-60, 3-63, 7-2, 7-39 to 40, 7-49, 7-64
Holding Pattern ............................................................................................. 2-41, 3-64, 5-8, 7-2 to 5, 7-11 to 16, 7-24, 7-39, 7-64 to 66
IAP .................................................................................................................. 2-5, 7-26
IAS .. 2-5, 2-26, 2-29 to 30, 2-35, 2-49, 3-11, 4-3, 5-50, 5-53, RD-6, RD-13
IFR
APPR ................................................................. 6-6, 7-39, 7-43, 7-47, 7-51, 7-61, 8-18
Procedures .................................................................................................. 3-36, 3-52, 3-57, 5-26, 7-1, 7-4, RD-22
ILS .................. 2-5, 5-36, 5-42 to 44, 7-5, 7-30, 7-35 to 39, 7-42, 7-55 to 57, 7-64 to 66, 8-2, 8-14 to 16, 8-20 to 22
CONFIRM ACTIVATE ............................................................................... 5-42
NRST ILS ..................................................................................................... 5-42, 7-35, 7-55
INFO ..... 2-5, 5-7 to 8, 5-17, 5-21, 5-25, 5-28 to 30, 5-33 to 36, 5-42 to 45, 3-5 to 12, D-3, D-10 to 12
inHg/mbar .......... 2-5 to 7, 2-40 to 41, 3-3 to 4, 5-57 to 58, RD-9 to 10
Initialization ..... 1-2, 2-16 to 17, 2-22, 2-48 to 49, 6-1, 8-18 to 19, RBP-2, RD-15
International Standard Atmosphere (ISA)................................................. 2-6, 3-44, 4-3
Latitude/Longitude .... 2-6, 2-17, 2-32, 2-45, 3-23, 5-19, 5-35, 5-68 to 70, 7-19
LNAV .. 2-6, 2-41, 2-46, 3-33 to 34, 3-64, 4-7 to 8, 5-7, 7-4 to 7, 7-22 to 24, 7-29 to 30, 7-33 to 34, 7-58, 7-66, RBP-1 to 3, RD-17, RD-21
Approach .................................................................................................. 2-41, 2-46, 7-22 to 23, 7-33 to 34
Sub-Mode ................................................................. 5-7, RBP-3, RD-21
LNAV/VNAV .......................................................... 2-41, 2-46, 3-34, 4-7, 7-4 to 6, 7-22 to 24, 7-29, 7-33 to 34, RD-17
Approach ......................................................... 2-41, 4-7, 7-22 to 24, 7-33 to 34
Log Files ............................................................................ 9-7
Loss of Integrity (LOI) ................. 2-6, 2-43, 4-6, 5-59, 7-33 to 34, 8-16, RD-23
Loss of Navigation (LON) .......... 2-6, 2-10, 2-43, 3-17, 3-58, 4-6, 5-59 to 60, 7-32 to 33, 8-16, RD-23
LP ................................... 2-6, 2-41, 2-46, 3-31 to 34, 7-4 to 5, 7-22 to 24, 7-29, 7-33 to 34, 7-66, RD-17 to 19
LPV ...... 2-6, 2-41, 2-46, 3-31 to 35, 7-4 to 6, 7-22 to 25, 7-29, 7-33 to 35, 7-50 to 52, RD-17 to 19
Lubber Line .................................................................. 3-51 to 53, T-5, D-8
Magenta .................. 2-23, 3-6, 3-31, 3-34 to 38, 3-45, 3-55 to 58, 3-63, 6-2, 7-1, 7-41, 7-45, 7-49 to 51, 7-59 to 63, T-5 to 6, S-4, D-2 to 4, D-8 to 9, WX-11, RD-12, RD-17, RD-20, SAR-3 to 4
Map
Mini .......................................................... 3-9, 3-38, 3-55, 4-2, T-6, S-4, D-8 to 9
Moving ........................................................... 3-40 to 41, WX-2
Page (MAP) .................................................................. WX-2
Marker Beacon(s) ......................... 2-23, 3-28, 3-60 to 61, RD-2
MENU .... 1-3, 5-7 to 9, 5-14, 5-47, 5-50 to 52, 5-56 to 57, 5-61, 5-64 to 66, 5-69 to 70, 6-4, 6-7, 7-40 to 41, 7-47 to 48, 7-53, 7-58, 7-63, D-11, 7-13, 7-17, 7-40, 7-65, 8-2, T-1, T-7 to 9, S-2 to 6, D-4, 6-3 to 7, 7-13, 7-17, 7-40, 7-65, 8-2, T-1, T-7 to 9, S-2 to 6, D-4, D-10 to 13, WX-1 to 3, WX-14 to 16, RD-1, RD-14
Metric (METERS) .................................................. 3-3, 5-56, RD-12
MFD ....... 1-2, 2-7, 2-11 to 12, 2-15 to 17, 2-21, 2-24, 3-1 to 2, 3-24, 3-40, 3-61, 4-5 to 16, 5-1 to 7, 5-11 to 23, 5-31 to 33, 5-42, 5-47 to 70, 6-3 to 7, 7-13, 7-17, 7-40, 7-65, 8-2, T-1, T-4, T-7 to 9, S-2 to 6, D-4, D-10 to 13, WX-1 to 3, WX-14 to 16, RD-1, RD-14
Fault Display .................................................. 5-59 to 61, T-7, D-12, WX-14
HSI Pointer .................................................. 3-58
Page (PAGE) .................. 5-11, 5-14, 5-63 to 65, 5-69, 7-40, 7-47, 7-58, T-4, S-2 to 4, D-4, D-10 to 11, WX-16
Page Format .......................................................... 5-69
Minima .......................................................... 7-35, 7-50
Minimums (MINS) .... 2-43, 3-7, 5-50, 5-53, 7-44, 7-48, 7-53, D-3
MISS .......................................................... 2-41, 5-7, 7-5, 7-48, 7-57, 7-62
NAV VLOC .................................................................................................................. 7-43

Navigation Display (ND) ................................................ 2-7, 3-24, 3-40, 3-43 to 51, 3-54 to 60, 4-3 to 5,
........................................... 5-1, 5-7 to 11, 5-64, 5-67 to 70, 7-17, 7-53, 7-66, 8-1 to 3, 8-8,
........................................... 8-21 to 22, S-1, S-4, D-2, D-10, WX-2, WX-7, WX-15

Navigation Log (NAV LOG) ........................................ 3-40, 3-62 to 63, 5-27, 5-64 to 65, 7-1, 7-37,
.................................................................................................................................. 7-47

Columns ............................................................................................................ 3-63 to 65

NDB .......................... 2-7, 3-37, 3-47, 3-52, 3-57, 5-15, 5-29, 5-33, 5-42, 6-4 to 5

Nearest (NRST) Menu .................................................................. 2-7, 3-52, 5-7 to 8, 5-15, 5-29 to 30, 5-33,
.................................................. 5-41 to 43, 6-4 to 5, 7-35, 7-55 to 57, D-3, D-12

NO RESULTS ........................................................................ 5-29 to 30, 5-41

OASIS .................................................. 5-6, 5-56, T-7, S-5

Obstruction(s) ................. 2-19, 2-22, 2-27 to 29, 2-38, 2-45 to 49, 3-2, 3-22 to 24,
.................................................. 3-50, 7-4, 8-3, 8-24 to 25

ODP ............................................................................................... 2-7

OFF .......................................... 5-7, 5-10 to 11, 5-20, 5-28, 5-46 to 47, 5-50, 5-53 to 54, 5-61, 5-69,
.................................................. T-8, S-5, D-9 to 11, WX-3 to 5, WX-12 to 14, WX-17 to 20

Olive .................................................. 2-24, 3-24, 3-51

Omnibearing Selector (OBS) ......................................... 2-7, 2-17, 2-41, 3-32, 3-36, 3-54 to 55,
.............. 3-58, 3-61, 5-4, 5-7 to 8, 5-37 to 39, 5-42, 6-5 to 6, 7-5 to 6, 7-43,
.................................................. 7-46 to 48, 7-57, T-6, RBP-2, S-4, D-8 to 9, RD-20 to 22

AUTO ......................................................................................... 5-37

Manual ............................................................................................ 3-55, 6-6

Menu ......................................................................................... 5-37 to 39

SYNC ........................................................................ 5-37 to 38, 6-6

Operation

FROM .................................................................................. 5-8, 7-6, 7-18

TO .................................................................................. 3-35, 7-6, RD-18

Outside Air Temperature (OAT) .................. 2-7, 2-23, 2-35, 3-44, 4-3 to 5

Ownership Symbol .................................................. 3-38 to 40, T-2, D-5, WX-3 to 4

Pan Mode .......................................................... 3-51 to 52, 5-7 to 10, 5-68 to 69, D-5, D-8 to 12, WX-15

PAN ON/PAN OFF .................................................. 5-68, D-11

Parallel Offsets .......................................................... 3-64, 7-20 to 21

Parallel Track ...................................................................... 2-8, 3-54 to 55, 7-20 to 21

PFD ......... 1-2, 2-8, 2-11 to 14, 2-17 to 21, 2-24, 2-29 to 30, 2-38, 3-1 to 3,
............... 3-9, 3-17 to 25, 3-28 to 29, 3-36 to 38, 3-51 to 61, 4-2, 4-5, 4-8 to 16,
........................................... 5-1 to 16, 5-31 to 33, 5-40 to 42, 5-47 to 52, 5-55 to 58, 6-2 to 7,
Background ....................................................................................... 3-22
Declutter .................................................................. 5-55 to 56, 8-22, T-8
Symbology ........................................................................................... 3-2
Pitch Scale ...................................... 3-17 to 18, 3-21 to 22, 3-29, 4-2, RD-1
Nadir Symbol/Zenith Symbol................................................................. 3-17
Pop-Up ..................................................................... 5-2 to 3, 5-7, 8-8, 8-22
Primary Flight Information (PFI)........ 2-8, 3-22 to 24, 5-3, 5-53, 6-2, 7-41, 7-53, 8-16, T-3
Procedure Turn ........................................................................... 3-2
Projected Path ........................................................................... 3-54, 4-3
PTK ........................................................... 2-8, 2-42, 3-63, 5-28, 7-21 to 22
PTR .............................................................................................. 3-58, 5-66
QFE .......................................................... 2-8, 2-19, 2-41, 3-4, 5-57, RD-10
QNE ........................................................................... 2-8, 3-4, 5-57, RD-10
QNH .............................................. 2-8, 3-4, 5-57 to 58, 8-17, RD-9, RD-10
RAIM .................................................................... 2-2, 2-8, 5-13, 5-23 to 25
Range ........ 2-1, 2-12, 2-32, 3-23, 3-45, 3-56, 4-3, 5-60, 8-5, T-4, S-2, D-3, D-7 to 8, WX-8, WX-11, WX-19, SAR-5 to 10
Re-Centered ................................................................................. 5-31, 5-44
Red ............. 2-24 to 25, 2-35, 3-8, 3-11 to 15, 3-24, 3-32, 3-48, 3-51, 3-58, 4-4 to 5, 8-22 to 23, T-3 to 7, S-3, D-2 to 7, WX-11 to 14, RD-6 to 8, RD-13 to 14, RD-20
Red-X’d ................................................................................................. 2-35
Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)......................................................... 1-3, 2-8, 5-3, RBP-1 to 2
Required Navigation Performance (RNP)....... 2-9, 2-46, 3-30 to 31, 3-34, 5-38 to 40, 5-60, 7-14, 7-25 to 27, 7-32 to 34, RD-17 to 19
Automatic (AUTO)................................................................. 3-31, 7-26 to 27, 7-32, RD-19
Manual (MAN) ...................................................... 2-17, 3-30, 5-38 to 40, 7-26, 7-34, RD-19
Reversionary Modes (Failure Modes) ............... 4-1, 4-5, 4-8 to 16, RD-14, RD-24 to 25
RNAV .......................................................... 2-9, 2-46, 7-4, 7-13, 7-35, 7-50
Runway ... 2-9, 2-24, 3-4, 3-31, 3-39, 3-46, 5-29, 5-35, 5-41, 5-57, 6-6 to 7, 7-3 to 4, 7-11 to 12, 7-23 to 25, 7-28, 7-31 to 32, 7-35 to 39, 7-43,
SAVE ........................................ 2-49, 5-15, 5-18 to 22, 5-28, 5-33, 6-4 to 5
SBAS .................. 2-9, 2-41 to 43, 4-6 to 7, 5-23 to 25, 5-60, 7-4 to 5, 7-19,
................................. 7-29 to 30, 8-3 to 4, 8-17, 8-21, T-6, S-4, D-8 to 9, RD-23
HLTH .................................................................................................. 5-60
MSG .................................................................................................. 5-60
Search and Rescue Pattern (SAR) ............ 2-9, 2-12, 2-42, 3-63, 7-6, 7-11,
.............................................................................................. SAR-1 to 11
Search Envelope ................................................................. 8-3 to 8
SID .......................................................... 2-9, 7-4, 7-11, 7-35, 7-55 to 56, 7-59
Slip Indicator .......................................................... 1-2, 2-47, 3-16
STAR .................................... 2-9, 3-38, 3-63, 7-2 to 3, 7-11, 7-35 to 37, 8-3
START OVER .......................................................... 5-24 to 25
STD .............................................................. 2-9, 5-58
SUSPEND ..................................................................................... 7-48
SYMB DCLTR ............................................................................... 5-68
SYNC ....................................................................... 2-9, 5-40, 5-50, 5-53
Terminal ........ 2-9 to 10, 2-34, 3-31, 3-46, 7-23 to 28, 7-34 to 36, 8-4 to 6,
............................................................. RD-19 to 20
Terrain........... 2-4, 2-9 to 11, 2-19, 2-22 to 29, 2-33, 2-37, 2-48, 3-2 to 3,
................ 3-22 to 25, 3-37 to 38, 3-44, 3-49 to 51, 4-2 to 3, 5-3 to 7, 5-68 to 70,
................................................................. 7-5 to 7, 7-32, 7-63, 8-1 to 14, 8-18 to 23
Terrain and Obstruction Rendering ... 3-22 to 24, 3-37 to 38, 3-50, 7-7, 8-8
Time
  Clock/Timer ........ 2-20, 2-41, 2-44, 3-28, 4-7, 5-3 to 4, 5-10, 5-46 to 48,
.......................................................... RD-16
  COUNT DN .................................................. 5-47
  COUNT UP .................................................. 5-47
  FLT TIME .............................................. 5-47 to 48
  Local Offset .................................................... 3-43, T-5, S-3
  Menu ...................................................... 5-10 to 11, 5-46 to 47
  STORE .......................................................... 5-46 to 47
  Zulu ................................................. 3-43, 3-62, 5-48, 9-7, T-5, S-3, D-5, WX-12
  TO COM .................................................. 5-43
  Top of Climb .................................................. 3-53
Top of Descent .................... 2-10, 3-34 to 35, 3-53, 7-62, T-5, RD-17 to 18
Top-Level Menu .............................. 5-6 to 7, D-9, WX-3, WX-15
Automatic Pop-Up ................................. D-9, WX-15
Track Pointer ........................................ 3-16 to 17, 3-51, 3-61, T-5, D-8
Traffic ........ 1-3, 2-1 to 2, 2-7 to 12, 2-27 to 29, 2-38, 3-8, 3-22, 3-40, 3-62,
......................... 4-2 to 3, 5-1 to 7, 5-12, 5-64, T-1 to 9, S-3, RD-13
Page (TRAFFIC) ..................................... 5-55 to 56, 5-64, T-4, T-7
TRFC .......................................................... 5-55 to 56, 5-60, T-5, T-7
TRANS ALT .............................................. 5-57
Transmit Enabled ............... 2-12, 2-29 to 30, 2-38 to 40, 2-45, 4-3, 5-7 to 8
TSO ......................................................... 2-10, 3-31 to 32, 5-3, 7-4 to 6, 8-1 to 3, RD-19
Unusual Attitude Mode .......... 2-30 to 37, 2-41 to 44, 3-1, 3-9, 3-20 to 22,
.......................... 3-26 to 28, 3-33, 3-37 to 38, 7-7, T-3, RD-2 to 3, RD-17
USB ......................................................... 1-2, 2-10, 2-47 to 48, 9-10
Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI) ........ 2-10, 3-22, 3-33 to 35, 3-58 to 59,
......................................................... 7-5 to 6, 7-52, 7-57, RD-17 to 18, RD-22
Vertical Speed Indicator (VSI) ... 2-6, 2-11, 2-23, 2-30, 2-44, 3-7 to 8, 3-11,
........4-2, 5-4, 5-50, 5-53, 6-3, 8-21, T-2 to 5, RBP-2 to 3, D-8, RD-6,
......................................................... RD-12 to 15
VFR .... 2-10 to 11, 2-23, 2-34, 2-42, 3-38, 3-46 to 47, 3-63, 5-20, 5-68, 6-6,
... 7-1 to 3, 7-10 to 11, 7-20 to 25, 7-31, 8-3, 8-18 to 19, D-2 to 3, SAR-1
APPR .......................................................... 6-6, 8-18
Video ................................................................................. 3-40
VNAV .... 2-2, 2-11, 2-23, 2-42 to 46, 2-49, 3-3 to 7, 3-34 to 37, 3-53, 3-59,
................. 3-63 to 65, 5-3 to 4, 5-8, 5-32, 5-50, 5-53, 7-1 to 2, 7-6 to 10,
............... 7-22 to 27, 7-30, 7-33, 7-52, 7-61, T-5, RBP-1 to 3, D-8, RD-12,
.......................... RD-17 to 18
CDA ............................................................................. 5-50, 5-53
Sub-Mode ........................................................................ 3-6, RD-12
VOR ........ 2-10 to 13, 2-17, 2-23 to 24, 2-45, 3-37 to 38, 3-47 to 48, 3-52,
.. 3-59, 4-5, 5-12, 5-15, 5-30, 5-33, 5-37, 5-42 to 43, 5-66, 6-4 to 5, 7-18,
.................. 7-35, 7-60 to 62, RBP-2 to 3, RD-21
VOR1/VOR2 ....... 3-32, 3-42, 3-48, 3-57 to 61, 5-38, 5-66 to 68, 7-62,
................................................. RD-21
VTF .......................................................... 2-11, 3-31, 7-23, 7-28 to 31, RD-20
Warnings, Cautions, and Advisories
ADC FAIL Caution ......................................................................... 2-30
ADC INIT Advisory ................................................................. 2-39
ADS-B FAIL Caution ............................................................. 2-30
AHRS DG Advisory ............................................................... 2-39
AHRS FAIL Caution .............................................................. 2-30
ALT MISCOMP Caution ......................................................... 2-32
ANP Advisory ........................................................................ 2-41
ATT MISCOMP Caution ......................................................... 2-32
AUX SENSOR Caution ............................................................ 2-31
BARO MISCOMP Advisory .................................................... 2-39
CHECK GEAR Caution Time-Critical Alert ............................. 2-27
CHECK IDU Caution ............................................................... 2-38
CHECK TRIM Down Caution .................................................. 2-32
CHECK TRIM Up Caution ....................................................... 2-32
CHK BARO Advisory ............................................................. 2-40
COOLING FAN Caution .......................................................... 2-33
CPLT MISCOMP Caution ....................................................... 2-31
CPLT OVRTMP Caution ......................................................... 2-31
CPLT PWR Advisory ............................................................. 2-39
CPLT RANGE Caution ............................................................ 2-32
CPLT SCC Caution ................................................................. 2-33
CPLT TAWS Caution ............................................................. 2-33
DR Advisory ........................................................................... 2-41
FLTA INHBT Advisory .......................................................... 2-42
FPM INHBT Advisory ............................................................ 2-39
FUEL SPLIT Caution .............................................................. 2-33
GLIDESLOPE Caution Time-Critical Alert .............................. 2-27
GLIDESLOPE Warning Time-Critical Alert ............................ 2-27
GPS FAIL Caution ................................................................. 2-37
GPS MISCOMP Caution ......................................................... 2-34
GS MISCOMP Caution ............................................................ 2-34
HDG FAIL Caution ................................................................. 2-35
HDG MISCOMP Caution ......................................................... 2-35
IAS MISCOMP Caution ........................................................... 2-35
LNAV APPR Advisory ............................................................. 2-41
LNV/VNV APPR Advisory ................................................................. 2-41
LOC MISCOMP Caution ................................................................. 2-35
LOW FUEL Caution......................................................................... 2-33
LOW FUEL Warning...................................................................... 2-29
LP APPR Advisory ......................................................................... 2-41
LPV APPR Advisory ...................................................................... 2-41
OAT FAIL Caution ......................................................................... 2-35
OBSTRUCTION Caution Time-Critical Alert .................................. 2-27
OBSTRUCTION Warning Time-Critical Alert .................................. 2-27
OVERSPEED Warning Time-Critical Alert .................................... 2-26
PLT MISCOMP Caution ................................................................. 2-31
PLT OVRTMP Caution ................................................................... 2-31
PLT PWR Advisory ........................................................................ 2-39
PLT RANGE Caution ...................................................................... 2-32
PLT SCC Caution .......................................................................... 2-33
PLT TAWS Caution ....................................................................... 2-33
PTK Advisory ............................................................................... 2-42
PULL UP Warning Time-Critical Alert .......................................... 2-27
RALT FAIL Caution ...................................................................... 2-36
RALT MISCOMP Caution ............................................................. 2-35
RNP Advisory ............................................................................... 2-41
SAME ADC Advisory ..................................................................... 2-39
SAME AHRS Advisory .................................................................. 2-39
SAME DME Advisory ................................................................... 2-39
SAME GPS Advisory .................................................................... 2-39
SAME NAV Advisory ..................................................................... 2-39
SAME RALT Advisory .................................................................. 2-39
SINK RATE Caution Time-Critical Alert ...................................... 2-27
STALL Warning Time-Critical Alert.............................................. 2-26
SUSPEND Advisory ...................................................................... 2-41
TA ONLY Advisory ...................................................................... 2-40
TAS INHBT Advisory ................................................................... 2-39
TAWS GS CNX Advisory ............................................................. 2-40
TAWS INHBT Caution ................................................................... 2-36
TCAS FAIL Caution ................................................................. 2-36
TCAS STBY Advisory ............................................................ 2-40
TCAS TEST Advisory ............................................................ 2-40
TERMINAL Advisory ............................................................... 2-42
TERRAIN Caution Time-Critical Alert ...................................... 2-27
TOO LOW Caution Time-Critical Alert .................................... 2-27
TOTALZR QTY Caution .......................................................... 2-36
TRAFFIC Caution Time-Critical Alert ...................................... 2-28
TRAFFIC Warning Time-Critical Alert ...................................... 2-27
TRIM MOTION Down Caution .................................................. 2-36
TRIM MOTION Up Caution ........................................................ 2-36
TRUE NORTH Advisory ............................................................ 2-42
VECTORS Advisory ............................................................... 2-42
VFR APPR Advisory ............................................................... 2-42
VNAV AVAIL Advisory ............................................................. 2-42
XFILL ARM Advisory ............................................................... 2-40
XFILL FAIL Caution ................................................................. 2-37
XFILL INHBT Advisory ............................................................ 2-40
Water .................................................................................. 2-24, 3-24, 3-51
Waypoint ...... 2-1 to 7, 2-10 to 11, 2-23, 2-32, 2-41 to 46, 3-22, 3-35 to 37,
............... 3-45 to 47, 3-51 to 52, 3-55, 3-58, 3-62 to 65, 4-2 to 3, 5-8 to 10,
............... 5-13 to 25, 5-28 to 36, 5-42 to 46, 6-2 to 6, 7-1 to 25, 7-30 to 32,
............... 7-35 to 45, 7-48, 7-52 to 54, 7-57 to 65, 8-3 to 4, 8-18, 9-1, 9-8 to 9,
............... T-5 to 6, S-4, D-8 to 10, WX-14 to 15, RD-18 to 22, SAR-1 to 2,
............... .............................................................................................. SAR-5 to 10
Active ............... 2-42, 3-6, 3-9, 3-16, 3-36 to 37, 3-45, 3-55, 3-63 to 65,
............... 5-20 to 22, 5-33, 5-36 to 39, 5-42 to 45, 6-2, 7-1 to 2, 7-6, 7-11,
............... 7-17, 7-23 to 25, 7-45 to 47, 7-59 to 61, T-3 to 6, RBP-2, S-4,
............... ......................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................
Fly-Over........ 3-37, 5-31 to 32, 5-44, 7-6, 7-11 to 17, 7-30 to 31, T-6, D-8
INSERT ............................................................... 5-28, 5-33, 5-42, 6-5, 7-64
MAHWP .................................................................... 2-6, 2-46
MAWP ......................................................... 2-7, 2-46, 7-23 to 24, 7-31, 7-44, 7-49, 7-53
NO RADIUS ................................................................. 7-3
OFLY/AUTO .......................................................... 5-32, 7-2
OVERFLY ............................................................... 5-32, 7-2
Overfly User .............................................................. 5-14
Phantom.............................................................. 5-28, 5-31, 5-44, 7-14, 7-16
Pointer ...................................................................... 3-51, T-5, D-8
Routes and User .......................................................... 1-3
Sequencing ............................................................... 2-41, 5-8, 6-3, 7-3, 7-6, 7-11, 7-18, 7-40 to 45,
............................................................... 7-52 to 54, 7-57, 7-65, RD-20
Skipped........................................................................ 7-1
Suppressed ............................................................. 3-63 to 65, 5-65, 7-1, 7-18, 7-59
USER WPT .............................................................. 5-10, 5-19 to 23, 6-5
USER WPTS FULL .......................................................... 5-10
WGS-84 ..................................................................... 2-45, 7-14 to 16, 7-19
White ................................................................. 2-23, 3-5 to 8, 3-11 to 17, 3-36 to 38, 3-45, 3-49 to 51, 3-56, 3-63,
7-1, 7-41, 7-51, 7-59, D-3, D-8 to 9, WX-11, RD-1, RD-5 to 8,
............................................................... 7-11 to 13, RD-21 to 22
Wind .................................................................... 3-44, 4-3
WX-500 Lightning Strikes ........................................... 1-3, 2-9 to 12, 2-15, 2-31, 3-40, 4-3, 5-1 to 3,
............................................................... 5-7, 5-12, 5-60, 5-64, 5-68, S-1 to 6, WX-14
Page (STRIKES) ....................................................... 2-12, 5-64, S-2 to 3
WX-RDR ................................................................. 5-64, WX-16
XFILL SYNC ............................................................ 5-9, 6-7
Glossary

**AGL Indication (Rad Alt, GPS Alt, Baro Alt)** – Display of altitude above the ground, with designation of the altitude source as R (radio altitude), G (GPS WAAS geodetic altitude less local ground elevation), or B (barometric altitude less local ground elevation).

**Air Data and Groundspeed** – Display of density altitude, outside air temperature, ISA temperature deviation, true airspeed, and groundspeed.

**Airspeed Information** – Display of airspeed is the indicated airspeed tape and airspeed readout with associated data. The airspeed function includes color-coded caution bands for minimum and maximum speeds based on V-speeds set in the EFIS limits.

**Altitude Information** – Display of altitude information is the altitude tape and altitude readout.

**Approach Mode Signal Output** – Conventional autopilot approach mode signals are course error output, the left/right deviation signal (localizer output) and the up/down deviation signal (glideslope output). Signals are based on the selected ILS source.

**Attitude Information** – Display of attitude information includes pitch and roll. The bank angle scale may be set to auto-declutter by the pilot when the bank angle is less than 2.8°. The pitch ladder is limited to ±10° from the flight path marker or aircraft waterline, whichever is greater. The unusual attitude display appears when the aircraft pitch exceeds ± 30° or bank angle exceeds 65°.

**Autoset** – Automatically selects features or settings.

**Azimuth** – Angle between the north vector and the perpendicular projection of the star down onto the horizon. Usually measured in degrees (°).

**Barometric Altimetry** – Measurement of altitude based on the atmosphere (pressure and temperature).

**Barometric Correction** – Display and altitude correction for local barometric pressure.

**Bezel** – Faceplate of the IDU comprised of pushbuttons along the sides and rotary encoders along the bottom.

**Conformally** – Angle-preserving. Example: Traffic appears conformally on the PFD.
Course Deviation Indicator – Display of course deviation from selected course, including a To-From indicator.

Critical Flight Phase – Phase(s) of flight where the failure mode would result in a hazard condition using flight phases. For example, failure of ILS would only be a hazard condition during approach and landing.

Crossfill – Transfer of data and information between IDUs with two PFDs configured.

Cross-linked – Synchronized across both EFIS sides.

Datalinked – Display of received data such as weather or traffic from peripheral systems such as ADS-B.

dBZ – Decibel relative to radar reflectivity (Z). Composite reflectivity shows the highest dBZ (strongest reflected energy) at all elevations. Unlike base reflectivity, which only shows reflected energy at a single elevation scan of the radar, composite reflectivity displays the highest reflectivity of ALL elevations scans. If there is heavier precipitation in the atmosphere over an area of lighter precipitation (i.e. rain has yet to reach the ground), the composite reflectivity displays the stronger dBZ level.

Deadband – Neutral zone where no action or changes are made.

Directional Scale (Compass Rose or Arc) and Ownship Symbol – Display of general directional information. All MFD pages include a form of the compass rose with current heading pointer and aircraft “ownship” symbol.

Discrete – A logic input or output that identifies a condition or status of or for an ancillary system. Discretes are defined by the operating software or settings programmed specifically for the aircraft.

Display of ADF – Display of single ADF bearing information in the form of an RMI needle.

Display of Glideslope – Display of Glideslope 1 or Glideslope 2 in the form of vertical deviation dots and deviation on PFD or MFD HSI page.

Display of Lightning Cell Information – Display of lightning information from a WX-500 system and shown in the form of lightning cells. The pilot may show individual lightning strike data by selecting the dedicated WX-500 page.

Display of Localizer – Display of Localizer 1 or Localizer 2 in the form of horizontal deviation dots and deviation.
Display of Marker Beacon – Display of outer, middle, and inner marker beacons in the form of a color-coded circle with the corresponding letter (O, M, I).

Display of Traffic Information – When integrated with an appropriate traffic system, the PFD and MFD display traffic information in two formats. One format is via traffic symbols as shown on the PFD and MFD Map page and Traffic page. The second format is with the traffic pop-up thumbnail display showing traffic position in a full 360° format on the PFD.

Display of VOR RMI – Display of VOR1 and VOR2 bearing in the form of RMI needles.

Dot – (CDI scale referenced) represents an additional 2° for VOR and 1.25° for Localizer.

EFIS-Coupled – The EFIS is coupled to an autopilot and controls the lateral and vertical modes of the autopilot.

Failure Condition Hazard Description – A description of the failure mode to be analyzed.

Flight Director (Selectable Function) – Display of flight director in a single or dual cue format when selected for display on the PFD.

Flight Path Marker (Velocity Vector) – Display of aircraft’s actual flight path, showing where the aircraft is going as opposed to where the aircraft is pointed.

Flight Plan and Navigation Display – Display of the active GPS WAAS/SBAS-based flight plan, including course line, waypoints, ground track, glide range, projected path, altitude capture predictor, approach procedure, missed approach procedure, and the aircraft present position on the active leg.

Geodetic – Set of reference points used to locate places on the earth.

Geodesic – A generalization of the notion of a straight line to curved spaces. The shortest route between two points on the Earth’s surface.

Geoid – Global mean sea level.

G-Force and Fast/Slow Indicator – Indications to show the G-force on the aircraft or, for aircraft equipped with a compatible angle of attack computer, the deviation from the reference speed while in the landing configuration.

Glideslope Sidelobes – False glideslope signals.
GPS WAAS Course Deviation Indicator (CDI) – Display of CDI relative to selected course, either automatic based on active flight plan or manual based on pilot-selected OBS.

GPS WAAS Functions – The EFIS meets the GPS WAAS navigation and flight planning/management requirements of TSO-C146a (RTCA/DO-229D) for Class Gamma 3 equipment. These functions include navigation, flight planning (function select, flight plan generation and editing, selected waypoints, user waypoints, etc.), path definition including approach and departure paths, GPS altitude, dead reckoning, navigation modes with automatic mode switching, loss of navigation monitoring, loss of integrity monitoring, etc. The database used with the GPS WAAS functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

Heading Bug – Display and control of selected heading using a bug. May be used to drive heading bug output to autopilot for HSI-based heading mode.

Heading Display – Display of heading with directional scale is provided at the top of the PFD. This is the same heading information provided on the MFD.

Heading Mode Signal Output – Conventional autopilot heading mode signal is a heading error output based on the difference between the EFIS desired heading and the actual aircraft heading. The EFIS desired heading is either the pilot-selected heading bug or a heading designed to achieve and maintain the active GPS-based flight plan.

Hectopascal (hPa) – International System of Units (SI) unit measure of pressure, equals one millibar (mbar).

HeliSAS – Genesys Aerosystems’ helicopter autopilot and stability augmentation system.

Horizontal Situation Indicator (Selectable Function) – Display of VOR or localizer and glideslope deviation when selected for display on the MFD.

HOTAS – Hands On Throttle And Stick

Inches of Mercury (inHg) – Unit of atmospheric pressure used in the United States. Named for the use of mercurial barometers, which equate height of a column of mercury with air pressure.

Inhibit – Prevention of activity or occurrence. Examples are: 

- X{\text{FILL INHB}}
- TAWS INHB
**Integrated Peripherals** – Internal devices of the essential unit.

**Ionosphere** – Region of the atmosphere between the stratosphere and exosphere, 50 to 250 miles (80 to 400 km) above the surface of the earth.

**International Standard Atmosphere (ISA)** – Standard model of the change of pressure, temperature, density, and viscosity over a wide range of altitudes or elevations.

**Landing Gear Indication** – When enabled on retractable landing gear aircraft, PFD shows indication of landing gear extended.

**Lubber Line** – Line marked on the compass showing the direction straight ahead.

**Mach Display** – Display of Mach number when the aircraft is traveling at or above 0.35 Mach. This function may be deselected by a setting in the IDU configuration (limits) file.

**Magnetic Declination (MAGVAR)** – Sometimes called magnetic variation; the angle between magnetic north and true north.

**Map Data** – Display of map data, including airspace, VFR/IFR airports, VHF nav aids such as VOR/NDB/DME, jet/victor airways, and display range rings.

**Menu Functions** – The EFIS includes menus to access functions on both the PFD and the MFD.

**Mesocyclonic** – Contains a vortex of air within a convective; air rises and rotates around a vertical axis, often in the same direction as low pressure systems.

**Millibar (mbar)** – Metric (not SI) unit of pressure, one thousandth of a bar, which is about equal to the atmospheric pressure on Earth at sea level - 1013 millibars.

**Miscompare** – Disparity of data or information. Examples are:

- ALT MISCOMP
- GS MISCOMP
- LOC MISCOMP
- GPS MISCOMP
- HDG MISCOMP
- IAS MISCOMP
- PLT MISCOMP
- RALT MISCOMP
- CPLT MISCOMP
- BARO MISCOMP

**NavData®** – Jeppesen's aeronautical database to navigate the global airspace system.
Navigation Data Display – Display of active waypoint, bearing to waypoint, and ground track based on active flight plan. The pilot may also select flight plan information as a mini-map (thumbnail map). These functions are analyzed as part of the GPS WAAS functions not the PFD functions.

Navigation Log – Display of navigation information based on active flight plan, including next waypoint, destination, estimated time remaining, and fuel totalizer-based range and endurance. This function may be deselected by a setting in the IDU configuration (limits) file. These functions are analyzed as part of the GPS WAAS functions not the MFD functions.

Navigation Mode Signal Output – Conventional autopilot Navigation mode signals are the course error output and the left-right deviation signals. Course error output is based on the difference between the EFIS selected course (OBS) and the actual aircraft heading. These signals are based on the selected navigation signal (VOR, GPS).

Nondirectional – Functions in all directions.

Noodle – Navigation Display (ND) projected path; curving path based upon the aircraft bank angle and groundspeed used effectively to assist in course interception and making small adjustments to bank angle for proper roll out.

Nanoteslas (nT) – A unit of measurement of the strength of the magnetic field. Earth's strongest magnetic field is located at the poles, and the weakest field is near the equator.

Obstructions Display – Display of obstructions identified in the embedded obstruction database, which are within 8.5 NM of the aircraft present position. Non-threatening obstructions are displayed by color to identify altitude relative to the aircraft's current altitude (amber [yellow] < 2000' below, light red < 500' below, bright red = at or above aircraft). Threatening obstructions, defined as those that pierce the TAWS envelope, are identified by highlight when producing a caution and identified by flashing highlight when producing a warning. The database used with the obstruction functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

Omnibearing – Magnetic bearing of an omni-range station.

Offset – When referring to parallel track of an active flight plan, “offset” implies the distance paralleling the original track. When referring to VNAV altitudes, “offset” refers to the distance before or after the waypoint the VNAV altitude must be reached.
Ownship – Principal eye-point; referring to icon of aircraft represented on display.

Pitch Limit Indicator – Appears when the aircraft is within 10 knots of stall speed, based on the VSI setting in the EFIS limits. The intent is to notify the pilot of a possible stall condition so corrective action is taken before the stall occurs. This function may be deselected by a setting in the IDU configuration (limits) file.

Q-Routes – Published RNAV routes, including Q-Routes and T-Routes, can be flight planned for use by the Genesys EFIS, subject to any limitations or requirements noted on enroute charts, in applicable advisory circulars, or by NOTAM. RNAV routes are depicted in blue on aeronautical charts and are identified by the letter “Q” or “T” followed by the airway number, e.g., Q35, T-205. Published RNAV routes are RNAV-2 except when specifically charted as RNAV-1.

QFE – Barometric setting that results in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (e.g., airport or runway threshold).

QNE – Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure attitude for flight above the transition attitude.

QNH – Barometric setting that results in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

Recency – State of occurrence, appearance, or origin.

Selection and Display of Selected Course – Omni-Bearing Select (OBS) function for the pilot to select the course for navigation. Selected course is displayed for reference.

Settable V-Speeds, Targets – The pilot may set certain V-speeds for reference during flight. In addition, the pilot may set certain information at any time for reference during flight, including target airspeed (with corresponding bug) and target altitude (with corresponding bug).

Side in Command – Side of aircraft control responsible for its operation.

Skipped Waypoint – A skipped waypoint is a waypoint associated with a dynamic termination leg with a zero length. These are either:

1) An altitude termination leg when current aircraft altitude is above the termination altitude; or

2) System-created (i.e., not NavData® specified) intercept to a “Course to a Fix” leg where there is insufficient distance to calculate an intercept heading.
Skyway VNAV/LNAV Guidance (Synthetic Vision) – Display of GPS-based active navigation route, flight plan, procedure, or OBS course in a three-dimensional series of skyway boxes. Also known as Highway in the Sky (HITS).

Slip Indicator – Display of aircraft lateral accelerations via an integral slip/skid indicator function. The slip indicator is a rectangle just below the heading pointer that moves left and right to indicate the lateral acceleration sensed by the AHRS in the same manner as the ball in a mechanical slip indicator.

Strikefinder – Lightning detector system (WX-500) connected to EFIS and enabled through factory program settings.

Suppressed Waypoint – A suppressed waypoint (designated by brackets) is an airport associated with an IFR or VFR approach procedure.

Symbology – Use of symbols.

T-Routes – T-Routes are available for use by GPS or GPS/SBAS equipped aircraft from 1,200 feet above the surface (or in some instances higher) up to but not including 18,000 feet MSL. T-Routes are depicted on enroute low altitude charts and considered to include the same attributes of Low altitude airways in the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS declutter menus.

Talker – IDU providing data to external sensors and generating aural alerts. IDUs depend upon intra-system communications to determine which IDU on a side takes over “talker” responsibilities. Only one talker (transmit enabled) per side, two talkers in a two sided system, and a master talker PFD when considering aircraft limits. Any IDU may become a talker through auto reversionary means in the event of the PFD failing.

Terrain Display (PFD Artificial Horizon) – Conformal display of surrounding terrain presented with the artificial horizon, shown in the correct scale and perspective for the aircraft’s current position and altitude. Includes conformal display of known runway locations, direction, scale, and perspective based on aircraft’s current position and altitude.

Terrain Display and TAWS/HTAWS – Display of terrain, including identification and annunciation of threatening terrain in accordance with Terrain Awareness Warning System (TAWS) requirements. Coloring scheme for SVS-TAWS PFD and MAP has been simplified as follows:

Non-alerting Terrain below aircraft – Olive Shades
Non-alerting terrain above aircraft – Brown Shades

TAWS FLTA Caution Terrain – Amber (Yellow)

TAWS FLTA Warning Terrain – Red

Obstacles Below aircraft – Amber (Yellow)

Obstacles above aircraft – Red

When over water – Deep Blue

Threatening terrain is determined by the requirements of TAWS TSO-C151b (fixed wing). Threatening terrain is shaded amber (yellow) for caution situations or shaded red for warning situations per TSO-C151b. TAWS cautions and warnings are accompanied by an amber (yellow) or red flag and an aural annunciation. TAWS Class A, TAWS Class B, TAWS Class C, The database used with the TAWS functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

Timer Indication – Pilot-selected function for a count-up or countdown timer.

Traffic Display – When integrated with an appropriate traffic system, traffic is shown using standard TCAS symbology showing relative position, altitude, climb/decent, and color. The pilot may also show traffic information by selecting the dedicated traffic display page.

Vertical Speed Display – Display of altitude rate of change (vertical speed or climb rate).

V_{PROC} (Procedure Speed) – The aircraft’s normal speed (in airspeed units and configured in EFIS limits) for flying instrument approaches (DPs, IAPs, STARs). This value is used for calculating the turn radius used for instrument procedure legs. This speed is not seen on the airspeed tape and only found in the aircraft speed settings inside the limits.

Warning, Caution, and Advisory Flags – Display of, warning, caution, and advisory indications accompanied by aural indications. The flags are stacked in the lower left corner of the PFD. Warnings are always shown at the top of the flag stack, followed by cautions and then advisories. These flags remain in view for as long as the situation exists.

Waterline – Indication of the aircraft’s longitudinal axis or waterline (attitude).

Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) – Developed by Federal Aviation Administration to provide accurate positioning part of the Satellite Based Augmentation System (SBAS). Other countries have
similar systems: Europe: European Geostationary Overlay System (EGNOS); Japan: MTSAT Satellite-based Augmentation System (MSAS); India: GPS Aided GEO Augmented Navigation system (GAGAN).

Wind Information – Display of wind direction, wind speed, and cross wind component.

Zulu – Display of Zulu time (based on GPS data).